W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 5384 Class No. 923

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

Withdrawn from
Bromley Libraries

BROMLEY LIBRARIES

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

In compliance with the order of the Treasury, the Master of the Rolls has selected for publication for the present year such works as he considered best calculated to fill up the chasms existing in the printed materials of English history; and of these works the present is one.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

JOHANNES CAPGRAVE

DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

benedictus uiuas in seculo seculorum Amen.
Hec sunt ultima uerba huius uictoriosissimi re
gis henrici quarti. De rege henrico. quinto.

Henricus Caplin. v.
quintus uictoriosissimus
cepit regnare anno dñi
ab. cccc. xij. primus
dies integer regni sui fuit
festum sancti benedicti ut
intelligamus eum in om=
nibus operibus suis benedictum. qñ deum dilexit
ecclesiam ueneratus est. & iustitie uias firmissi=
me obseruauit. Coronatus est autem nono die
mensis aprilis anno dñi. ab. cccc. xij. apud
westmonasterium quo anno magne inunda
ciones aquarū et mirabilia facte sunt in hieme
et in estate plura incendia ex quibus signis no=
milli predixere ipsum bellicosum futurum et
plura pericula guerrarum exoritura. In princi
pio eius regni conspirauit contra dñm regem
quidam dominus iohannes oldcastel dictus
qui fautor secte hereticae fuit p magistrum io
hannem wicliff introducte. Hic. s. oldcastel ad
ductus ad regem & accusatus pter plura mali

Ms. Brit. Mus. Cotton. Tib. A.VII fol. 61 b

Day & Son, Lith. to the Queen.

JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE

LIBER

DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.

EDITED

BY THE REV.

FRANCIS CHARLES HINGESTON, M.A.,

OF EXETER COLLEGE, OXFORD.

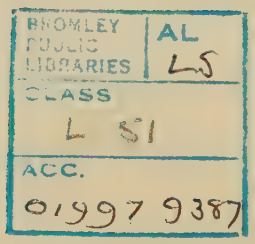
PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, LONGMANS, AND ROBERTS.

1858.

6 K 5384
6



[920.02]

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers,
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION :— Page.

Reasons for writing this Work xi

The "Chronicle" and the "Henries." xii

The two Patrons xiii

The Credibility of the Historian xvi

Of the Divisions of this Work xix

Of Part I. xx

Of Part II. xxiv

Of Part III. xxxviii

Of the Date of this Work xlviii

Of the extant MSS. 1

THE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS :—

DEDICATION TO HENRY VI. 1

EMPERORS OF GERMANY:—

HENRY I. 5

HENRY II. 13

HENRY III. 18

HENRY IV. 28

HENRY V. 37

HENRY VI. 47

Page.

Dedication of the Second Part 53

Kings of England:—

Henry I. 55

Henry II. 68

Henry III. 86

Henry IV. 98

Henry V. 112

Henry VI. 125

Introduction to the Third Part 141

Eric VI., King of Denmark 143

Henry I., King of France 147

Henry, Son of Richard King of the Romans . 151

Henry II., Count of Champagne, and afterwards King of Jerusalem. 156

Henry, Archbishop of Sens 159

Henry, Duke of Lancaster 161

Henry De Bohun, Earl of Hereford 165

Henry de Beaumont 167

Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich . . 170

Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon 175

Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent 178

Henry de Urimaria 181

Conclusion of this Work 185

Page.

APPENDICES TO THE INTRODUCTION :—

INTRODUCTORY NOTE 189

I. Of the NOVA LEGENDA ANGLIÆ . . . 191

PROLOGUE to the NOVA LEGENDA ANGLIÆ . 195

II. Of CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE CREEDS 211

PROLOGUE to the COMMENTARY ON THE CREEDS 213

III. Of CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES 219

PROLOGUE to the COMMENTARY ON THE ACTS 221

IV. Of CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF GENESIS 225

PROLOGUE to the COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF GENESIS 229

GLOSSARY 233

GENERAL INDEX 265

GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

THE "Liber de Illustribus Henricis" was compiled at several different periods during the reign of Henry the Sixth. The Writer's immediate object, as he does not hesitate to avow, was the praise and glory of his King; hence the somewhat remarkable title of his Work.[1] John Capgrave undertook, as he tells us himself,[2] in order that he might promote his sovereign's desire to follow the example of the best men, to publish a book, into which he should collect, from the writings of others who had gone before, the praises of those who had borne the name of Henry. He could not find out any fixed etymology of the name; if it came from the Hebrew, which was most likely, he was satisfied with the significations of the separate syllables composing it; he was sure that it was a good name,—at all events it was the name of his King, and that was enough for "the least of Doctors, a little one among the Hermit Friars of S. Augustin," to know. Henry the Sixth was a pious monarch, and well disposed towards the Church; and he was

Reasons for writing this Work.

[1] The title of the "Henriade" of Voltaire is similar.

[2] See the Dedication, pp. 2, 3.

Introductory.

the scion, too, of a noble stock: the lives of Six Emperors bearing the name of Henry, of six Henries Kings of England, of twelve illustrious men who had flourished in different parts of the world, all Henries, were to be written for his private edification and to do him honour in the eyes of his subjects,—were to be written "in order that this name might be called "illustrious on all accounts, not only by reason of the "majesty of Emperors, but also of the power of Kings, "the courage of soldiers, the learning of the clergy who "had borne it."[1] The old monk wrote in the hope that the troubles which then beset his sovereign might he removed speedily; that that Parisian Mother, who had crowned him, might yet give to him many faithful and well-affected sons; and that his no less beloved London Mother would soon vomit forth her foulness, and receive her King again with glory.[2]

The "Chronicle" and the "Henries."

Such were the circumstances under which the present interesting and in every way remarkable Work was written; such the motives by which its Author was actuated; and such the somewhat singular plan which he adopted of showing his fidelity towards his unfortunate King, and his sympathy with him in his sorrows. It is a less easy matter to estimate the historical value of such a production than that of the same Writer's "Chronicle of England," to which the "Henries" may, in some degree, be considered to be supplemental. In the latter he allowed himself so wide a scope that he could not well fall into the narrowness of views and timidity of style which are to a considerable extent characteristic of the former. There he freely praised or blamed, as praise seemed to be merited or blame required: here almost all is praise; he cannot suffer any rude hand to touch the

---

[1] See p. 180.

[2] See the Dedication, p. 4.

garment of a Henry; and, fearing he might be led in the course of the narrative to do so himself, he takes care to provide in the outset against such a contingency.—"Those rulers of the world," he says, "who deserve to be reckoned in the number of the "illustrious Henries, were not blinded with the error "of Paganism, nor without penitence called from the "world, but were most Christian men, firm in faith, "peaceful in manners; and if, through the activity "of the tempter, or the allurements of the flesh, they "committed any evil, they were cleansed by salutary "repentance."[1] Introductory.

A comparison of these two histories throws no little light upon Capgrave's character as a politician, and therefore, to some extent, as a fair and impartial historian. The one enables us to understand the other. Each Work is dedicated to a King; the former to Henry the Sixth, the latter to Edward the Fourth. Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard the Second, and may be said to have seen, though he was only six years old at the time, the downfall of the Plantagenets, and the crown seized by Henry, Duke of Lancaster. He lived to celebrate the praises of the latter, to tell of the short but noble career of his son and successor, to see the last sovereign of the House of Lancaster an exile, and to dedicate to Edward of York the Chronicle, which he had been long engaged in compiling. His devotion to Edward the Fourth, as it is with vehemence expressed in the Dedication to him of that Work, almost implied adverse feelings towards the fallen House, and these he is not only at no pains to conceal, but exhibits them boldly:—"Ferthermore ȝet fynde I a grete con- "veniens in ȝoure tytil, that ȝe be cleped Edward The two Patrons.

[1] See p. 6.

Introductory.

" the Fourt. He that entered be intrusion was Herry " the Fourte. He that entered by Goddis provision " is Edward the Fourt. The similitude of the repara- " cioune is ful lich the werk of the transgression, as " the Cherch singith in a Preface,—' Because Adam " ' trespased etyng the frute of a tre, therfor was " ' Crist nayled on a tree.' We trew loveres of this " lond desire this of oure Lord God, that al the " erroure whech was browte in be Herry the Fourte " may be redressed be Edward the Fourte. This is " the desire of many good men here in erde, and, as " I suppose, it is the desire of the everlasting hillis " that dwelle above."[1]

It seems hardly credible that the Writer of this paragraph could have penned the account of the " intrusion" referred to, which is found in the present volume; especially as he takes care to tell us, by way of introduction to the latter, that he was at some trouble to compile a fair and impartial statement of the history of that eventful period. " Forasmuch," he says,[2] " as different writers have given different ac- " counts of the deposition of King Richard and the " elevation of King Henry to the throne,—and no " wonder, since, in so great a struggle, one took one " side, and one the other,—I, who stand as it were " in the middle between the two parties, consider that " I hold a better and a safer path, since, having in- " vestigated both sides of the question, I set myself " diligently to elucidate the truth alone, not, indeed, " to the prejudice of any one who may write of these " things after me, if he shall undertake to discuss " this matter with more accuracy and clearness." So much for the introduction; now for the character he gives of the monarch whom he was so shortly after

[1] See the *Chronicle of England*, p. 4.

[2] See p. 102.

able to compare to the first Adam, and rejoice over the "reparacioune" of "the werk of his transgression." First we are told that he was "glorious in his gene- "ration and kind to the Church, even before he "received the reins of government."[1] "When many "injuries had been committed against him, he crossed "the sea, and with devout reverence visited the Holy "Places;"[2] for "seeing himself threatened with danger, "he converted worldly strife, as far as he was con- "cerned, into a holy pilgrimage."[3] And when in 1399 the Duke "happened to land on our shores," he "committed his own cause and that of the people to "God; and by the advice of the lords, and in accord- "ance with the decision of the people, offered to en- "counter the danger in his own person, as the "guardian of the realm and the upholder of justice."[4] Gradually Capgrave becomes more explicit. King Richard, "according to the trite proverb of the Psal- "mist, dug a pit, and fell into it himself, and, by the "permission of God, those whom he had unjustly "punished were greatly exalted, while himself was "taken away from their midst."[5] Arriving at the important point, the question of the succession, our Author states that the Duke of Lancaster claimed the crown "by reason of relationship of blood, which he "proved by ancient records."[6] Of these, indeed, he confesses that he had not as yet seen "the true "copies," but he had "heard that it was at that "time alleged on his behalf, that he had descended "from the more honourable and elder son, whose line "was in consequence nearer to the kingdom."[7] "And," he continues, after giving other reasons for

Introduc- tory.

[1] See p. 98.
[2] *Ibid.*
[3] See p. 99.
[4] See p. 101.
[5] See p. 102.
[6] See p. 107.
[7] *Ibid.*

Introductory.

his claim and mentioning his coronation, "so the said "Henry gained the crown, by the providence, as we "believe, of God, Who is mighty to put down the "mighty from their seat, and to exalt the humble."

It is impossible to defend our Author from the imputation of sycophancy, but the failing was a common one in his day; and, although we cannot but wish that the case had been otherwise, and wonder at such weakness in a man of undoubted learning and recognised influence, we must not forget that he whose motives we judge and criticise lived in times very different from our own; the error which would be intolerable in a writer of the present century, and was something more than questionable in a Dryden, is almost excusable in honest old John Capgrave, who was clearly not a respecter of persons, but loved and revered the King of the time being, whoever he might happen to be, simply because he was the King. He cared less about the distinction between the Houses of Lancaster and York than about the kind Sovereign who "took the place of the Hermit "Friars of S. Augustin, in the town of Lynn, into "his favour,"[1] and the "benigne Lord," who consented to "receyve his bok, thouȝ it were simpil:"[2] he could wish for the former "firm power, prosperous counsel, "and settled rule," and, when times were changed, could send to the latter, "prayer, obediens, subjeccion, "and al that evir, be ony deute, a prest schuld offir "onto his Kyng."[3]

The credibility of the Historian.

While, therefore, it is necessary to bear in mind this tendency, and to interpret accordingly some of the extravagant statements which are to be found scattered through the present Work, it is no less

[1] See p. 137.
[2] See the *Chronicle of England*, p. 2.
[3] *Ibid.* p. 1.

necessary to remember that the general truthfulness of the Author and the accuracy of the information which he gives us are, after all, but little affected by it. Whatever his motives for sitting down to write may have been, he evidently wrote with honesty and sincerity of purpose. Where he borrows, and he borrows largely, he does it with judgment and care, often throwing light upon the elder Chroniclers by the way in which he puts together their statements, and the new dress in which he exhibits them. When he is drawing near to his own time, and written authorities fail him, he is careful to tell us that he is not setting down events rashly or at random, but "as those testify who were present on the particular "occasions, and are still alive."[1] For instance, when describing the character of Henry the Fourth, he tells us that "he has known men of great literary attain- "ments, who used to enjoy intercourse with him, "and who have said that he was a man of very "great ability, and of so tenacious a memory that "he used to spend great part of the day in solving "and unravelling hard questions."[2]

The credibility of the Historian.

His authority in this instance might have been good, as he says, but he does not always employ the same discretion in judging of the value of statements which had come to him by mere hearsay. Though he "had "not seen the true copies of the ancient records" by which the same King tried to prove his right to the throne, he is satisfied to "have heard that he was de- "scended from the more honourable and elder son."[3]

In another place, speaking of the marriage of the Princess Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., he mentions that "during the continual infirmities which

[1] See p. 102.
[2] See p. 108.
[3] See p. 107.

The credibility of the Historian.

"oppressed King Eric, her husband, all the causes "of the kingdom were laid before her, and that by "her prudent counsel she brought everything to a "prosperous issue," and he adds—"they say so who "know her."

Again, in the Chapter on Henry the Sixth, he professes to write only what he has learned by hearsay, and commences the next sentence with the words, "Informatione multorum accepi."[1] Sometimes, but not frequently, his narrative assumes a personal aspect. When the Princess Philippa sailed for Norway, he stood on the pier at Lynn, and saw her embark. When Henry the Sixth was born, he was in London, a witness of the people's joy, and heard the rejoicings and the loud ringing of the bells in honour of the birth of the royal infant.[2] Later, when the child had become a man, and was King, when he laid the foundation stone of the College at Eton, he was there and saw the ceremony, and he witnesses to the conspicuous devotion of the King. Master William Millington, the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge, was an acquaintance of his own.[3] When Henry the Sixth was making his pilgrimage to English shrines, and visited the house of the Austin Friars at Lynn, he was there, and was the chief spokesman on the occasion.[4] When some jealous monks, or unruly laymen, had approached the King, and insinuated that the monks of Lynn were wily, and had taken him in, he undertakes his own defence and theirs.

It will be seen that Capgrave was at some pains to convince those who should read his book that he had done his best to make it worthy of their confidence; like others who had written before him, he

---

[1] See p. 128.
[2] See p. 127.
[3] See p. 133.
[4] See pp. 137 *et seqq.*

could do nothing more than compile the history of events which took place before he was born; concerning later events, he wrote nothing which he did not know himself either from personal experience or the testimony of acquaintances; but, in the former case, he had made his selections with care, endeavouring to write concisely and compendiously, and he had weighed well the evidence of his friends. The result of his labour is not unworthy of the pains bestowed upon it, and will be accepted as a genuine contribution to the history of his own century, and an intelligent commentary on the records of those which preceded it. The credibility of the Historian.

The Work is divided into three distinct Parts, each having its own separate Dedication. The First Part relates only to the History of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I. the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry the Sixth, namely from the year 918 to the year 1198, when the latter Sovereign died, and the interregnum of Philip of Suabia commenced. Of the three Parts of the Work.

The Second Part (which is the longest of the three, and in many respects the most valuable,) is devoted to English History; it extends from the accession of Henry the First, in the year 1100, to the year 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry the Sixth.

The Third Part, which is very interesting and curious, may be said to be concerned with Universal History, containing, as it does, "the lives of illus-"trious men who have borne the name of Henry, "scattered throughout the whole world, and of dif-"ferent degrees and dignities."[1] These biographies are not arranged chronologically, but it may be useful to know that they extend over a period of three hun-

[1] See p. 141.

Of the three Parts of the Work.

dred and seventy-five years, the earliest date being the year 1031, and the latest the year 1406. It will be necessary to describe each Part, and, to a great extent, each Chapter, separately.

Of Part I.

The First Part consists of six Chapters, each containing a short sketch of an Emperor of the name of Henry. It is almost superfluous to remark that it is a mere compilation, the only portions pretending to originality being the connecting links between the stories, whenever the writer thought that such connection was necessary, and a few moral reflections, occuring here and there, on any points of the history which attracted his attention, or appealed to his prejudices or sympathies. Instances are his eulogy on Henry the First, on account of that Monarch's devotion towards the Sacred Spear;[1] his justification of the vengeance wreaked by Henry the Second on certain rebels, by quoting the example of Solomon;[2] his conjectures as to the descent of Henry the Fourth, when he was at a loss for information on account of the silence of the Authors whose writings he was able to consult.[3]

The sources from which it is derived.

The sources from which he has derived the bulk of his matter are, the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus and the Chronicle or "Pantheon" (as it is called) of Godfrey of Viterbo. He has also consulted the Chronicle of Vincent of Beauvais, and derived an anecdote from S. Jerome's Commentary on the Prophecy of Isaiah. Into a long passage, borrowed from Godfrey of Viterbo, he has introduced, with the words—"Sic "scribunt auctores," a description of the marriage of the Emperor Henry the Fifth to the daughter of Henry the First, King of England, derived from Matthew of

---

[1] See p. 9.

[2] See p. 14. This passage contains a reference to Capgrave's last Commentary on the Books of the Kings.

[3] "Genealogia ejus non tangitur apud auctores," p. 28.

Westminster and Henry of Huntingdon. He also quotes the "Polychronicon" of Higden and the "Itinerarium" of Giraldus Cambrensis. In nearly every instance in this part of the Work he gives the name of his authority, occasionally, however, inserting a paragraph, derived from one or other of them, but unacknowledged, and only to be distinguished from original matter by a careful comparison of the pirated texts. This portion of Capgrave's task appears to have interested him less than the Second and Third Parts, which both bear directly, more or less, on the history of his own land; and he has hurried his work. Mistakes are numerous, and careless blunders in copying the extracts from his authorities are neither few nor far between; the latter are owing, no doubt, to his desire to get on to the part which would prove more interesting to his royal patron and his countrymen; the former, to his imperfect knowledge of the history of foreign countries. Of Part I.

The mistakes in copying have been to a considerable extent corrected by a careful collation with the printed texts of Martinus and Godfrey of Viterbo: they occur chiefly in the long quotations from the poetical portions of the latter, which, in many places, were quite unintelligible, according to Capgrave's version of them, either from the frequent omission of a whole line or more, necessary to the sense, or by a blundering alteration of words, to the destruction of the metre and the sense alike. It is necessary to turn to the original to ascertain that instead of the clumsy hexameter attributed to him,— Carelessness in making quotations.

"Quinque reseratus annis fuit non tumulatus,"

Godfrey of Viterbo wrote:

"Quinque reservatus annis fuit intumulatus."

That the pentameter,—

"Unde cito puero mortis pericula parat,"

Of Part I. is only Capgrave's version of—

"Unde cito puero morte peric[u]la parit."

That such a line as,—

"Henricus Quintus tunc cecidit in laborintus,"

was really written,—

"Henricus Quintus tunc incidit in laborinthum."

That Godfrey of Viterbo did not intend—

"Sancta quoque Spiria membra extendit ea"

for a pentameter, but wrote instead,—

"Sanctaque Spirea membra recondit ea."

These, and there are many more nearly as bad, are, indeed, gross blunders. Mistakes in the prose extracts are not so numerous, and of course not so absurd; it is not necessary to specify any of them in this place, as every passage has been collated with the extant texts of the originals, whenever it appeared that collation would render clearer the meaning intended to be conveyed.

Of its Chronology. The mistakes in facts occur chiefly in the Chronology, which, though tolerably correct in its main features, is very inaccurate in detail. A noticeable instance occurs at page 18, and similar instances at page 28, both of which are explained in the notes; other inaccuracies of less importance are simply set right in the margin, as at page 6.

The most serious mistake of all, resulting in the misplacement of an entire series of events, occurs in the Fourth Chapter, where it is hinted at in the marginal references; it requires, however, a separate explanation.

The Emperor Henry the Fourth succeeded his father in the year 1056. He had, indeed, been crowned King of Germany two years earlier, and he did not become Emperor till 1084; but this diversity does not at all affect the present case, and his regnal years are commonly computed from the first of the three epochs, viz.

his accession to the throne on the death of Henry the Third. After some introductory matter our Author proceeds to relate the circumstances accompanying the excommunication of Henry the Fourth in the year 1076, commencing his account by stating that "in his time "there arose a serious confusion in the Roman Church, "three intruders at the same time occupying the See, "one of whom was called Benedict; and, that the ac- "cumulation of misery might be still greater, the "patriarchates and their revenues were divided amongst "them, one of them occupying Saint Peter's, the "second Saint Mary Major, and the third, that is to "say, Benedict, the palace of the Lateran, and all, as "we are told, led shameful and flagitious lives." It will be seen at a glance that he is referring to the Great Schism which broke out in the year 1044, early in the reign of the previous Emperor. Benedict the Ninth became Pope in the year 1033. In 1038 he was driven from Rome, but restored almost immediately by Conrad the Second. In 1044 he was banished again, John, Bishop of Sabina, taking his place under the title of Sylvester the Third. In the course of a few months Sylvester was deposed, and Benedict reinstated, but he ceded the Pontificate almost immediately afterwards to John Graziano, the Archpriest. In 1046 Graziano (who was styled Gregory the Sixth) was deposed, and Suidger, Bishop of Bamberg, elected in his room. Gregory the Seventh, called Hildebrand, who excommunicated Henry the Fourth, was elected in the year 1073. To return to Capgrave. After recording the troubles in the early part of the Pontificate of Benedict the Ninth, he proceeds to say that "a certain priest, whose name "was Graziano, taking compassion on God's church "in its confusion, went to the three before mentioned, "and by means of bribes persuaded them to withdraw "from the Holy See. . . . . For which cause the Ro- "mans, with one consent, elected this priest Graziano,

Of Part I.

Of Part I. " as the liberator of the Church, to the chief Pontifi-
" cate, and styled him Gregory the Seventh." This is the first mistake. Capgrave has evidently confounded Gregory the Sixth (Graziano) with Gregory the Seventh (Hildebrand); and he proceeds: " The Emperor . . . . .
" induced him to give up the dignity, and, with the
" consent of the Church, substituted for him Suidger,
" Bishop of Bamberg, whom it pleased him to name
" Benedict." But this Suidger was Clement the Second. And now, forgetting Graziano, and evidently confused by his previous substitution of "Seventh" for "Sixth," Capgrave returns to Gregory the Seventh, and finding him to have been "Hildebrand," passes unconsciously over thirty years, and the six Popes who held the Holy See between the death of Clement the Second and the election of Gregory the Seventh, and finds himself relating the excommunication of Henry the Fourth by the latter. The error appears to be twofold: first, he has evidently mistaken one Emperor for the other, and thus, by inserting under the reign of Henry the Fourth an account of the Great Schism in the reign of Henry the Third, has led himself into a difficulty which he solves by treating Graziano and Hildebrand as one and the same person, and giving to both alike the title of Gregory the Seventh.

Of Part II. The sources from which it is derived.

As we have already remarked, much of the Second Part of this Work is original, derived either from the Author's personal experience, or from the authority of persons whom he knew. This must be understood to refer only to the later Chapters; the earlier are, of course, compiled from other Chronicles. His chief authority for the reign of Henry the First was Henry of Huntingdon, and he now and then refers to him by name. For the rest, he appears to have availed himself freely of Walsingham (or, it may be, of the Chronicles from which Walsingham borrowed his own

facts,) and the "Polychronicon" of Higden. He also quotes Giraldus Cambrensis, referring to him by name. Of Part II.

It is impossible to ascertain with accuracy the exact dates at which the several portions of this Part were written, though there is abundant internal evidence in the autograph MS. that it was written at several different times. The fourth and two following Chapters were certainly composed not later than the year 1446, in which Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, died, as the Author speaks of him in the first of them as still surviving. The fourth and fifth Chapters were probably written not long after the accession of Henry the Sixth in 1421, as there are evident marks in the autograph MS., at the end of the latter of them, that the work was broken off there abruptly, and afterwards resumed with the sixth Chapter; and it is likely that this Chapter was finished between the last date mentioned in it, August 1, 1446, and February 1447, when the Duke of Gloucester died, or Capgrave would certainly have alluded to the death of his great friend and patron. Its date.

CHAPTER I.—This chapter contains the history of the reign of HENRY THE FIRST. It opens with the death of William the Conqueror, and the consequent division of his territory and treasure among his three sons: William has England; Normandy is given to Robert, the eldest son; and a vast amount of treasure to Henry. This division immediately leads to a dispute between the brothers; Robert, as eldest born, claims the kingdom, but agrees to a compromise with William, and goes home to Normandy. On the death of Rufus he returns to England, and lands with a great army at Portsmouth; Ralph Flambard, Bishop of Durham, inciting him. But again a reconciliation is effected, and Robert returns to his own country. In the year 1105 Robert follows his brother to North- Sketch of the periods embraced in it. Chap. I.

Of Part II. Chap. I.

ampton, seeking a reconciliation, but matters are only made worse; the Duke returns infuriate to Normandy, seizes on the places which he had pledged to Henry, and claims the whole country unconditionally. Henry invades Normandy, and lays siege to Tenechebray, where his brother, Robert de Belesme, and the Earl of Mortaigne, are encamped. A battle ensues, in which Henry is victorious; the Duke of Normandy and the Earl of Mortaigne being taken prisoners and carried to England. Incidental mention is here made of certain remarkable appearances in the sky; and, in connection with them, the imprisonment of the Emperor, Henry the Fourth, and the usurpation of his son, are referred to. The history now returns to the coronation of Henry I. by Maurice, Bishop of London, in the first year of his reign, and to his marriage, in the same year, to Maud, the daughter of Malcolm of Scotland. Returning to the point from which this digression was made, mention is found of the Council which was held in London in the eighth year of Henry, in which the King renounced all claim to the investiture of Bishops; and of the consent of Gerald, Archbishop of York, to render homage to the See of Canterbury. In the ninth year of this reign, stealing is made a capital crime, and severe punishments are assigned to coiners of false money. In the tenth year, the See of Ely is established, and Hervey, Bishop of Bangor, translated thither. The King confers on the See of Lincoln his royal vill of Spalding, in consideration of the transfer of Cambridge from that diocese to Ely. No mention is made of the events of the three following years,—the death of Anselm, the troubles in Wales, and the King's three visits, one in every year, to Normandy; the historian passing at once, after incidentally mentioning the rebuilding of the monastery of Hide without the walls of Winchester, to Henry's fourteenth year, and relating at some length the obstinate conduct of Thurstan,

Archbishop elect of York, in refusing to acknowledge the supremacy of the See of Canterbury. In connection with this, somewhat anticipating the order of events, he alludes to this King's second marriage, and describes the unwarrantably rude conduct of Ralph, Archbishop of Canterbury, on that occasion, which he attributes to the indignation felt by that prelate on the King's consenting to admit Thurstan, in obedience to the decision of Pope Paschal II. There is now another gap in the narrative ; no allusion is made to the acknowledgment of Prince William by the Normans, the assistance rendered by King Henry to his nephew, Theobald of Blois, against Louis the Sixth of France, the part taken by the English King in the struggles in Normandy between the Earls of Anjou and Flanders and King Louis, the death of "the good Maud" being only mentioned in passing; but the historian proceeds at once to the decisive battle of Brenville, of which he gives Henry of Huntingdon's account, almost without alteration. The marriage of Prince William to Matilda of Anjou and the conference with Pope Calixtus at Gisors, both in the same year, are next recorded ; it is mentioned that Henry demanded certain liberties of the Pope for himself and his kingdom, but no allusion is made to the vain efforts of Calixtus to induce the King to release his brother Robert and permit him to go to the Holy Land. In the following year Henry returns from France, but Prince William and other of the King's children, and some nobles, are drowned on their passage. Mention is then made of the king's being at Brampton with Theobald of Blois, and of his second marriage [in Feb. 1121] to Adelais of Louvain. After this no event is recorded till the year 1126, when the Empress Maud visited her father. In connection with this visit the Historian mentions the death of the Emperor Henry V., her husband ; her marriage to Geoffrey of Anjou, and the King's claiming

Of Part II. Chap. I. allegiance for her from his Barons, and for her child, if one should be born. He then passes over several years, and briefly details the circumstances attending the death of Duke Robert (which he places in 1132 instead of 1134-5), the visit of the King to Normandy, and his death there. The remainder of the Chapter is occupied with an estimate of the King's character, a bare mention of his burial at Reading Abbey, and some reflections upon the indignities heaped upon his corpse, servilely copied from Henry of Huntingdon.

Chap. II. CHAPTER II.—This Chapter contains the history of the reign of HENRY THE SECOND. It commences with his birth, which Capgrave places in the year 1138 instead of 1133, the true date. In 1135, Stephen seizes the throne, and, despite the active opposition of Maud and her brother Robert, Earl of Gloucester, succeeds in retaining it for life. Meanwhile, Henry remains in Scotland with King David, who, in the year 1149, gives him a Knight's belt at Carlisle. On the death of his father he marries Eleanor of France, the divorced wife of Louis VII., with whom he receives the Duchy of Aquitaine. In 1153 Stephen acknowledges Henry's right to the throne, and he succeeds on the death of the former in the following year. No mention is made, however, of the death of Eustace, Stephen's son, which made the succession of Henry almost a matter of course, but the yielding of Stephen is attributed solely to the intercession of the nobles. In 1154, Prince Henry is born. In the year following, Henry applies to Adrian IV. (Nicholas Breakspere, an Englishman, born at S. Alban's) for permission to invade Ireland. The Pope's Bull granting this permission is given at full length, and it is mentioned that it was confirmed by Alexander III., who succeeded Adrian. At this point the narrative becomes extremely barren, the only event recorded from

1155 to 1160 being the discovery of the Seamless Coat at Jerusalem. Under 1160 the Historian mentions the marriage of Margaret of France to Prince Henry, and proceeds at once to relate the exaltation and the fall of Becket: his resignation of the Great Seal, and the King's displeasure; the Council of Tours, and his presence there; the King's attempt to effect his ruin by persuading Roger, Earl of Clare, to refuse to do homage to him for his Castle of Tunbridge; the Council of Clarendon; his excommunication of all who support the famous "Constitutions;" his removal from Pontigny by Henry's means; the exile of all his family; his violent death; the King's declaration that he is innocent of having ordered it. After this follows a long extract from Higden, or from the "De Instruc-"tione Principum" of Giraldus, containing an account of certain mysterious warnings given to the King in Wales and in Normandy. He appears to have paid no attention to them, for in 1173, "rege non "correcto," his sons rise against him, he is compelled to give up the Constitutions of Clarendon, and does penance at Becket's tomb. At last, however, he is reconciled to his sons; the eldest is made to swear that he will never molest his father again, and is sent away to take care of Anjou and Aquitaine; the three youngest are unconditionally pardoned because of their youth. In 1177 a great Congress of foreign ambassadors is held at Westminster, at which representatives from the chief Sovereigns of Europe are present. In 1182, Henry gives 42,000 marks of silver and 500 marks of gold, for the service of the Crusaders. This he did "of his liberality;" nothing is said of his wish to atone for the death of Becket. In 1183 Prince Henry dies, and Peter of Blois addresses a letter of sympathy to the King. In 1185 Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England, but fails in his attempt to induce the King to go in person to

Of Part II. Chap. II. the Holy Land. An amusing account is given of their interview at Dover. In 1189 Henry dies, and is buried at Fontevrault. A long extract follows from Giraldus Cambrensis, detailing his character, exploits, and mode of life, and the Chapter concludes with the names of his sons, and of his daughters and their respective husbands.

Chap. III. CHAPTER III.—Of the reign of HENRY THE THIRD. This Chapter opens with the accession of the young King in 1216; he is stated to have been born in 1208, the first year of the Interdict.[1] The claims of Louis to the crown are discussed, and full particulars given of his attempted usurpation,—the provisional coronation of Henry (Oct. 28) at Gloucester in consequence of the occupation of London, the siege of Lincoln, the conference at Kingston-upon-Thames, and the final departure of Louis.[2] Shortly after, Henry founds the Abbey of Westminster. In 1227 the Archbishop of Bordeaux comes into England, and urges him to visit his foreign possessions, but Hubert de Burgh prevents him. In 1236 he marries Eleanor of Provence, and not (as Capgrave says) in 1235—the same year with the marriage of his sister Isabel to the Emperor Frederic II. In 1239 Prince Edward is born. A brief account is given of the invasion of France in 1242, and the five years' truce. The birth of the Princess Beatrice in this year is confused with

[1] Henry the Third was born Oct. 1, 1207.

[2] Nothing is said of any difficulty in getting rid of Louis, or that a sum of money was given to him. In his English Chronicle Capgrave says that "the cite of London *lent* "him v.m. pound to his costis" (p. 150); but we learn from the Close Rolls (dated Feb. 12, 1218) that it was a bribe rather than a loan:—"We are heavily indebted "to Louis, the son of the King "of France, according to the "agreement made between us that "he would leave our realm, which "at length the Lord hath won-"drously and of his mercy given "unto us."

that of the Princess Margaret in the previous year. The troubles in Wales, and other important events of the twelve years following, are entirely passed over, the next event recorded being the marriage of Prince Edward. In 1257, peace is made with Llewellyn at Montgomery. Shortly after, Richard, Earl of Cornwall, leaves England, and the nobles at once conspire against the King. In 1259 Richard returns, and Henry visits France, where he remains for some time, and leaves it on good terms with the French King. In 1261, he resolves to make a firm stand against the encroachments of the Barons, refuses to submit to the Provisions of Oxford, obtains the support of the King of France, and makes Walter de Merton Chancellor, and William Basset Justice. In 1263, the matters in dispute are referred to the King of France, who decides for the King against the Barons: open war immediately ensues; the Barons are defeated at Northampton, and their attempt, under Simon de Montfort, to take Rochester is frustrated. At this point the Historian declines to proceed with the account of the rebellion, merely mentioning the battle of Lewes, and not even alluding to the battle of Evesham and the siege of Kenilworth, and this from a fear of exceeding his limits, "because," he says, "his work rejoices in a certain brevity." The Chapter concludes abruptly with the King's death and burial. Of Part II. Chap. III.

CHAPTER IV.—Of the reign of HENRY THE FOURTH. Chap. IV.
The opening paragraph contains an account of the birth and descent of this King, and is full of mistakes. In the first place, John of Gaunt, his father, was the *fourth*, not the *third*, son of Edward III. Edward the Black Prince, William of Hatfield, and Lionel, Duke of Clarence, were older than he. It is possible, indeed, that Capgrave did not count William of Hatfield, because he died in early child-

Of Part II. Chap. IV.

hood; there can be no doubt, however, about the mistakes in the remainder of the paragraph. The Lady Blanche (the mother of Henry IV.) was not the daughter of the King of Castile, but the daughter and co-heiress of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster. Capgrave seems to have forgotten that John of Gaunt was married three times, for he is here confusing Blanche, his first wife, with Constance, his second wife, who was the daughter of Peter the Cruel, King of Castile. This history is given correctly in the *Chronicle of England* (see pp. 219, 228), and, indeed, the chief mistake is corrected in a later part of the present work (see p. 164). Capgrave details at considerable length the disputes between Richard the Second and his Lords, which broke out in 1388. At first, the Duke of Lancaster, fearing to remain in England during such troublous times, sets out on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. In September 1390, he gains a victory over an infidel army, and returns to England on the 25th of April in the following year. In 1392 the Duke makes a second pilgrimage to Jerusalem, embarking near Lynn on the 25th of July. The Historian gives a list of the countries through which he passed, and details some of the incidents of his journey. In 1399 he lands in England, while Richard the Second is in Ireland, and is accepted as guardian of the realm. [At this point the narrative is broken off, some remarks being introduced on the cruelties of Richard, and a statement of the writer's qualifications for describing the circumstances of his deposition.] Henry proceeds at once to Bridlington, and thence to Bristol. He finds the king at Flint Castle, and conducts him to London, where he is lodged in the Tower. A few of the formal charges laid against him are here given; the abdication is mentioned, and the form in which it was made given at length, with the names of the witnesses. Richard makes certain reservations,

which are agreed to; the charges are read publicly in Westminster Hall, and his deposition is completed. Henry succeeds, claiming the crown by reason of his descent, of the common consent, and of the assignment of Richard. He at once holds his Parliament, and is crowned, Capgrave tells us in solemn terms, "by the Providence of God." His character is drawn in the most favourable manner:—"He observed the "ways of justice, honoured with all his power the ser- "vants of God, and, drinking from the fountains of "the Scriptures, went not thirsting away." He is said to have possessed a memory of remarkable tenacity, and to have spent great part of every day in working out difficult problems; "for he was mindful of that "prayer of the most glorious Solomon, in which he "asked, not for riches and honour, but for the assisting "wisdom of God . . . ." "Let it suffice for future ages "to know that this man was a studious investigator in "all doubtful points of morals, and that, as far as his "hours of rest from the administration of his govern- "ment permitted him to be free, he was always eager "in the prosecution of such pursuits." The four sons of Henry are mentioned, and a short character of each is added. Of his patron, Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, the Historian remarks,—"his praises I think it best "to postpone to another time and another period of "leisure, since I think it likely that I shall at some "time or other write a special treatise on the subject "of his praises."[1] Next is mentioned the marriage of his daughter, the Princess Philippa, to Eric of Norway. Capgrave calls her *unicam filiam*, which is not quite accurate: Blanche, her sister, was born in 1392, married to Louis, the son of the Emperor Rupert, in 1402, when only ten years old, and died in childbed

[1] See p. 109.

Of Part II. Chap. IV. in 1409. In 1405, Henry marries Joan of Navarre, by whom he has no issue. The narrative now returns to the year 1403, and an account is given of the rebellion of the Percies and the battle of Shrewsbury. Capgrave confounds Henry, Earl of Northumberland, with "Harry Hotspur," and states that the former, instead of the latter, was slain at Shrewsbury; whereas the Earl of Northumberland was slain in the battle of Bramham Moor, in 1408. The rebellion of Glyndwr is merely alluded to; the events of the ensuing seven years are passed over, and the Chapter concludes with the death of the King, and a curious account of his last exhortation to his son.

Chap. V. CHAPTER V.—Of the reign of HENRY THE FIFTH. This Chapter opens with praise of the King,—"he "loved God, honoured the church, and stedfastly ob- "served the paths of justice." This is followed by a notice of his coronation, and an account of the conspiracy of Oldcastle; his first attempt, his condemnation, and escape from the Tower, his attempt to kill the King, and its frustration. In 1414 Henry holds his Parliament at Leicester, and gives immense satisfaction to the people by abstaining from imposing any tax; the question of his marriage is discussed; and he forms alliances with "the Emperor (Sigis- "mund), and other Kings and Catholic Princes." The Dauphin of France mocks him by sending him "tennis "balls:" he "answers in brief by letter, that he would "send him balls which would make his cities and "strong towers tremble." In the following year he commences warlike preparations against France. The Earl of Cambridge and others who endeavoured to dissuade him from this expedition are executed as traitors. Harfleur is taken. Henry thereupon sends a herald to the Dauphin begging him to prevent unnecessary bloodshed by coming to terms, but in vain. Accordingly he proceeds northward, till he meets the

French host at Agincourt. After gaining a great victory, he proceeds to Calais, and thence to London, where he is nobly received, "and many very beau- "tiful images and pictures were set up in his honour, "both on the bridge and in other parts of the city, "and the great concourse of people was marvellous to "tell." A Parliament is held, in which Henry claims the crown of France. The Earl of Dorset (miscalled "of Dorchester") defeats the French. Capgrave speaks of this, the battle of Cany, as a great victory, but it was really little better than a defeat, and the Earl had some difficulty in making his way back to Harfleur in safety afterwards. The Emperor Sigismund visits England, and is honourably received, and made a Knight of the Garter. He endeavours to restore peace between England and France; and the Duke of Holland visits England with the same view. The French, while pretending to treat, treacherously attack Harfleur and blockade Portsmouth; but their fleet is dispersed by the Duke of Bedford. The King and the Emperor offer a solemn thanksgiving at Canterbury. After this Sigismund leaves England, Henry accompanying him as far as Calais, where he holds a futile conference with the Duke of Burgundy, John Sans Peur. At this time Oldcastle tries a new plan, scattering papers about the streets and roads, in which it was recommended that the King should seize the temporalities of the Church. Tired of making treaties only to be broken, the King prepares to invade France again, and collects his fleet at Southampton. The Earl of Huntingdon gains a naval victory at La Hogue, and the King's army is successful in Normandy. During Henry's absence the Scots rise, and invade the North, but are speedily repressed by the Duke of Bedford. Oldcastle is captured and executed. Of the events of the years from 1418 to 1420 inclusive our Historian says nothing: he then merely mentions the marriage of

Of Part II. Chap. V. the King to Katharine of France. In 1422, Henry the Fifth dies at Bois de Vincennes, near Paris,[1] on the day of S. Felix, which Capgrave says was appropriate, "since he was happy in everything."

Chap. VI. CHAPTER VI.—Of the reign of HENRY THE SIXTH. This Chapter is disappointing; not, indeed, that it is uninteresting, but there is perhaps no period of our history since the Conquest of which less is known than of the reign of Henry the Sixth, and it is not a little provoking that the writings of a contemporary Historian should throw little or no light upon it. Capgrave evidently was afraid to commit himself to any statement of the events of the reign of the patron of his work, and contents himself with a few curious personal allusions relating to his own ordination, etc., and the history of his Friary at Lynn, filling up the Chapter with very tedious and exaggerated praises of his Sovereign. He mentions Henry's birth, but only that he may say that it took place in December, the month in which the Blessed Virgin was conceived, and Christ was born. Under the years 1430, 1431, he mentions the coronation of this King at London and at Paris, but only that he may count up (with his baptism) "three anointings," and compare them with the three anointings of David—in his father's house, at Hebron, and at Jerusalem. He answers the complaints of the people that he was too young to be a King, by remarking that Joash was kept in the Temple till he was seven years old, and then anointed; that Josiah was eight years old when be began to reign; and that S. Edward the Martyr and S. Kenelm were youthful Kings. Speaking of his love of justice, and his devotion to the Church, Capgrave compares him to Constantine the Great. In 1441 the matter becomes more like

[1] See p. 123, note (²).

history. An intelligible account is given of the foundation of Eton College, and King's College, Cambridge; and some very strong remarks are made upon the inefficient state of the English navy. "It has "been said by those of old time that the sea is the "wall of England," and now "our enemies laugh at "us and say, 'Take away the *ship* from your precious "'money, and put a *sheep* in its stead.'" In 1444, Henry marries Margaret of Anjou: this gives occasion to Capgrave to dilate upon matrimony in general for some space. And he concludes the Chapter with an account of Henry's visit to the Friary of the Hermits of S. Augustin at Lynn, on August 1, 1446, "in "illa solemni peregrinatione, qua Sanctorum memorias "visitavit." This part of the narrative is curious and interesting, and also generally correct, as the notes at page 138 show. That he is accurate in his dates is proved by reference to the Privy Seals of Henry the Sixth, from which we are able to ascertain the course of this "solemnis peregrinatio." On August 1, (as Capgrave says,) he was at Lynn, and there directed the issue of a grant to the Prioress and nuns of Crabhouse, Co. Norfolk. On August 6 he was at Colchester; on August 11 at Stratford Langthorne; on August 16 he had returned to Windsor. This Chapter concludes with a brief prayer for the King's health. Capgrave intended to have added more, and left a page blank for the purpose, but he altered his mind, and wrote at the bottom of the leaf a direction to the scribe who should copy his work, to write on, and not mind the blank.[1]

Of Part II. Chap. VI.

The Chronology of the Second Part, though occasionally inaccurate, is, on the whole, more or less correct. The plan of arranging the events under the

Its Chronology.

[1] See p. 139, note (²).

Of Part II. Its Chronology.

regnal years of the Kings, has occasionally led the Author into the error of confounding with them one or other of the current years of which they formed a part. In every instance of importance mistakes of this kind have been corrected in the margin, or pointed out in the notes; but it is evident that the writer has not proceeded upon any uniform system of reckoning, employing a Chronology of his own, which cannot easily be reconciled in every case with the received Chronology.

Of Part III. Sketch of the periods embraced in it.

Chap. I.

CHAPTER I. OF ERIC, KING OF DENMARK.—This King succeeded Waldemar the Victorious, in the year 1241, and was put to death by his brother Abel in 1250. The writer's object seems to have been to establish the sanctity of this Prince, and to claim for him the title of Martyr. Accordingly, the Chapter contains little more than an account of his violent death, a parallel being drawn between it and the murder of Wenceslas of Bohemia by his brother, Boleslas, three hundred years before.

Chap. II.

CHAPTER II. HENRY I., King of France, began to reign in 1031, and reigned till 1059, when he resigned the crown to his son Philip. He brought up William, Duke of Normandy, and assisted him to establish himself in his territory. Capgrave says, that he also assisted him in the conquest of England. His resignation of the crown is stated to have taken place in 1056, about two years earlier than the true date.[1] Philip I. was crowned at Rheims, by Gervase, Archbishop of Rheims, on the 25th of May, 1059; Baldwin, Count of Flanders, being appointed Regent. The remainder of the Chapter is occupied with a

[1] See p. 148, note (1).

lengthy Genealogy of the Kings of France from Antenor the Trojan, written by Henry I., and inserted by our Author, because he could find nothing else about him. His concluding words are: "And "other memorable deeds of his have I seen none." Of Part III. Chap. II.

CHAPTER III. Of HENRY, son of Richard, King of the Romans.—This chapter opens with a brief statement of the parentage of this illustrious man; he was the son of Richard, Earl of Cornwall, and Sanchia of Provence, his second wife. He married the daughter of Gaston de Bearn. During the civil wars in the reign of Henry III., he fought beside Prince Edward, and distinguished himself at the battle of Lewes. Afterwards he accompanied the Prince to the Crusade in 1269, and remained in the East until a short time before his death, which took place two years later at Viterbo; he was killed there in a church by his cousins Guy and Simon de Montfort, in the year 1271. The account of their quarrel and of the forbearance of Henry is drawn briefly; and Capgrave concludes that his death was blessed and a martyrdom. His body was embalmed and carried to London, where the heart was interred in Westminster Abbey, by the shrine of S. Edward the Confessor; the corpse was conveyed to the Cistercian Abbey of Hayles, which his father had built, and was buried there. Chap. III.

CHAPTER IV. treats of HENRY, Count of Champagne, who was afterwards King of Jerusalem. He may be said to have belonged to England, and may, "etiam "titulo quodam," be numbered among illustrious Englishmen, for "he was the son of Mary, Duchess of Cham- "pagne, who was the sister of Philip, King of France, "on the father's side, and sister of Richard, King of "England on the mother's side." In 1190 he accom- Chap. IV.

Of Part III, Chap. IV. panied Richard I. to the Crusade, remaining in the Holy Land after the return of the King of France and the imprisonment of Richard. On the death, in 1192,[1] of Conrad, Marquis of Montferrat, who had succeeded Guy de Lusignan, he was chosen by the Templars and Hospitallers to be King of Jerusalem, and married the orphan daughter of his predecessor. Nothing more is said of this Prince, except that he was distinguished for his good deeds and his great kindness to the poor at Jerusalem. The remainder of the Chapter (an after-thought, and written in the margin in the autograph MS.) is devoted to a brief account of the origin of the Order of the Knights Templars, with a notice of their rule, their dress, and their famous banner called "Beauceaunt."[2]

Chap. V. CHAPTER V.—HENRY, the brother of Louis VI., King of France, was converted by the preaching of S. Bernard, left the world, and made his abode at Clairvaulx. At that time the Gallican church was everywhere famous for the great and distinguished men who arose within its bosom; chiefest of these, and "shining with a certain "special brilliance of glory," was S. Bernard, and next to him his great disciples, Eugenius (afterwards Pope), and this Henry. The latter was first elevated to the see of Beauvais, and in 1122 became Archbishop of Sens. His retirement from a Court to a Cloister gave Capgrave an opportunity of discussing the propriety of public men leaving their sphere of busy duty for the quiet, and comparative repose, of private or of monastic life. "In the case of a Prince who was so necessary to the "people that, in his absence, they would be placed in "peril, he considered that he would not be acting "rightly if he were to give up his labours and devote

[1] He was murdered at Tyre, on the 29th of April.

[2] See the Glossary.

" himself to rest and sacred study ;" but he excepts this Prince, and applauds him, because "while he saw " others of his own nation, and of his own race, well " fitted to rule the kingdom, he saw also his own " inability, and chose rather to dwell in the house of " the Lord as a servant than to rule over others as a " lord. Of Part III. Chap. V.

CHAPTER VI. — HENRY PLANTAGENET, the first Duke of Lancaster, and grandfather of King Henry IV., was from his earliest years, we are told, distinguished for his piety, moderation, and learning. In his youth he took great delight in martial exercises, and was so popular in the army that he was commonly called "The Father of soldiers." He lost no opportunity of doing battle with Pagans, Turks, and other enemies of religion, and was especially successful in such exploits in Prussia, Rhodes, Cyprus, and Spain. So great was his fame, that most of the noble youths of Europe gladly placed themselves under his command. " In mature age, from being only Earl of Derby,[1] he was created Duke of Lancaster. His companions in arms were William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton ;[2] Robert de Ufford, Earl of Suffolk ;[3] William de Montacute, Earl of Salisbury,[3] and Ralph de Stafford, Earl of Stafford.[4] Even in time of peace this warlike Duke would not disband his troops, but retained as " stipendiaries two hundred of the most daring soldiers," among whom were Thomas of Ufford, the son of the Earl of Suffolk, Thomas Engaine, and Thomas Chap. VI.

[1] He was created Earl of Derby in 1337, succeeded his father as Earl of Lancaster in 1345, was created Earl of Lincoln in 1349, and Duke of Lancaster in 1351.

[2] Son of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford ; created in 1337.

[3] Created in 1337.

[4] Created in 1351.—It will be observed that of these four noblemen, mentioned as the intimate companions of Henry, the first three were created when Henry became Earl of Derby, and the last when he became Duke of Lancaster.

Of Part III. Chap. VI.

Banester. His successes in France are alluded to, especially his struggle with the Duke of Brunswick, and the part he took in expelling Charles de Blois from Bretagne, and restoring it to John de Montfort. Some verses in allusion to these events, and well called "Somnialia," are extracted from John of Bridlington. In 1353, Henry was sent to the Pope to treat for peace between France and England. His companions were Richard Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel, William Bateman, Bishop of Norwich, and Michael de Northburgh, Prebendary of St. Paul's, and afterwards Bishop of London. "This man," says Capgrave, "being supereminently acceptable to the Pope and Cardinals, obtained almost whatever he desired."[1] The remainder of the Chapter is occupied with a long enumeration of the virtues of the Duke of Lancaster, and it is mentioned that in the end of his life, during an illness, he composed a penitential book, which he called "Mercy Gramercy."[2] It is related in the Annals of the Chapel of Walsingham, that he gave to the Blessed Virgin "urnam illam," valued at four hundred marks.[3] He died at Leicester, on the thirteenth day of March 1361, and was buried in the monastery there, which he had himself recently founded. He left two children, daughters and coheiresses, one of whom was married to William V., Duke of Holland; the other to John of Gaunt,[4] then Earl of Richmond, by whom she became the mother of Henry the Fourth.

---

[1] He is more honest in his *Chronicle of England*:—"Whan thei come thidir, with fraude of the courtesanes, whech were comensalis with the Pope, thei were illuded. Anon as the Kyng herd this, he went into Frauns, and began to distroye the cuntre." See p. 215.

[2] See the Glossary, *s. v.* "Gramercy."

[3] Mention is also made of his father, the Earl of Lancaster, having given to the same Chapel a picture of the Salutation of the Virgin of the like value.

[4] It is added that this wedding was celebrated by Robert [Wyvill] Bishop of Salisbury, at Reading, and that tournaments were held continuously there for many days, and afterwards at London.

CHAPTER VII. — HENRY DE BOHUN, appears to have been chiefly remarkable for two things,—his determined opposition to the tyranny of King John,[1] and his devoted pilgrimage to the Holy Land. In 1199 he was made Earl of Hereford, *ex beneplacito regis;* but he was really entitled to the dignity *naturali prosapia.*[2] He is said to have prayed that he might live to see the end of the Interdict, and his prayer was granted. He died in the Holy Land (whither he had been accompanied by Saier de Quincey, Earl of Winchester,) in the year 1220. Of Part III. Chap. VII.

CHAPTER VIII.—HENRY DE BEAUMONT[3] is described to have been a man of impetuous temper and distinguished bravery; upright and trustworthy in all the relations of life. When a young man he attached himself to the cause of Edward Baliol, and applied to Edward III. for permission to pass by land into Scotland, with David, Earl of Athol, Lord Richard Talbot, and other nobles, who desired to take up arms in his behalf, and to assert their own right to lands and possessions in Scotland of which they had been deprived. Edward would not permit them to go by land, because David, King of Scotland (having married Joan, second daughter of Edward II.), was his brother-in-law; yet for Chap. VIII.

---

[1] He was one of the twenty-five Barons chosen to compel the King to observe the provisions of Magna Charta.

[2] He was the grandson of Margery, the daughter of Milo de Gloucester, first Earl of Hereford of this line. Milo was succeeded in turn by his four sons, Roger, Walter, Henry and Mabell, who all died without issue; and the title became extinct, till its revival in 1199 in the person of Henry de Bohun, the descendant of his daughter.

[3] Styled, in 1307, "consanguineus Regis," was summoned to Parliament 2 Edw. II. 1309, as a Baron; and from the 22nd January, 7 Edw. III., 1334, to Nov. 16, 1339, as Henricus de Bello Monte, Comes de Boghan. He had married Alice, daughter and heiress of Alexander Comin, Earl of Buchan.

Of Part III. Chap. VIII. Henry de Beaumont's sake, he would not altogether refuse to grant their request, but suffered them to go by sea. They landed near the Abbey of Dunfermline, where the Scots, who came in great numbers to oppose them, were utterly routed, chiefly by the daring of Henry de Beaumont, who "seized the shore with a "few infantry, the others following, and displayed to "them such courage that the Scots being put to "flight, the whole people advanced into that land." Nothing is added concerning the results of their victory, and Capgrave remarks that "whether these honoured "men then acquired their inheritance, either wholly "or in part, he had not been able to ascertain." And he says, that, "after all, he only professed, "to leave a record of this illustrious Henry which "he did with much delight, being the servant of "the Beaumonts, and bound to their race by special "affection."[1] In 1333, Henry was present at the siege of Berwick, where he greatly distinguished himself. With this statement the Chapter originally ended, the remainder having been written on the bottom margin in the autograph MS. This addition is to the effect that Henry de Beaumont was descended from the Royal family of France; that, being a younger son, and far removed from the throne, he left his native country, and served first in the wars of the Church in Italy, and afterwards in Scotland, under Edward III. He became, by marriage with the heiress, possessed of Folkingham, in Lincolnshire, where he finally settled He was buried[2] in the Cistercian Abbey of Vauday.

Chap. IX. CHAPTER IX.—Of HENRY LE DESPENSER, Bishop of Norwich.[3] This Chapter is extremely curious and in-

---

[1] See page 169.

[2] He died in the year 1340.

[3] He was elected to the See on the 3rd of April, 1370, and died on the 23rd of August, 1406.

teresting, and is the only portion of the present Work that has hitherto appeared in print. It was printed in 1691, by Wharton, in the Second Volume of his "Anglia Sacra." In early life, we are told, this Henry was a valorous soldier, ever thirsting for war: indeed, his warlike propensities were so strong that, his own country being at peace, he went to Rome, and there spent many years in fighting against the enemies of the Pope,[1] who, in return for his services, gave him the See of Norwich. At first he administered his Diocese in peace, and was beloved and esteemed as the father of his people. But during eleven years of comparative quiet, though his martial spirit slumbered it was not quenched; and when, in 1381, the rebellion against Richard II. broke out, he threw himself into the struggle with all his olden zeal and energy: "whilst lords and knights, and others of the nobility, "were hiding themselves for fear, he went forth "openly." The rebellion broke out in his own Diocese while he was in London with the King: it was headed by "Jek Lister, and three others, Sceth, "Trunch and Cubith." As soon as the news reached him he set out for Cambridge, where he put to death or imprisoned all who resisted him, and sent away all who submitted, having compelled them to swear that they would never again take up arms in the cause of the rebels. Leaving Cambridge he proceeded to Icklingham, and there, "at a spot where a mill-house somewhat narrowed the roadway between Cambridge and Thetford," Sceth, Trunch, and Cubith were delivered up to him by Lord Thomas de Morley and Sir John Brewes. Their captors were scrupulous, and "did not dare to put them to death without special command from the King; but this most excellent man,

Of Part III. Chap. IX.

[1] Urban V.

Of Part III. Chap. IX.

" having the zeal of Phineas in his breast, and taking " into consideration the peril of the people, led them " with him to Wymondham, where, after they had " been confessed, he caused them to be beheaded." Having accomplished this, and stricken terror into the hearts of the rebels in that neighbourhood, he set out in pursuit of Jack the Litster, who had dared, even in his Cathedral City, to stir up a revolt, and to burn and destroy the houses of the harmless citizens who refused to join him. But Litster was rather difficult to find. The good people of Norwich said that he was wandering about in the neighbourhood of Walsham-market and Gimingham. But when the Bishop reached Felmingham, " where the said ringleader had a mansion, " he was told that he had been seen the previous " day at Thorpmarket, where he had publicly pro- " claimed that he intended to gather all true friends " of the Kingdom and of the community at Walsham, " and there make a stand against the tyranny of the " approaching Bishop with military force." So the prelate pushed on to Walsham, where he found every preparation made for a determined resistance. But he managed so well that the rebels surrendered to a man, and Jack Litster was obliged to hide himself among some standing corn. He was soon captured and beheaded, and his quarters sent to his own country-house at Felmingham, to Norwich, to Yarmouth, and to Lynn, " that rebels and insurgents against the peace " might learn by what end they will finish their career." This unexpected taste of warfare seems to have revived le Despenser's old propensities so strongly that he could not settle down again at once to mere diocesan work; for in 1383, he was marked with the Cross against certain schismatics in Flanders. He left there signs of desolation, and would have done more had he not been baulked by Sir William Elmham and Sir Thomas Trivet. Returning to his Diocese, he administered it with un-

yielding severity, cutting down all who offended him, or in his opinion offended against the Church, with unsparing hand: "In his time no heretic could dwell "among the people. Nor did he confine himself to the "correction of spiritual offences only; perjury in mat- "ters of quest and assize could not prevail in his days, "so diligently did he seek out all who were guilty of "it, and visit them with severe punishment." After such an account of the proceedings of the good pastor, our Author seems to have felt some apology for them necessary, and the remainder of the Chapter is devoted to "an excuse, or rather a confirmation of the deeds of "this venerable bishop," which he defends from adverse criticism, on the ground that he "warred solely against "schismatics, and perturbers of the peace, or enemies "of the Faith." Henry le Despenser died on 23rd of August, 1406, and was buried at Norwich. His epitaph is written along the margin of the page in the autograph MS. Of Part III. Chap. IX.

CHAPTER X. Of HENRY, Archdeacon of Huntingdon.—Our Author's materials for this biography must have been scanty indeed. Capgrave appears to have collected no facts about him except the few allusions he makes to his own history in his writings,—the year of his birth; the manner of his promotion to the Archdeaconry of Huntingdon; his opinion as to the time of the end of the world, and what Herbert de Losinga, Bishop of Lincoln, told him about it. "If "any one," the Chapter concludes, "shall desire to see "other of his sayings, let him hasten to the perusal of "the book which he compiled from the Chronicles." Chap. X.

CHAPTER XI. Of HENRY of Ghent.—There is nothing of interest in this or the following Chapter, if we except the very curious proofs contained in both of them that the Corpus MS. is the Author's auto- Chap. XI.

Of Part III. Chap. XI.

graph. These will be described in another place.[1] The memory of Henry of Ghent would have passed away from the earth had he not written some learned works. He lives with us now in his writings, and is known among the schoolmen as Doctor Solemnis. Capgrave says that this notice of Henry of Ghent was introduced that the name of his King might be exalted by the learning of clergy who have borne it, as well as by the renown of imperial, royal, and military Henries.

Chap. XII.

CHAPTER XII. Of HENRY DE URIMARIA. — Our Author concludes his series of illustrious Henries with a brief notice of one of his own Order, Henry de Urimaria, of the Order of the Hermits of S. Augustin. He became a Doctor of the University of Paris, and devoted his days to the pursuits of learning and the practice of piety. Jordan of Saxony, also a Hermit Friar, has given a list of his Works, which Capgrave has copied. The Chapter ends with a short account of his death, and a legend of the miraculous cure of a woman who paid devotion to his body after his decease.

Conclusion of this Work.

In a few concluding paragraphs, evidently not added until our Author had determined not to continue the Third Part of his Work, beyond the twelfth chapter, and which in the autograph MS. clearly appear to be of a later date than the contents of the preceding pages, the book is again, for the fourth time, solemnly offered to Henry the Sixth; and the Martyr-Kings of England are invoked to help him by their prayers, and to protect him from his enemies.

The date of its completion.

An incidental allusion in the last paragraph enables us to fix, within a year or two, the date of the com-

[1] See page lii.

pletion of the Work. It has been already shewn[1] that the Second Part was probably finished at the end of the year 1446, or in January or February of the year following, and certainly not earlier than August in the former year. And now, almost in the last line, the Author prays that his lord may ever preserve the faith inviolate, and may bring up his children, when any shall come (*cum venerint*), faithfully for God. Now, as Henry's only son, Edward, was born on the 13th of October, 1453, there can be no doubt that the "Liber de Illustribus Henricis" was completed before that year, and (as we have seen) not earlier than 1446.[2]

Date of its completion.

---

[1] See page 35.

[2] The Prologue of the *Nova Legenda Angliæ* is printed in Appendix I, p. 195. The work itself is known to have been a compilation by Capgrave: "Scripsit *Catalogum*" (writes Wharton in his continuation of Cave), "sive *Legendam Sanctorum Angliæ*, quæ typis excusa prodiit Londini, 1516. Historiam istam expilasse dicitur Capgravius ex ingenti et pulchro admodum volumine ejusdem argumenti, quod in Bibliotheca Cottoniana MS. asservatur." The reference is to the "Historia Aurea" of John of Tinmouth. The "Nova Legenda" was printed by Wynkyn de Worde, together with the Prologue in question, which has been generally received as the composition of Capgrave. The style certainly bears a great general resemblance to his, and the reference (at page 208) to the writer: *Hujus . . . . collector, sive (ut ita dicam) auctor operis*, taken in connexion with the sentences which follow, and the concluding prayer, as well as certain allusions made in the course of the Prologue to the contents of the work itself, would seem to prove that the compiler of the one was the writer of the other. However this may be, it is quite clear that the sentence at page 209, from *Et quia* to the end, was added when the book was printed in 1516. Capgrave died in 1464, and, therefore, of course, could not have written a sentence in which allusion is made to the first printing of his Work,—"in hac præsenti Legenda *jam noviter impressa*." The Prologue, however, might well have ended, and, in all probability, did originally end with the word *Amen* at the bottom of page 208. Still, even then, there are difficulties in the way of proving that it could have been written by Capgrave. Allusion is made (see page 203) to the *Fasciculus Temporum* of Werner Rolewink, the *first* edition of which was printed in 1470, six years after Capgrave's death, and probably many more after the compilation of the *Nova Legenda* (see Wharton's continuation of Cave, p. 168).

Description of the MSS.

There are two MSS. of this work, one of which is preserved in the Cottonian collection, the other among Archbishop Parker's MSS. in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Of these the former has been adopted for the text for the reasons stated below, and has been carefully collated with the latter.

MS. Cotton. Tiber. A. VIII.

The Cottonian MS. (Tiberius A. VIII.) is beautifully written, and ornamented at the beginning of each Chapter with initial letters, richly illuminated. A *facsimile* of the page which contains the commencement of the Fifth Chapter of the Second Part will be found opposite the title page of this volume. As it seemed most likely that this handsome book was the Presentation Copy given by the Author to King Henry the Sixth, and would contain his latest corrections, it has been chosen for the Text in preference to the Autograph MS. It is in quarto, written upon vellum, and consists of one hundred and one leaves.[1] All the marginal additions and insertions which appear in the Autograph MS. are given in one continuous text in this.

The Autograph MS.; Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The MS. C.C.C. is a small quarto, written upon vellum, and containing one hundred and thirty-nine pages. It is perfect; and from it have been supplied the Pro-

---

The sentence containing this allusion, however, may have been interpolated, as it may certainly be removed without breaking the continuity of the argument. Either, then, the entire Prologue, including the last sentence, is a compilation made by some anonymous person for Wynkyn de Worde, at the time of his publication of the *Legenda*; or it is the work of Capgrave himself, with interpolations and additions made at some later time. It should be remarked that the Prologue was added to the printed book after its completion, as is proved by the signatures of the sheets.

[1] Many of them are sadly injured by the fire, and the Prologue, with the exception of a few lines, is wholly wanting. The remains, however, have been most carefully preserved, and the entire MS. inlaid in drawing paper, and handsomely bound. The binder has unfortunately misplaced many of the leaves, so as to render it no easy matter for a reader to hunt his way through the MS.; but this can be easily rectified.

logue and other destroyed portions of the Cottonian MS. Moreover, it is undoubtedly the autograph MS. The writing corresponds exactly with that of the "Chronicle of England,[1]" the "Commentary on the Acts," the All Souls' copy of the "Commentary on the Creeds," and the "Fragments of the Guide to the Antiquities of Rome." Two, at least, of these MSS. contain good, though not strictly conclusive, evidence that they are in the handwriting of their Author. That this, however, is the case, may be distinctly proved from the present MS. The scattered evidences of this fact, indeed, are pointed out in the notes wherever they occur; but it may not be considered superfluous to recapitulate them here. The entire MS. is clearly written in one hand, but at many different times, and with ink of many different shades. It appears to have ended originally with the reign of Henry V.[2] which concludes near the top of a page, and up to that point it is written with more or less uniformity; but the remainder of the MS. presents rather the appearance of a series of notes written from time to time in a common-place book than anything else. At the end of the account of the reign of Henry VI., one leaf of the parchment is left bare before the beginning of the Third Part, evidently intended to receive some addition to the Second Part; but the writer abandoned his design and wrote at the bottom of the previous leaf this direction to his scribe: —"Make no space, but writh forth 'INVOCATO.'" These are the only English words in the MS., and are more than probably those of the Author. The lives

The Autograph MS.

[1] See the fac-simile prefixed to Capgrave's "Chronicle of England," ed. London, 1858.—Since the publication of that Work the Editor has ascertained that some few extracts from it are to be found in MS. XCIII. (C.) in the Library of Lincoln's Inn. *See* Hunter's Catalogue, page 338.

[2] See p. 124.

The Autograph MS.

of Henry de Beaumont, Henry le Despenser, and others in the Third Part, have been added to in the margins, often to a considerable extent. But the most remarkable of all the internal proofs, and one which must be admitted to be quite conclusive, is found in the Life of Henry de Urimaria. Capgrave gives a list of his Works; first, he mentions four which he had not seen himself, giving the title and *Incipit* of each from Jordan's "Vitas Fratrum." He then proceeds to mention several others which he had seen: a Work on the Ethics, and "Quæstiones suas Ordinarias, quarum "initium est—." After these words a blank space was left, and the writer proceeded: "Item vidi Quodlibetum "suum, cujus etiam initium ;"—and again a blank space. Afterwards—for the ink is darker, and the writing, though by the same hand, larger and bolder—the former blank was filled up by the insertion of the omitted *Incipit*:—"*Utrum verbum sit ratio alicujus produc-*" *tionis,*" while on the latter was written, because, as he says, the Author had not been able to refer to the volume a second time,—"*jam non recordor, quoniam*" *ad manus non est.*"

It would seem that this MS. was originally in the possession of Bishop Bale. He gives, in the folio edition of his "Scriptores Majoris Britanniæ," a list of MSS. which he had lost:—"Veterum et Recentiorum quorumdam Librorum Catalogum, in tuam ac Sociorum gratiam, Gesnere vir optime, his addidi; quos pulcherrime scriptos, et non typis excusos (quod sciam), Papistarum violentiis coactus, in hoc altero meo exilio, in Hybernia reliqui, ut ex eorum titulis scires qui et quales sint, ac mihi condoleres eorum jacturam et interitum, nisi Deus illos servaverit:—*Chronica et Historiæ Britannicorum Scriptorum.*" Among these are mentioned three Works by Capgrave,—the "De Sequacibus Divi Augustini," the "Catalogus Sanctorum Angliæ,"

and "Johannes Capgravus De Nobilibus Henricis." In the opening sentence of the Prologue of the MS. C.C.C. the word "Capgrave" has been inserted, above the line, after the words "Frater Johannes," in Bale's handwriting; whence it may be reasonably inferred that this MS. is the very one which Bale stated that he lost in his flight.

This Work is now printed[1] for the first time from the MSS., described above, and no others are known to be extant.[2] The modern orthography has been adopted throughout. It would have been worse than pedantry to have retained *set* for *sed*, *dampno* for *damno*, *martir* for *martyr*, &c.; on the other hand, in the case of words spelt in good MSS. in two ways, preference has been given to the MS. orthography, where it coincides with the earlier classical forms, over more modern modes. It has not been thought necessary to alter *jocundus* into *jucundus*, *multo* into *mulcto*, *artus* into *arctus*.

It may not, perhaps, be considered out of place to describe here, of the few extant memorials of Capgrave, the ancient seals belonging to his Friary, impressions

---

[1] The Editor desires to offer his best thanks to all those who have assisted him during the progress of his labours. Especially is he indebted to the Rev. the Master of Balliol College, the Rev. J. W. Burgon, Fellow of Oriel College the Rev. W. H. Fremantle, Fellow of All Souls' College, and the Rev. T. B. Wilkinson, Fellow of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, for the facilities afforded to him by them while consulting MSS. preserved in the Libraries of their respective Colleges. And his best thanks are due to the Rev. Herbert Randolph, of Balliol College, for many useful suggestions.

[2] One Chapter only, the Ninth of the Third Part, as has been already stated, was printed by Wharton in the Second Volume of his "Anglia Sacra."—It should also be mentioned, that this Work had been selected by the late Mr. Petrie for publication in his "Monumenta Historica Britannica," and that a considerable portion of it had been transcribed for that purpose, under his direction.

of four of which are still preserved (though in a somewhat mutilated state), attached to two acquittances, or receipts for money paid to the Prior and Convent, in the possession of the Town Clerk of Lynn.[1] The documents bear date 1382.[2] The seals which are all in shape like a vesica, are as follows:—

1. A large seal, very imperfect, about two and a half inches in length by one inch and a half in width. It contains a throne, on which is seated a figure intended to represent the Eternal FATHER, bearing on His knees the Crucified CHRIST. The principal figure is much mutilated; the crucifix, which is of small dimensions, is nearly perfect. The throne is ornamented with a well-cut diaper, and under a trefoil-headed arch beneath it are two figures of monks kneeling with clasped hands. Two words only of the legend remain :—

"SCI AVGVSTINI."

2. The common seal of the Convent, in length about two inches, and in width one inch and a quarter. Both

---

[1] Engravings of three of these, taken from facsimiles made by Mr. Ready, Sigillarist, of Lowestoft, are given as a frontispiece in the Translation which has been published (by the permission of the Master of the Rolls,) simultaneously with this Edition of the Latin Text, by the Messrs. Longman. The Editor is indebted to E. Lane Swatman, Esq., Town Clerk of Lynn, for several particulars relating to these interesting seals.

[2] The following is the substance of one of the documents :—

"Obligatio Conventus, Prioris, etc. pro L. marcis, quas donavit nobis Magister Beston. Memorandum quod die Lunæ, xxv. die Augusti, anno Domini M.CCCLXXXII., nos Frater Johannes Delgathe, tunc Prior, et Conventus Ordinis Fratrum Hermitarum Sancti Augustini Lenniæ, recepimus de dono Venerabilis Patris, Fratris Johannis de Beston, eorumdem Ordinis et Conventus, Sacræ Theologiæ Professoris, L. marcas, ad opus prædicti Conventus . . . . . In cujus rei testimonium Sigilla Patris Provincialis, Prioris Localis, et Conventus dicti Ordinis . . . Data apud Lenne."

ends of the impression have been broken away. It represents a boat, in which is a standing figure of S. Margaret trampling upon the dragon, and holding in her hand a Cross. On either side of her is a figure of a kneeling monk. The remains of the legend[1] are to the following effect:—

"S. COMVNE ERMT . . . SCI AVGI. LENNE."

3. The seal of the Provincial of the Order, and very curious, as it was no doubt often used in later years by Capgrave himself acting in that capacity. The impression is much mutilated. It represents the Blessed Virgin bearing in her arms the Holy Child, and surrounded by stars. There is the figure of a monk beneath with his hand upraised, and above are the remains of a figure holding a book. On either side of the Blessed Virgin is an angel bearing a censer. The remnants of the legend[2] run thus:—

". . . . NCIAL . . . AR . . . ORDIS SCI AVGVS . . . ."

This seal and the next are somewhat smaller than No. 2.

4. The seal of the Prior. This seal contains a kind of twolight window, with trefoil-headed lights, divided by small circular shafts with capitals and bases. In

[1] Some portions of this legend are doubtful. Of the first letter S a mere fragment remains; the second word is clear; the letters ERMT in all probability stood for EREMITARVM, but two of them are indistinct; the first letter may be an F, the third an A, in which case the word must have been FRATRVM. The fourth word is broken away with the bottom of the seal; it was probably ORDINIS. The last word of the legend is also obscure; it may have been LENIE. The whole legend, in its uncontracted form, appears to have been,—
SIGILLVM COMMVNE EREMITARVM ORDINIS SANCTI AVGVSTINI LENNE.

[2] The legend when complete probably ran thus,—
S. PATRIS PROVINCIALIS FRATRVM EREMITARVM ORDIS SCI. AVGVSTINI.

the small tracery-opening is a head. In one light is a crowned figure of S. Margaret trampling on a dragon,[1] and in the other a figure of a monk kneeling, with his hands clasped in prayer. The remains of the legend[2] are as follows:—

"S . PRIORIS . . . TA . . OR . SCI . AVG LENII."

The Index. The Index appended to the present volume may at first sight appear to be larger and fuller than was required, but a perusal of the Work itself will probably lead to a different conclusion. At least one use of the former will be as a key to the understanding of the latter. There are few pages which do not contain allusions to Bishops and Nobles, so obscure and vague as to render it necessary for the reader frequently to consult some book of reference, in order to ascertain who in a certain year was Bishop of a certain See, and who at this period or that possessed this or that Duchy or Earldom. The Editor believes that the

---

[1] The figure of S. Margaret occurs in many of the ancient seals belonging to Lynn. The great seal of the town, a magnificent circular seal, three inches in diameter, contains her image under a niche of beautiful tracery, and around was the legend: SUB· MARGARETA· TERITUR· DRACO· STAT· CRVCE· LETA· On the obverse the circle is octofoiled, and contains the eagle of S. John the Evangelist, holding in its claws, on a scroll, the first words of his Gospel: IN PRINCIPIO ERAT. The legend is, —✠ SIGILLUM· COMMVNITATIS · LENNIE.— The seal of the Mayor of Lynn also contains a figure of St. Margaret under a splendid shrine, with the arms of the town beneath. The legend is as follows:—SIGILLVM· SECRETVM · MAIORATVS· LENNIE. The same figure occurs on an impression of a seal attached to probates of wills of the date 1303. On either side are the letters R and A. The remains of the legend are as follows:—COMMISSAR. CV . . . . NORWIC · IN· LEN. *See* Taylor's "Antiquities of King's Lynn," published in 1844.

[2] The TA is rather indistinct, but there is every reason to suppose that the letters are the remains of EREMITARVM, as in the Common Seal.

pains bestowed upon this part of his work will not be considered thrown away, if, in addition to fulfilling the ordinary purposes of an Index, it shall help the reader to understand his Author without difficulty.

EXETER COLLEGE, OXFORD,
July 8th, 1858.

ERRATA.

* Page 39, ll. 20 and 24, *for* "concilio" *read* "consilio;" *for* "scismate" (also at p. 148, l. 20) *read* "schismate."

* „ 48, l. 9, *for* "Cronicarum" *read* "Chronicarum.

„ 49, l. 5, *for* "diademeta" *read* "diademata."

* „ 55, l. 19, *for* "concilio" *read* "consilio," and *dele* comma after it.

* „ 60, l. 28, *for* "diocesin" *read* "diœcesin."

„ 70, l. 27, *for* "silicet" *read* "scilicet."

„ 79, (note 5, line 13), *for* "eum" *read* "cum."

„ 89, (note 3), *for* "July 10" *read* "Nov. 17."

„ 99, l, 32, *for* "autum" *read* "autem."

„ 107, l. 25, *dele* "s" (dropped from "secundum") before "etiam."

„ 167, l. 11, *dele* "in."

„ 196, l. 28, *for* "divini" *read* "divinæ."

* The *Errata* which have an asterisk prefixed to them are accidental retentions of the corrupt orthography of the MS.

LIBER
DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.

DEDICATIO.[1]

[HENRICO, Dei gratia regi Angliæ et Franciæ dominoque Hiberniæ, suus infimus servulus, Frater Johannes Capgrave,[2] Doctorum minimus, Fratrumque Heremitarum Sancti Augustini exiguus, potestatem firmam, consilium secundum, et regimen solidatum. Dedication to Henry VI.

Omnipotens[3] Sermo Ille, Qui a regalibus quidem sedibus, juxta Sapientem, venit, durus bellator est adversus eos qui, feroci animo regnantes, populos in virga ferrea premunt et castigant. Hoc enim fatetur Psalmista in eo loco ubi ait: "Quam terribilis est," inquit, "apud omnes reges terræ."[4]

Sed et iis qui sub timore Dei eruditi sunt, et populos in veritate[5] judicant, inter eos constituti quasi ex illis, iis quidem efficitur idem Sermo, juxta almi patriarchæ Jacob vaticinium,—"Panis pinguis præbens delicias regibus."[6] Et quum, juxta vota populorum, rex noster a primordiis suis innata floruit pietate, ita ut de eo verissime præconizetur illud beati Job:—

---

[1] The greater part of this Dedication has been necessarily supplied from the MS. C.C.C., (with which the whole of the Cottonian MS. has been collated), as, with the exception of a few lines at the end, this portion of the latter MS. has been destroyed by fire. Two leaves of a MS. which could have had no connexion whatever with Capgrave's, or, indeed, any other historical work, have been bound up with the Cottonian MS. as if by mistake for the missing leaves of the Dedication.

[2] *Capgrave.*] This word has been added above the line in a later hand, apparently that of Bale.

[3] Wisdom, xviii. 15.

[4] Psalm lxxvi. 12.

[5] *in veritate.*] These words have been added above the line.

[6] Genesis, xlix. 20.

4 2

Dedication. "Quum ab infantia crevit mecum miseratio, et ab utero matris meæ egressa est mecum,"[1] recte dulcedine Verbi debriatus æmulos pacis prosternet, et omnia sibi bona, tanquam vero pacis filio, et sicut præoptant, subdite provenient. Impleta enim sunt in populo isto quæ olim Moises in populo Israel implenda etiam ipse moriturus expressit. "Provideat," inquit, "Dominus Deus spirituum omnis carnis hominem, qui sit supra multitudinem hanc, et possit exire et intrare ante eos, et educere illos vel introducere, ne sit populus Domini sicut oves absque pastore."[2]

Hoc[3] Moisei vaticinium in persona vestra, gloriosissime domine, nobis accepimus consignatum, qui ab ipsis cunabulis regimen regni accepistis, et sceptrigeram tenetis potestatem. Introducere enim populum, vel educere, ad auctoritatem vestram pertinet, qui viam morum elegistis optimam, et vitiorum respuistis abrupta.

Nomini ergo vestro, quod non sine mysteriis latet, hoc opus devovi; deprecans ut præsens labor etsi non facundia redoleat, placeat tamen dantis animæ fidelitas. Ad ampliandum enim desiderium vestrum in optimis viris sequendis hunc libellum edidi, ubi laudes eorum qui nomen vestrum sortiuntur ex veterum libris collegi, quatenus vos, qui hoc nomine laureamini, virtutem quoque nominis imitemini.[4]

Etymology of the name "Henricus." Etsi enim apud auctores hoc nomen etymologiatum non inveniatur, sed neque expositum, ego tamen, magnam hujus rei convenientiam fodiens, puto quod ex Hebræa lingua, quæ omnium linguarum mater

---

[1] Job, xxxi. 18.

[2] Numbers, xxvii. 16, 17.

[3] *Hoc . . . . vaticinium.*] Written (by mistake) hunc . . . . vaticinium in the MS.

[4] *imitemini.*] The MS. has only "imite," and this has been written upon an erasure, but is evidently intended for "imitemini," though there is no mark of abbreviation.

est, sumpserit exordium. "Hen" enim, ut aiunt interpretes, "Ecce fontem" vel "Ecce oculum" sonat; "Ri," sive "Rei,"—ut apud quosdam codices alternantur,—"Pastor meus," sive "Pabulum meum" est; et "Cus," "Æthiops" vel "Tenebrosus."[1] Dedication.

Fit ergo ex his simul collectis talis sensus ut is, qui hoc nomine laureatus est, fontem amplectitur, quem cervus sitiens, et ætatem renovans, currens, desiderat. Oculum quoque mentis a trabe festucaque emundans, patienter expectet quousque sibi dicatur, ut olim Discipulis dictum est Domino:—"Beati oculi qui vident quæ vos videtis."[2] "Pastor meus," sive "Pabulum meum," huic nomini satis congrua germanitate jungitur, pro eo quod ductor totius gregis rex noster sit, non solum auctoritate præcellente, verum sed et bonorum operum exercitio, quod populus devote audiens, hoc, tanquam pabulum, mandit. Porro Æthiopica tenebrositas sola ad hoc refertur, ut credam regem nostrum a spurcitiis pessimis mundatum, innoxium, ergoque et immunem, nec alicujus tetri coloris fuligine decoloratum.

Hæc præambula, domine mi, prudentiam vestram non gravent. Non enim ad materiam tantam sine præfatiuncula ausus sum accedere, ne, irreverenter appropiens, projiciar a tanta dignitate. Sic enim scriptum est:—"Qui perscrutator est majestatis opprimetur a gloria."[3]

Sub brevi autem annotatione ea de quibus agenda sunt hic distinxi:— Summary of the contents of this work.

Prima Pars de viris agit illustribus qui hoc nomine in Imperio floruerunt.

Secunda autem de iis qui consimili nomine in hoc Regno honore regio[4] claruerunt.

---

[1] See the "Hebraïcorum nominum interpretatio in Bed. Opp. iii. pp. 427; 458; 407. (Ed. 1612.)

[2] S. Luke, x. 23.

[3] Proverbs, xxv. 27.

[4] *honore regio.*] These words have been inserted above the line.

Dedication. Tertia de aliis, hic et alibi[1] succedentibus, quorum nomina memoria digna fuerunt.

Habebit ergo dominus meus rex et in agendis mores optimos, et in credendis fidem firmissimam, et in judicandis regulam tutissimam, ex his viris, sibi et nomine et sanguine propinquis, qui ipsum præcesserunt.

Custodiat Dominus Deus regem nostrum hunc in decore suo, et in gloria qua coronavit eum mater Parisiensis, et altera non minus dilecta mater Londoniensis, ad laudem Dei, et rectorum condignam memoriam. Nam, ut pie credimus, mater illa prima adhuc in visceribus suis multos habet filios, regi nostro satis affectos; et non minus credimus matrem illam famosissimam quandoque spurcitias suas evomituram, regemque nostrum cum gloria suscepturam. Annuat hoc Deus][2] tempore nostro,[3] ut [simul vivant et simul gaudeant] hæc duo regna, juxta quod vaticinatus est propheta Ezechiel, dicens:—["Et rex unus,"] inquit, "erit omnibus imperans, et non erunt ultra duo gentes, nec dividentur amplius in duo regna."[4]

Regnum ergo vestrum in terris sit semper [pace] stabilitum! Regnum quoque Cœlestis Patriæ sit vobis [æternaliter] præparatum, excellentissime et præclarissime [domine rex], ad laudem Domini nostri Jesu Christi, Qui est Rex regum et Dominus dominantium. Amen.

---

[1] *alibi.*] In the text originally written "ibi," but altered into "alibi" above the line.

[2] *Annuat hoc Deus.*] The bracket after these words indicates that the previous portion of the Dedication has been taken from the MS. C.C.C. From this point the MS. Cotton. is used, except for the bracketed parts.

[3] *tempore nostro.*] Temporibus nostris. C.C.C.

[4] Ezekiel, xxxvii. 22.

JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE

LIBER

DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.[1]

PRIMA PARS HUJUS OPERIS CONTINET SEX CAPITULA, SECUNDUM IMPERATORES[2] IN IMPERIO SUCCEDENTES.

De Henrico Imperatore Primo.

Capitulum Primum.

Invocation of the Divine blessing on this Work.

Gesta imperialia conscripturus, hoc mihi summe requirendum puto, Ejus impetrare auxilium, Cujus Imperii fines sic usque dilatandas Propheta meminit, ut diceret,—"Multiplicabitur," inquit, "Ejus Imperium, cujus[3] non erit finis."[4] Quisquis enim in imperio mundi sit[5] sublimatus, et in Imperio Domini non [admissus], vel eidem Imperio contradicens, hic, etsi ad pauca[6]

---

[1] *De illustribus Henricis.*] The Cottonian MS., a beautiful, and, apparently, a presentation copy, has been adopted for the text. In the beginning and at the end many single words and sentences have been destroyed by fire, and these have been supplied within brackets from the MS. C.C.C. Camb.

[2] *secundum imperatores*] Secundum sex imperatores. C.C.C.

[3] *cujus*] et pacis. C.C.C.

[4] Isaiah, ix. 7.

[5] *sit*] fuerit. C.C.C.

[6] *ad pauca*] ad vota paucâ. C.C.C.

A.D. 918. temporalia habeat, non dominationem in [fine exercet], nec[1] bona servitus sibi imputabitur, quippe quoniam[2] dominorum Domino servire [contradicens, aut] ignorans, aut contemnens, decessit.

Quapropter mundi[3] rectores, qui et in numero illustrium Henricorum computari merentur, non Paganitatis errore [sunt] cæcati, nec sine pœnitentia a mundo vocati, sed christianissimi viri, fide stabiles, moribus pacifici [facti sunt; et, si] qua, temptatore consurgente, aut carne [alliciente, mala] commiserunt, per pœnitentiam salutarem [abluta sunt].

E quibus primus, tam ætate [quam honore constitutus], est vir iste, cujus genealogiam primo describendam puto.

A.D. 918.* The Emperor Henry I., the Fowler. His parentage.

Patrem habuit Octonem, ducem Saxoniæ strenuissimum, qui Hungaros, [Sclavos, et ceteras gentes] subjugavit dominio. Sorores habuit duas; una quæ copulata est Octoni, filio Adelstani, Anglorum monarchæ; et alteram, quam habuit in contubernio Lodewicus, Aquitanorum princeps. Sic enim patet quoniam et in [primordiis] suis imperium regno Angliæ colligatum est, [propter inaudita] regum opera terræ ejusdem. Venerabilis[4] domina Matilda, filia Theodorici, regis Saxoniæ,[5] uxor erat huic strenuo, laudabili, et magnifico [domino, de] qua egressus est filius ejus Octo, qui reduxit [imperium], a Longobardis diu usurpatum, ad [Francos, sicut] testantur gesta de iis prolixiore schemate.[6] Sic enim dilatatis undique amicis [carnis et sanguinis] prospere regnavit, provide sua et suos gubernans. Dictum est autem quod, mortuo Lodewico, qui imperium tenuit, cuncti elegerunt Octonem,

---

[1] *nec*] sed nec. C.C.C.

[2] *quoniam*] qui. C.C.C.

* The differences between the ordinarily received Chronology and that of the present MS. are noted in the margin when they occur.

[3] *Quapropter mundi*] Quapropter hi mundi. C.C.C.

[4] *Venerabilis domina*] Venerabilis autem domina. C.C.C.

[5] *Saxoniæ*] Saxonum. C.C.C.

[6] *schemate.*] schemate conscripta. C.C.C.

patrem hujus Henrici; qui molestiis[1] ætatis prægravatus, honori cessit, magis [eligens Deo] servire quam seculo. Elegerunt [autem tunc Conradum] Primum, qui, anno septimo [imperii sui] moriens, hunc imperatorem designavit [Henricum]. A.D. 918.

Henricus igitur in imperio sublimatus est anno [Domini] nongentesimo vicesimo, et regnavit prospere annis decem et octo. Henry succeeds to the throne.

Hic, in principio regni,[2] contra Hungaros et ceteros populos grave bellum indixit, et, suffragante sibi Divina protectione ac titulo veritatis, omnium victor effectus, pace gaudebat. Non enim adquiritur pax præsentis seculi sine bello, sicut nec futuri, quanquam aliter. Protestatur autem Sanctus Augustinus in multis opusculis suis, quod nunquam bellum justum committitur nisi pro pace habenda. A.D. 919. He declares war against the Hungarians, and conquers them.

Hic etiam vir, anno tertio imperii sui, [fures,] latrones, et incarceratos malefactores a vinculis absolvit, donans eis arma simul et divitias, quos contra justitiæ et imperii inimicos bellatores misit. A.D. 920. Henry arms prisoners against his enemies.

Super qua re nobis quæstio satis perplexa oritur, [utrum] reges Christiani, necessitate urgente, incarceratos absolvere possint ad jus regni tuendum. Et quoniam auctoritas mea non grandis est, intuendus est processus beati Thomæ de Aquino, in Secunda Secundæ, Quæstione lxvii., articulo iiii., in pede,[3] ubi ait:—"Dicendum[4] est[5] quod, sicut ex dictis patet, duo sunt, quantum ad propositum pertinet, circa judicem consideranda; quorum unum est quod ipse The Author discusses the propriety of this.

---

[1] *molestiis*] molestia. C.C.C.

[2] *regni*] regni sui. C.C.C.

[3] *in pede.*] *i.e.* in the "Conclusio" of "Articulus iiii." See S. Thom. Aquin. Summa Theologiæ, 2ª. 2æ. q. lxvii. art. iv. p. 130, Ed. Colon. 1604, — Cologne, Anton. Hierat., 1604, with which this whole passage has been collated.

[4] *Dicendum.*] "Conclusio.—*Potest superior judex pœnam reo relaxare, si passus injuriam remittere velit.* Respondeo dicendum, etc." Th. Aquin.

[5] *est.*] om. Th. Aquin.

A.D. 920. habet judicare inter accusatorem et reum; [aliud autem est quod] ipse non fert judicii sententiam, quasi ex propria, sed quasi ex publica potestate. Duplici ergo ratione [impeditur] judex ne reum a pœna absolvere possit. [Primo] quidem ex parte accusatoris, ad cujus jus quandoque pertinet ut reus puniatur; puta propter aliquam injuriam in ipsum commissam, cujus relaxatio [non est in] arbitrio alicujus judicis, quia quilibet judex tenetur jus suum reddere unicuique. Alio modo impeditur ex parte reipublicæ, cujus potestate fungitur; ad cujus bonum pertinet quod malefactores puniantur. Tamen[1] quantum ad hoc differt inter inferiores judices et supremum judicem, scilicet principem, cui est plenarie potestas publica commissa. Judex enim inferior non habet potestatem absolvendi reum a pœna contra leges a superiore[2] sibi impositas. Unde super illud Johannis xix.—[3] 'Non haberes in me[4] potestatem ullam, nisi tibi datum esset desuper,'[5] dicit Augustinus, — 'Talem Deus dederat Pilato potestatem, ut esset sub Cæsaris potestate, ne ei omnino liberum esset accusatum absolvere.' Sed princeps qui habet plenariam potestatem in republica, si ille qui passus est injuriam nescit[6] remittere, poterit reum licite absolvere, si hoc publicæ utilitati viderit non esse nocivum." Hæc Thomas.

He decides that the Emperor acted rightly.

Dicimus ergo quod rex noster pro utilitate regni posset absolvere multos incarceratos, qui in terra et in mare fortiter resisterent inimicis, sub tutamento tamen aliorum. Nec ignorat dominus meus quales

---

[1] *Tamen*] Sed tamen. C.C.C. —Th. Aquin.

[2] *superiore.*] So written in C.C.C. and in Th. Aquin. The MS. Cotton. has "superiori."

[3] S. John, xix. 11.

[4] *in me.*] Thus written in both MSS.; "adversum me," — Th. Aquin.

[5] *nisi . . . . desuper.*] These words occur in both MSS., but are omitted in Th. Aquin.

[6] *nescit.*] Thus written in both MSS.; "velit eam" in Th. Aquin.

sunt qui incarcerantur, quam agiles, quam [fortes], et multi propter levissimas, ut dicitur, causas. Hic enim supradictus imperator, ut ad priora redeamus, non sine consilio virorum providorum id egisse putandus est. A.D. 920.

Fertur enim de isto viro magnifico, quod lanceam mirandi operis, sanguine Domini Jesu sanctificatam, ad imperialem possessionem convexit. Quo autem ordine a Magno Constantino usque ad tempora hæc, translata atque possessa sit, sic tradunt auctores. Moriens enim Constantinus donavit illam regi Burgundiorum Rodulpho. Rodulphus autemabscedens donavit illam Samsoni comiti, a quo rex almus et imperator Henricus precibus, minis, et muneribus, data sibi etiam parte provinciæ Suevorum, extorsit, et hanc ad insigne et tutamentum imperii posteris reliquit. Acta sunt autem hæc anno regni ejus decimo. A.D. 927. Story of the sacred spear.

O devotio militis Christi, qui tam ardenter quæsivit ferrum, quo, aperta archa, pax evolavit, et iterum ad eam rediens olivam detulit pacis! Ostium enim in latere archæ quam Noe fabricavit, vulnus lateris Christi, secundum auctores, designat. Decet enim reges talia insignia quærere et investigare, ac ad incrementum Fidei, et devotionem augendam, in publico collocare. Eulogy on the Emperor.

Quomodo enim, aut a quibus personis, servata hæc lancea fuit, vel ubi reposita, non cito invenitur. Scribit tamen auctor Commotionis Ierosolomitanæ, quæ facta est circa annum Domini[1] millesimum nonagesimum sextum, quod lancea Domini apud Antiochiam inventa sit, præsente comite Godfrido, qui postea factus est rex Ierusalem. Scribit autem sic :—"In illa,[2]" inquit, "expeditione, antequam Antiochia caperetur, apparuit Sanctus Andreas cuidam rustico simplici,[3] dicens : 'Veni, Legend.

[1] *Domini.*] Christi. C.C.C.

[2] "*In illa,*" &c.] This passage occurs in chap. clxviii. of the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus, Cologne, 1616.

[3] *simplici.*] Mart. Polonus here adds the words "Provinciali genere."

A.D. 927. ostendam tibi lanceam, qua perforatum[1] est latus Jesu Christi.' Qui rusticus, cuncta civitate præsente,[2] Godfrido[3] comite, et capellano suo, in ecclesia Sancti Petri, fodiens[4] in loco de quo revelationem acceperat,[5] lanceam invenit.[6] Dubitantibus autem plerisque utrum lancea esset Christi, quidam, Bartholomæus nomine, cui[7] Christus apparens de lancea certificavit, cum ipsa lancea per ignem tredecim pedum[8] illæsus transivit." Hæc excerpta sunt ex dicto [auctore].

Submission of the King of France.

De prædicto autem imperatore item legitur quod Carolus, qui tunc rex Francorum erat, submisit se sibi et regnum suum in perpetuum; et in signum et pignus perpetui fœderis, misit brachium martyris Dionysii, auro et gemmis involutum. Et quoniam multi inhonestum putant ut brachia Sanctorum, aut membra, post mortem amputentur et donentur, nos, exempla Patrum sequentes, putamus satis congruum fore, dummodo talia non vendantur, sed iis qui magnam ad hos Sanctos devotionem habent libere concedantur. Unde et de Leone Papa Quarto quod [consimiliter] fecerit sic legitur—"Præmisso," inquit,[9] "[jejunio, et oratione] fusa, dedit dominus Papa Karolo Magno [de] Corona Domini partem, et de spina, quæ tunc floruit, ipso cernente, et unum clavum Passionis Domini, atque partem Crucis Dominicæ, sudarium quoque Domini, et camisiam Beatæ Virginis, ac novissime brachium

---

[1] *perforatum.*] The MSS. have "perforatus" by mistake. Martinus has "qua perforatus fuit Jesus Christus," which accounts for the error.

[2] *cuncta civitate præsente.*] In both MSS.; capta civitate, præsente, etc. Mart. Pol.

[3] *Godfrido.*] om. Mart. Pol.

[4] *fodiens*] fodiens terram. Mart. Pol.

[5] *habuerat.*] In both MSS.; acceperat. Mart. Pol.

[6] *invenit.*] Martinus here adds:—"anno millesimo octuagesimo nono."

[7] *cui, &c.*] quem Christus, sibi apparens, etc. Mart. Pol.

[8] *pedum.*] Martinus here adds:—"quem fieri jusserat."

[9] *inquit.*] See the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus. Chap. lxxiv.

Sancti Simeonis." Si enim sanctis non esset complacentia quod diversa membra eorum ad diversas ecclesias transferrentur ob ampliationem Fidei et devotionis incrementum, puto quod divisores, sive donatores, aut portatores harum reliquiarum sine vindicta non pertransirent, maxime cum viderimus sæpius vindictam super eos cecidisse qui bona temporalia eis abstulerunt. A.D. 927.

Anno autem septimo decimo imperii hujus viri, Niger, rex Russorum, sibi occurrens, grave bellum indixit. Et, cum esset magna copia navium ex adversa parte, rex iste Henricus ac imperator magnificus, injecto Græco igne, naves combussit; et sic, confusus et superatus, alter recessit. A.D. 934. Niger of Russia proclaims war against Henry, but is repulsed.

De isto Henrico sic scribit Godfridus Viterbiensis in sua Chronica, quam vocat Pantheon[1]: —

Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

"Henricus,[2] rex[3] Saxonicus, regnare vocatur:[4]
Noluit imperium sumere rite datum.
Invenere ducem veterano more sedentem,
Aucupis officio sua retia perficientem,
Ut modicas caperet insidianter aves.
Et, quia simpliciter fuit his[5] præsentibus auceps,

---

[1] *Pantheon.*] The quotations made by Capgrave from this Chronicle have been collated with the edition contained in vol. vii., pp. 347—519, of Muratori's "Rerum Italicarum Scriptores." —Mediolani, fol. 1725. By this means many important various readings have been gained, both in the present and subsequent quotations; and several lines, which had been so carelessly transcribed that it was impossible either to scan or to construe them, have been corrected in the foot notes. The measure in the original is somewhat peculiar—two Hexameters followed by a Pentameter. This arrangement will be found continually interfered with in the text, in consequence of occasional omissions of entire lines.

[2] *Henricus, etc.*] Col. 431 of the Printed Edition.

[3] *rex.*] In both MSS.—dux. Pr. Ed.

[4] *vocatur.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Legati mittuntur ei, qui sæpe rogatus."

A.D. 936.

Amodo perpetuo cognomine dicitur ‘ Auceps.’
[Cum tamen] egregium mundus haberet eum,
Dux ergo,[1] dum[2] plus petitur sibi[3] sumere Romam,
Jurat in æternum capiti non ferre coronam,
Cum sibi sufficiant quæ tenet ampla bona.
Cogitur Henricus regnantis nomine[4] fungi ;
Cogitur in regem tandem reverenter inungi ;
Nulla tamen capiti missa corona fuit.
Coram rege tamen[5] ferri diadema jubetur,
Ut bene servetur quicquid jurasse videtur :
Signa tamen plene regis ubique tenet.
Ex hoc Henrico rex[6] primus nascitur Octo ;[7]
Et[8] tres Octones[9] promere Musa monet.”

---

[1] *ergo.*] In both MSS.—igitur. Pr. Ed.

[2] *dum.*] In both MSS.—cum. Pr. Ed.

[3] *sibi.*] This word is omitted in the MS. Cotton. It occurs in C.C.C. and in the Pr. Ed.

[4] *nomine.*] In both MSS.—numine, Pr. Ed.

[5] *tamen.*] In both MSS.—secus, Pr. Ed.

[6] *rex.*] This word is omitted in the MS. Cotton. It is found in C.C.C. and in the Pr. Ed.

[7] *Octo.*] Here the following line is omitted in both MSS. :—

“ Cujus et egregia nunc gesta referre peropto.”

The name is “ Otho ” in the Pr.Ed.

[8] *Et.*] In both MSS.—Jam. Pr. Ed.

[9] *Octones.*] In both MSS.—Othones. Pr. Ed.

De Imperio Henrici Secundi.

Capitulum Secundum.

Henrico ergo Primo defuncto, successerunt sibi invicem Octones tres, secundum Chronicas Godfridi Viterbiensis[1] et Vincentii Belluacensis.[2] Martinus[3] tamen, in Chronica sua, assignat Lotharium et Berengarium inter dictum Henricum et Octonem Primum. Dicit etiam[4] dictum Henricum non fuisse imperatorem Romanorum, sed Theutonicorum tantum, pro eo quod mortuus sit antequam coronam Romanam percepisset. Ego vero magis elegi viam dictorum virorum, qui[5] computant eum manifestum imperatorem primum. A.D. 936. Henry is succeeded by three Emperors of the name of Otho.

Unde et subdunt, anno Domini millesimo tertio, Octone Tertio sine herede defuncto, Henricus Claudus, filius Besilionis, natione Noricus, et rex[6] Noricorum atque Bauguarorum, ab omnibus regni principibus concorditer est electus.[7] Ungitur autem a religioso viro, A.D. 1002. Accession of Henry II., the Lame.

---

[1] *Godfridi Viterbiensis.*] See Col. 431, D., Pr. Ed.

[2] *Vincentii Belluacensis.*] "Igitur post Henricum imperavit Otho Primus." See "Speculum Historiale Vincentii Belluacensis," lib. xxiv. fol. 339,b, Venice, 1591.

[3] *Martinus.*] See "Martini Poloni Chronicon," chapters lxxxv.—lxxxx.

[4] *Dicit etiam.*] The following is the passage in the original thus loosely quoted by Capgrave :—

"Henricus rex imperavit annis octodecim, et hoc per Alemanniam. Unde nec ipse inter imperatores computatur, quia non regnavit in Italia nec fuit per papam coronatus."

[5] *qui computant.*] quam illius qui computat. C.C.C.

[6] *rex.*] dux. C.C.C.

[7] *anno Domini millesimo tertio, Octone . . . . electus.*] This passage is quoted, but with some noticeable differences, from Godfrey of Viterbo. The original is as follows :—"Anno ab Incarnatione Domini Millesimo primo, Othone Tertio sine herede defuncto, Henricus Claudus, filius Hezilonis, natione Noricus, id est Bavarorum, ab omnibus regni principibus electus, ... rex creatur." See Col. 437, E.

A.D. 1002. Maguntinensi archiepiscopo, et imperavit annis viginti duobus. Cœpit autem regnare, ut dictum est, anno Domini millesimo tertio.

He represses rebellion.

Hic potentiores regni viros, bella sibi concitare volentes, celeriter devicit, et reges gentilium in interiore Germania commorantes, tributarios fecit. Bonum est enim et salubre regibus, in principio principatus sui, rebelles castigare, ne diu tolerantes malos ipsi et numero et malicia opprimant justitiæ vias, dum non impediuntur. Etsi, secundum auctores, misericordiam summe decet regem possidere, non illam tamen quæ criminibus manifestis et parcit et indulget. Tritum enim proverbium est, quod[1] "Justitia sine misericordia crudelitas est, et misericordia sine justitia fatuitas."

The example of Solomon.

In testimonium hujus rei, Salamon, ipse pacificus, conspiratores ad regnum et pacis [perturbatores] aut morte multavit, aut eos in sedibus propriis et ne vagarent in populo manere constrinxit. Patet hoc in Tertio Regum,[2] quod et manifestius ibi declaravi, nunc autem solam litteralem annotationem tangens. Adonias, qui uxorem David Abisath violaverat, ut sic aspiraret ad regnum, juvante Salamone interemptus est.[3] Abiathar sacerdos, quia portaverat archam coram patre suo, dum ipse esset in exilio, sacerdotio privatus, jussus est habitare in Anathoth.[4] Joab occisus est, tenens cornu altaris, eo quod [duos] principes, Abner et Amasam, in dolo occiderat.[5] Simey inhibitus est ne transiret Ierosolimam, ut sic, occasione succedente, occideretur.[6]

Multa sunt hic notanda, si tempus occurreret, in puniendis malis,—persona, tempus, et circumstantia. Sed quia dominus meus acutam satis habet considerationem, et consilium promptissimum, non oportet multum in his immorari.

---

[1] *quod*] quoniam. C.C.C.

[2] *Tertio Regum.*] The (3rd, *i.e.* the) 1st Book of Kings, ch. ii.

[3] 1 Kings, ii. 25.

[4] 1 Kings, ii. 26.

[5] 1 Kings, ii. 34.

[6] 1 Kings, ii. 46.

Hujus Henrici uxor dicta est sancta Chunegundis, quæ nobilibus orta natalibus, nobilioribus moribus fulsit. Nam, ex consensu utrorumque, virgines permanserunt, sacris exercitiis occupati; et, quoniam virgines permanserunt, in Baburgensi ecclesia, quam ædificaverunt, ubi et quiescunt, gloriosis coruscant miraculis. A.D. 1003. S. Cunegund, the wife of Henry II. Their austere life.

O quam jocundum est cogitare dies festivos,[1] quando tanta castitas servata est inter eos qui ad castitatem obligati non sunt: et quam dolendum videre impudicos, qui professionem munditiæ emiserunt! O quam colendum est memorare Josaphath, Alexum, Crisantum, quorum alter puellares amplexus omnino[2] evasit; alter balteum et annulum fregit, et tradidit sponsæ, perpetuæ peregrinationi se submittens; alter oscula puellarum quasi serpentium morsus abhorruit, non immerito, si veram sapientiam adepti sunt, qui Sapientiæ sororem dilexerunt, præsertim cum Sapientia et Castitas indissolubili vinculo colligati sint. Inde et in proëmio Apologiæ Gregorii Nazanzeni sic de eo refertur. Cum enim philosophiæ studiis apud Athenas floreret, vidit per soporem, sedenti sibi et legenti, duas satis decoras dextra lævaque feminas consedisse, quas ille respiciens, quidnam essent et quid vellent percunctabatur. At illæ, eum familiarius complexantes,[3] aiunt,—"Ne moleste accipias, juvenis; nos tibi satis familiares sumus; altera enim ex nobis Sapientia, altera Castitas, dicitur; et missæ sumus tecum habitare, quia jocundum valde in corde tuo habitaculum Deo præparasti." Hæc dicta sunt ad commendationem castitatis quæ in dicto viro et conjuge sua refulsit. Story of Gregory Nazianzen.

In ædificatione locorum sanctorum sedulus erat; nam, præter ecclesias multas et cœnobia quæ[4] construxit, ædificavit unam ecclesiam et episcopatum, sicut Many churches and monasteries built by Henry.

---

[1] *festivos*] pristinos. C.C.C.

[2] *omnino*] oratione. C.C.C.

[3] *complexantes*] amplexantes. C.C.C.

[4] *quæ*] quas. C.C.C.

A.D. 1003. testantur gesta de eo conscripta, ubi sic continetur[1]:—"Post multa," inquit, "bella quæ commisit in Germania, Boëmia, et Ytalia, volens soli Deo vacare, cum esset Christianissimus, Baburgensem[2] ecclesiam et episcopatum dedicavit,[3] ubi devotis orationibus et continuis exercitationibus indulsit. Solitum enim erat regibus ejus seculi ecclesias construere, viris religiosis necessaria providere; et ipsi tunc in omnibus divitiis affluenter abundabant. Nec legimus reges qui ecclesiæ fundatores erant aliqua penuria percussos. Recurrat lector ad tempora retroacta, et specialiter ad reges gentis nostræ, Edgarum et Adelstanum, et ceteros, quorum primus quadraginta fertur monachorum et monialium erexisse ecclesias; alter in tanta devotione erga ecclesiam mansit, ut in bello gladius de cœlo vaginam[4] suam vacuam tradidisse[5] visus est. Hæc sunt allectiva regum et principum, ut ecclesias diligant, et non spolient, sicut venerabilis iste Henricus exemplum præbuit manifestum.

A.D. 1008. Stephen, King of Hungary, marries the sister of the Emperor, and is converted to Christianity.

Hic etiam, inter cetera virtutum opera, sororem suam in conjugium tradidit Stephano, regi Hungarorum, cujus occasione et Stephanus rex, et tota gens sua, a Paganitatis errore ad Christum conversi sunt. Hic Stephanus, apud eos adhuc Sanctus, in magna veneratione habetur, eo quod primus erat illius gentis qui baptismum suscepit. Ex hac re magna practica ad modernos sumi potest, ut si quis rex aut

---

[1] *ubi sic continetur.*] This is a quotation from the Pantheon of Godf. of Viterbo. See col. 437, E. The original passage, which has been slightly altered by Capgrave, runs thus:—"Iste, multis bellis propere gestis in Germania, Bohemia, Italia, et Apulia, postremo a Domino data sibi requie, quum esset christianissimus, episcopatum nobilissmum Babenbergensem gloriose fundavit et locupletavit."

[2] *Baburgensem.*] This word is written "Bambergensem" in the corresponding passage in the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus, chap. xciii.

[3] *dedicavit*] fundavit. C.C.C.

[4] *vaginam*] in vaginam. C.C.C.

[5] *tradidisse*] cecidisse. C.C.C.

princeps mulierem alterius gentis sumere cupit, aut hoc faciat [amore] Fidei ampliandæ aut pacis vel concordiæ habendæ, siquidem et istæ justæ causæ sunt, cum aut Fides sublimatur, aut rixa in amorem deducta est. A.D. 1008.

De isto autem viro magnifico sic concludit prædictus Godfridus Viterbiensis, metrice :— Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

Henrici[1] Claudi meritum solemniter audi :[2]
Sumptus ab arce soli, regnat in arce poli.
Conjuge virginea, virgo permansit et ille.
Catholicas fecit[3] ecclesias numero quasi mille.
Pauperibus, viduis, spes, via, vita, fuit.
Nunc et in altari sua cernimus ossa sacrari,
More salutari solemnia digna parari,
Corpora debilium plurima sana dari.

---

[1] *Henrici, etc.*] Col. 439, B. Pr. Ed.

[2] *audi.*] Here is omitted in both MSS. the following line :—

"Cui decet applaudi, cujus metra porrigo laudi."

[3] *fecit.*] In both MSS.—dedit. Pr. Ed.

De Imperio Henrici Tertii.

Capitulum III.

A.D. 1039. Henry III. the Black.

Henricus Tertius, filius comitis Lupoldi et Gisiliæ, cœpit regnare anno Domini M.XLV.,[1] octogesimus nonus ab Augusto, et regnavit annis XVI.: in quo dignitas imperialis, quæ per longum tempus extra Carolorum genealogiam deducta jam exulaverat, ad eam, per matrem ejus Gisiliam, revocata est.[2]

The history of his succession to the throne.

Quo autem ordine venerat ad imperium, et quam mirabili eventu sublimatus sit, sic breviter tangunt auctores.[3] Tempore Conrardi Tertii, quidam dux, nomine Lupoldus, cum pacem [fregisset] iram regis Conrardi metuens, cum uxore sua Gisilia, quæ de genere Francorum orta est, rebus suis valefaciens, et pauca necessaria portans, in silvam fugit, in quodam subterraneo specu latitans. In quam silvam dum Cæsar postea quadam die, venandi causa, intraret, nocte superveniente, in eodem tugurio ipsum necessitas compulit hospitari. Cui hospita, scilicet comitissa, prægnans, vicinaque partui, decenter, ut potuit, stravit et necessaria ministravit. Eadem vero nocte mulier filium peperit. Et vocem tertio ad se venientem Conrardus Cæsar audivit,—"Conrarde, hic puer modo genitus

---

[1] *Anno Domini M.XLV.*] This incorrect date is found in both MSS. Henry succeeded to the throne six years earlier on the death of Conrad the Salique, June the 4th, 1039. Though evidently following the Pantheon here, Capgrave has altered the date: that given by Godfrey of Viterbo is 1040. See col. 445, A.

[2] *in quo . . . revocata est.*] This passage is quoted from the Pantheon; the original is as follows:—"In ipso dignitas imperialis, quæ per longum tempus extra Carolorum genealogiam deducta jam exulaverat, ad nobilissimum germen Carolorum, per matrem ejus Grisilam, est revocata.

[3] See Godf. Viterb. Col. 441, D.

[4] *genitus*] progenitus, C.C.C.

gener tuus erit atque successor." Mane vero resur- A.D. 1039.
gens Cæsar suos armigeros sibi secretarios ad se vocavit, dicens,—"Ite, et parvulum illum de manibus matris violenter rapite, et ipsum per medium scindentes, cor ejus mihi portate." Quem videntes elegantissimæ formæ, misericordia commoti, puerum super quandam arborem, ne a feris devoraretur, reposuerunt; et leporem, a canibus captum, scindentes, cor ejus Cæsari detulerunt. Quo viso, Cæsar gavisus recessit. Eodem autem die, cum quidam dux nobilis inde transiret, et puerum vagientem audiret, voci adhæsit, et puerum invenit; et, dum filium non haberet, uxori attulit, [et nutriri eum] faciens, a se de uxore genitum finxit, et Henricum nominavit.

Talem autem progressum de hac historia inducit dictus Godfridus in suo Pantheon, partim metrice, partim prosaice:— The account given by Godfrey of Viterbo.

"Dux ait,[1]—'hunc puerum poteris tibi[2] fingere natum;
Finge, precor, partum, et a te[3] fatere creatum;
Namque[4] manu Domini [suspicor] esse datum.'
Annuit audito mulier formosa marito:
'Hinc,' ait,—'exito, thalamo properanter abito, et
Civibus[5] insinua me peperisse cito.
Tu dictis[6] moderare meis, præstaque favorem:
Sic ego, de more, partus simulabo laborem.'" [7]

---

[1] *Dux ait, etc.*] Col. 443, A. Pr. Ed.

[2] *tibi.*] In both MSS.—ibi. Pr.Ed.

[3] *et a te*] de me C.C.C.—de te. Pr. Ed.

[4] *Namque.*] In both MSS.—Quippe. Pr. Ed.

[5] *et Civibus*] Omnibus. C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.

[6] *Tu dictis, etc.— Sic Ego, etc.*] These lines are thus arranged in both MSS. Their position is reversed in the Pr. Ed.

[7] *laborem.*] The verses here omitted, or, rather, rendered into prose, by Capgrave, are as follows:—

"Ut reputent puerum me generante fore.
Fama volat genuisse Ducem, peperisse Ducissam:
Aspectu facieque puer formaque patrissat:
Crescit, et inducit gaudia magna Duci."

A.D. 1039. PROSA.—Cum ergo crevisset puer,[1] et quindenum attingeret annum, erat corpore pulcherrimus, ore facundus, et omnibus gratiosus. Videns[2] imperator, dum apud comitem pranderet, concupivit et in servitorem suscepit. Unde magis [distincte] patet hoc in versibus :—

VERSUS.

"Dum[3] puer Henricus quindenum scanderet annum,
Militis officio censetur honore levandus.[4]
Interea rex iste[5] venit, [puer astitit] illi :
Forma recens faciesque nitet, flavique capilli.[6]
'Dic mihi quis puer est?' 'Meus est,' dux intulit illi.
Cæsar ait, 'Totus forma simulatur Achilli :
'Hunc,' ait, 'obsequiis continuabo meis.'"

PROSA.[7]—[Nam Cæsar], tam decorum et prudentem videns, a patre eum [petiit], et, licet reniteretur, in curia sua manere eum [fecit]. Sed cum videret puerum gratiosum, et ab omnibus amari et commendari, dubitare cœpit ne post se regnaret, et ne sit ille quem occidi mandaverat. Volens autem esse securus, litteras, manu sua scriptas, per puerum uxori dirigit in hunc modum :—"In quantum est tibi cara

---

[1] *puer*] infans. C.C.C.

[2] *Videns*] Quem videns. C.C.C.

[3] *Dum.*] In both MSS.; Cum. Pr. Ed.

[4] *levandus.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Prorsus enim species, corpus, et acta placent."

[5] *iste.*] In both MSS.; ipse. Pr. Ed.

[6] *capilli.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Dum quasi flos lucet, rex vocat ipse ducem."

[7] *Prosa.*] The lines which Capgrave has here rendered into prose are as follows :—

"Dux ait,—'Oro, pater, tenero nunc parcite nato,
Cum fortis, cum miles erit, juvene revocato,
Ut vacet obsequio tunc me liore dato :'
Dum pater implorat, dum sic retinere laborat,
Rex ferus evacuat penitus quæcunque perorat,
Atque sibi puerum detulit absque mora."

vita mea, mox ut istas litteras acceperis puerum hunc necabis." Unde versus :— A.D. 1039.

"Anxie[1] [mens] regis juveni[2] solerter adegit ;
Quis pater, aut mater, si[3] sit, narrare coëgit.
'Sum ducis,' ille [refert], 'me ducis aula regit!'
Rex quoque[4] jam sterilem cognoverat esse ducissam :
Æstimat enixa puerum [quia] non foret ipsa;
Et, quia sic dubitat, noxia [corde] parat.
Nam [putat] hunc puerum quem miserat ante[5] necari ;
Hunc [et ad] imperii [metuit[6]] diadema vocari.
Unde [cito] puero [mortis] pericula[7] parat.[8]
Ipse manu propria properat [conscribere][9] cartam,
Qua puerum portare necem sub [fraude] cohortat ;[10]
Et[11] puer Urias arripit ergo vias.
Fertur Aquisgrani septem properasse diebus :
Ipse caret sociis, nec abundat ad omnia rebus :
Presbyter hunc [recipit], ut jubet Ipse Deus.
Fessus et esuriens scamno cepit[12] ipse soporem ;[13]
Prandia disposuit sibi[14] deliciora[15] sacerdos[16]

---

[1] *Anxie.*] In both MSS.—Anxia. Pr. Ed.

[2] *juveni.*] In both MSS.—juvenem. Pr. Ed.

[3] *si.*] In both MSS.—sibi. Pr. Ed.

[4] *quoque.*] In both MSS.—quia. Pr. Ed.

[5] *ante.*] Thus in C.C.C. and in the Pr. Ed. The MS. Cotton. has "autem."

[6] *metuit.*] Added from C.C.C. and the Pr. Ed. It is omitted in MS. Cotton.

[7] *mortis pericula.*] Thus written in MS. C.C.C.; the former word is destroyed in MS. Cotton.—Morte pericla. Pr. Ed.

[8] *parat.*] In both MSS.—parit Pr. Ed.

[9] *conscribere.*] Thus in C.C.C. The word is destroyed in MS. Cotton. It stands "cum scribere" in the Pr. Ed.

[10] *cohortat.*] In both MSS.—coarctat. Pr. Ed.

[11] *Et.*] In both MSS.—Fit. Pr. Ed.

[12] *cepit.*] In both MSS.—capit Pr. Ed.

[13] *soporem.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Presbyter aspiciens juvenem fulgere decore."

[14] *sibi.*] In both MSS,—om. Pr. Ed.

[15] *deliciora.*] In both MSS.—deliciosa. Pr. Ed.

[16] *sacerdos.*] In both MSS.—fore. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1039. PROSA.[1]—Cumque bursa, in qua erant litteræ, penderet cingulo pueri, sacerdos, curiositate ductus, bursam aperuit, et litteras sigillo regis munitas videns, illas, salvo sigillo, aperuit, et, legens, scelus abhorruit. Et radens subtiliter, quod dicebatur,—"Istum necabis;" scripsit:—"Filiam nostram ipsi uxorem [dabis]." Cumque regina litteras de manu imperatoris scriptas esse cognosceret, convocatis principibus nuptias celebravit, et filiam suam in uxorem dedit; [quæ] nuptiæ Aquisgrani celebratæ sunt. Et sequitur [metrice] versus:—

"Aspiciens regina videt juvenem venientem,
Miratur formam, faciem, vultumque nitentem.
Mox puer ut venit regia scripta dedit.
Ipsa legit, sed lecta tegit, secreta reponens.
Nata videns tremebunda[2] silet, perhibente rubore
Mater eam citius cernere scripta monet.[3]
[Non erat] ut possent regis præcepta negari:
Curia [dat juveni] thalamum de more parari;
Filia præcipitur concito[4] sponsa dari.

---

[1] *Prosa.*] The lines here rendered into prose are as follows:—

"Charta boni pueri bursa retinente pependit;
Presbyter hanc aperit, et eam cognoscere tendit,
Forte necem pueri quam cito cernit ibi;
Hæc regis dum scripta legis, regina, videbis.
Hunc puerum facies generum, carumque tenebis;
Si dare distuleris, hostia mortis eris.
Mane puer surgens ait; 'Hospes care, valeto,'
Ille, refert—'Domine, famulum me semper habeto;
Rex mihi cum fueris tunc memorare peto.'
Risit ad hæc juvenis, risumque fuisse putavit:
Versus Aquisgranum festinus iter peragravit,
Nescius in scriptis quid sibi charta parit."

[2] *tremebunda.*] In both MSS.; vagabunda. Pr. Ed.

[3] *monet.*] Here are omitted the following lines:—

"Regia mandata, nimio perplexa rigore,
Lecta docent dominam regis metuisse furorem,
Et species juvenis hæc peragenda monet."

[4] *concito.*] In both MSS.—quam cito. Pr. Ed.

Altera post pauca regis [data] littera venit,[1] A.D. 1039.
Si jussis regina suis reverenter obedit.
Illa refert, 'Cuncta perficienda dedi;
Aspera scripta quidem, te præcipiente, relegi.
Sed, quia pertimui cito contradicere regi,
Omnia contribui quæ tua carta vehit.
Nata maritata, sponsalia sunt celebrata;
Curia lætata, solemnia magna parata;
Filia nostra parem gaudet habere marem.'
Legit et obstipuit, reputans hæc somnia,[2] Cæsar:
Urget equos, festinat iter, cursumque coæquat.
Filia, cum [matre, procerum] turba comitante:
Astitit, et generum præfert, quem prætulit ante.
Sponsa manu sponsum [ducit] amanda suum.
Turgidus ille, sedens, quid agat, quid dicat ad[4]
illam,
Nescit, et intumuit, ardensque furore favillat:[5]
Ira, furor, cordis contraria stat rationi;
Obviat et ratio socia pietate furori.
Stat[6] gener in medio; credit abinde mori:
Filia cum matre, fervente patris feritate,
Plena timore jacet,[7] vultu variante minaci;[8]
Mors et vita simul regis in ore latent.
Ira recens inferre necem pœnamque laborat:
"Parce, pater,—differre placet," natura perorat:
Naturæ precibus vincitur absque mora.

---

[1] *venit.*] In both MSS.—quærit. Pr. Ed.

[2] *somnia.*] In both MSS.—omnia. Pr. Ed.

[3] *coæquat.*] Here is omitted the line:—

"Commotusque satis sede resedit Aquis."

[4] *ad.*] In both MSS.—in. Pr. Ed.

[5] *favillat.*] Here is omitted the line:—

"Stant furor et ratio pectore tusa suo."

[6] *Stat.*] Stans. C.C.C., Pr. Ed.

[7] *jacet.*] In both MSS.—tacet. Pr. Ed.

[8] *minaci.*] In both MSS.—minacem. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1039.

Dum gravis in regem[1] fieret luctatio mentis,
Obtinet in causa ratio, fugit ira potentis:
Respicit uxorem lætus, ut ante solet.
Dicit ei, 'Sancita Dei nequeunt revocari:[2]
Quod volui jam non potui; Deus Ipse negavit:
Quem[3] Deus instituit nos patiemur,' ait.
Uxor ad hæc instat,—'Deus,' inquit, "contulit ista:
Prorsus ab humana Cœli Sapientia distat:
Hæc sunt acta Dei: mens tua cedat Ei.'[4]
Cogitur hinc regi dux insinuare quid[5] egit:
Inde duos juvenes verum recitare coegit;
Compulit et comitem quem nigra silva tegit.
Dum comes adductus credit sibi crescere luctus,
Cognitus est[6] pater, recipit pro tempore fructus
Nam gener imperii filius ejus erit.
Cæsar ubi potuit de nobilitate doceri,
Pace frui regis valet, et gener ipse mereri.
'Iste mihi socius et gener,' inquit 'erit.'
Cumque videt quod ipse[7] fidem puero violavit,
Plaudit ei quem dextra Dei servat et amavit.
'Tu gener imperii, tu mihi natus,' ait.[8]
Ille locus nemorum, quo vir fuit ille creatus,
Nobilis ecclesia monachis Ursania[9] vocatus,[10]
Magna Creatori nunc ibi pompa datur."

---

[1] *regem.*] In both MSS.—rege. Pr. Ed.

[2] *revocari.*] In both MSS.—vacuari. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Quem.*] In both MSS.—Quæ. Pr. Ed.

[4] *cedat Ei.*] Here are omitted the following lines:—

"Si generum tamen ingenuum natura notaret,
Nec Fortuna mihi, neque filia, damna pararet,
Si secus est gener, gaudia nulla daret."

[5] *quid.*] In both MSS.—quod. Pr. Ed.

[6] *est.*] In both MSS.—esse. Pr. Ed.

[7] *quod ipse.*] In both MSS.—quod et ipse. Pr. Ed.

[8] *ait.*] Here are omitted the following lines:—

"Rex cadit in fatum; regis gener ille vocatus
Ordine laudatur, socero gener associatur;
Sic rota fortunæ rem variasse datur."

[9] *Ursania.*] In both MSS.—Hirsaugia. Pr. Ed.

[10] *vocatus.*] In both MSS.—vocatur. Pr. Ed.

PROSA.—Hæc tacta sunt de mirabili, ut diximus, sublimatione hujus viri ad imperium. A.D. 1039.

Mortuo igitur Conrardo, suscipit vir iste insignia. Prædecessori suo æqualis in virtutibus, et præcelsior, perhibetur. In principio quidem regni sui Boëmorum ducem, imperio tunc offensum, in deditionem accepit, et Wycelicos domavit populos, qui usque hodie Fortunam adorant, cujus idolum in loco nominatissimo ponentes, cornu dextræ illius apponunt vas plenum potu illo, quod, ex aqua et melle confectum, Hydromellum vocant. Idem fecisse Ægyptios, et omnes pæne Orientales populos affirmat Sanctus Ieronimus super Ysaiam.[1] Unde, ultimo die Novembris, sedentes in commune, prægustant, et, si cornu plenum invenerint, magno strepitu applaudunt quod in futuro anno cornuacopia[2] responsura sit in omnibus; si contra, gemunt.

Conrad dies, and is succeeded by Henry, who subdues the King of the Bohemians, and the Vindelici;

Hos populos Henricus tributarios fecit, ita ut in omnibus solemnitatibus quibus coronabatur, quatuor reges eorum lebetem, quo carnes condiebantur, in humeris suis, duobus vectibus per annulos quatuor [inductis], ad coquinam vectitarent.

and makes them tributaries.

Post hæc Petrum, regem Hungarorum, a regno expulsum et exulem, benigne suscepit, atque, inserto prœlio cum Hungaris, innumerabilem eorum multitudinem fudit, Panoniamque ingressus, Petrum istum regno suo instituit. A.D. 1045. He restores Peter, of Hungary to his throne.

---

[1] S. Hieron. Opera. (Verona.) vol. iv. col. 782, B. "'Ponitis,' inquit, 'Fortunæ mensam, et libatis super eam :' sive, juxta Septuaginta, 'Paratis Fortunæ mensam, et impletis dæmoni poculum,' aut κέρασμα, quod omnes similiter transtulerunt, id est, mixtam potionem. Est autem in cunctis urbibus, et maxime in Ægypto, et in Alexandria, idololatriæ vetus consuetudo, ut ultimo die anni et mensis eorum qui extremus est, ponant mensam refertam varii generis epulis, et poculum musto mixtum, vel præteriti anni, vel futuri, fertilitatem auspicantes."

[2] *cornuacopia responsura.*] Thus written in both MSS. for "Cornu Copiæ responsurum."

A.D. 1043. He marries a second time.

Post mortem autem primæ uxoris suæ, accepit nobilissimi principis Galliarum, Pictaviæ et Aquitaniæ ducis, Wilhelmi, sororem Agnetem in uxorem. Cumque more regio nuptias celebraret, universos joculatores, quos omnes odivit, abire permisit immunes, atque ea quæ fuerat eis largiturus, pauperibus dedit.

The legend of Pallas.

Hujus imperatoris tempore, [Romæ], cujusdam gigantis corpus inventum est incorruptum, Pallantis nomine; cujus vulneris hiatus, ubi vulneratus fuerat, quatuor pedes et semissem habebat. Corpus vero altitudinem muri [vincebat]. Lucernaque ardens ad caput ejus[1] inventa est, quæ non[2] flatu extingui poterat, nec liquore, sed, cum stilo foramine subtus flamma[3] facta, extincta est. Hunc dicitur[4] Turnus occidisse. Et hoc ipsius epitaphium tunc[5] erat,[6]—

"Filius Evandri Pallas, quem lancea Turni
Militis occidit more suo,[7] jacet hic."[8]

The Emperor keeps Whitsuntide at Mayence. The archbishop and an abbot contend for precedency.

Tenuit vir iste quondam festum Pentecostes apud Maguntiam. Dum autem Missarum solemnia inciperent, facta est mira contentio inter cubicularios archiepiscopi et abbatis cœnobii Fultensis, quis istorum in dextera regis sederet. Et alii, quidem, dixerunt episcopum digniorem, et ordine, et quia ecclesia sua esset. Aliis autem abbatem præferentibus, eo quod soleret mittere imperatori in expeditione sua LX. millia armatorum; post verba ventum est ad verbera,

---

[1] *ejus.*] In both MSS.—ipsius. Mart. Pol.

[2] *non.*] In both MSS.—nec. Mart. Pol.

[3] *subtus flamma.*] In both MSS. —subter flammam. Mart. Pol.

[4] *Hunc dicitur, etc.*] Virg. Æn. x. 487.

[5] *tunc.*] om. C.C.C. et Mart. Pol.

[6] *erat.*] In both MSS. — fuit. Mart. Pol.

[7] *more suo.*] So also Mart. Pol. In the edition of his Chronicle, published at Cologne in 1616, there is the following marginal note to these words :—"censeo legendum : Mole sua jacet hic."

[8] *Hujus Imperatoris . . . jacet hic.*] This passage is quoted from the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus, chap. xcv., with which it has been collated.

ita ut sanguis plurimorum per pavimentum flueret. A.D. 1054.
Tandem, pacificato populo, et mundata ecclesia, processerunt ad Missam; et, in fine Sequenciæ, cum cantarent,—"Hunc diem gloriosum fecisti," audita est vox in aëre sonans, "Hunc diem bellicosum." Intelligens autem pius imperator vocem inimici qui de discordia lætatur, ait,—"Mentiris," [ait,] "Sathana, nam, antequam recedamus, diem gloriosum habebimus." Et sic tandem, omnibus in caritatem constitutis, Missa celebrata est et finita in Domino.

Hæc quidem de isto prænobili Cæsare dicta sufficiant; compendiose[1] procedere intendo.

---

[1] *compendiose*] quia compendiose. C.C.C.

De Henrico Quarto Imperatore.

Capitulum IIII.

A.D. 1056. Henry IV.

Henricus[1] Quartus cœpit regnare anno Domini M.LXII.[2]

Conjectures as to his descent.

Genealogia ejus non tangitur apud auctores; sed, quia successor dicti Henrici fuit, ideo putatur fuisse de sanguine ejus; non obstante quod Cæsares tunc, sicut et nunc, per electionem creati sunt. Hic Henricus, imperator et rex victoriosissimus, in Natali Domini a Clemente Papa coronatus, nonagesimus ab Augusto, imperii dignitatem suscepit. Deinde per Apuliam ducto exercitu, ad patriam cum honore revertitur.

A.D. 1060. He avenges the wrongs of Peter, King of Hungary.

Non multo post, rex Hungarorum,[3] Petrus, qui ab Henrico, prædecessore hujus Henrici, ad regnum suum iterum introductus est, a quodam suo cliente, nomine Andrea, oculis et regno privatur. Quod audiens piissi-

---

[1] *Henricus, etc.*] A great portion of this history is merely copied from Godfrey of Viterbo. Such passages have been collated with the printed book whenever any variations of consequence occur.

[2] *anno Domini M.LXII.*] The mistake of six years which had been made in the date of the commencement of the previous reign has been, of course, perpetuated, the historian having evidently obtained this date by adding the number of the years of Henry the Third's reign to the date of his accession.

The date of the accession of Henry IV., however, is reckoned from three several periods:—(1), the year 1054, when he became king of Germany; (2), the year 1056, when he succeeded his father; (3), the year 1084, when he became emperor.

[3] *Hungarorum.*] In both MSS.; Ungarorum. Pr. Ed.

mus Cæsar, et benigne compatiens, Panoniam ingressus, singula loca regionis illius perlustrans, Andream persecutus est. Sed incolis terræ undique latentibus,[1] cunctisque Ungariæ victualibus vel absconditis, vel contaminatis, aut veneno infectis, exercitum illic sustinere[2] non valens, Panonia devastata, reversus est. A.D. 1060.

Sequenti autem anno, Panoniam[3] hostiliter aggrediens, Leonem Papam secum duxit, et Andream fugavit, atque omnia feliciter ordinavit. Si enim, juxta Sapientem, "Frater qui adjuvatur a fratre tanquam civitas firma sit,"[4] multo firmius perseverat regnum regno adunatum. Nam et ipsa caritas, quæ extendi jubetur ad proximum, [debet] extendi ad communitatem, maxime ubi caput, aut princeps alicujus comitatus injuste opprimitur. Unde et reges Juda sæpius vocati sunt a regibus Israel in adjutorium, et e converso, magno periculo imminente. Pleni sunt libri qui de regimine principum conditi sunt, rebus[5] de quibus nunc agimus, quia intentio nostra sola ad hoc refertur, ut illustres viros mundo describamus, qui hoc nomine pollent. Inter quos etsi sint aliqui, quorum fama per quædam opera eorum diffamata est, tamen æstimandum est quod bene finierunt. A.D. 1061. He ravages Pannonia.

Nam, ut ad singularia descendamus, vir iste insignis, licet multa egregie egisset, vivente Sancto Leone Papa, utpote patrimonium Sancti Petri adquirendo, Petrum quoque regem Hungarorum adjuvando, Crucem versus Terram Sanctam sumendo, et multa alia, tamen propter schisma exortum excommunicatus obiit, ut dicunt, licet ipse se bene egisse forsan putaret. Nam et tempore suo in Ecclesia Romana confusio gravis exorta est, tribus invasoribus sedem illam occupantibus, quo- [A.D. 1044.]* The anti-popes and the great schism.

---

[1] *latentibus.*] In both MSS.; et latitantibus. Pr. Ed.

[2] *sustinere.*] In both MSS.; sustentare. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Panoniam.*] In both MSS.; Pannoniam. Pr. Ed.

[4] Proverbs, xviii. 19.

[5] *rebus*] his rebus. C.C.C.

* For an explanation of these dates, see the Introduction.

A.D. 1061. rum unus Benedictus vocabatur; atque, ad majoris miseriæ cumulum, divisis inter se patriarchiis et eorum redditibus,—unus apud Sanctum Petrum,—alter apud Sanctam Mariam Majorem,—tertius, id est, Benedictus, in Lateranensi Palatio—sedebant; et omnes vitam turpem et flagitiosam, ut accepimus, ducebant.

Graziano, a priest, restores peace by bribes, and is made Pope;

Tunc quidam presbyter, Gratianus nomine, Ecclesiæ Dei in tanta confusione compassus, ad præfatos viros adiit, eisque a Sancta Sede cedere pecunia persuasit; Benedicto, qui inter eos videbatur majoris auctoritatis, redditibus Angliæ pro pacis compositione relictis. Propter quod Romani eundem Gratianum presbyterum, tanquam Ecclesiæ liberatorem, in Summum Pontificem communiter elegerunt, eumque Gregorium Septimum vocaverunt. Imperator vero, his auditis, Romam pergere festinat; cui Gratianus benigne et paterne occurrit, eique coronam pretiosam ad captandam ejus benevolentiam donavit. Imperator tunc eum benigne suscepit; sed postmodum, collecta synodo, propter notam simoniæ, cedere persuasit, eique Sidigerium, Babergensem episcopum, consensu Ecclesiæ, substituit, quem et Benedictum placuit nominari. [Ex tunc] canonica electio Romanorum Pontificum usque adeo suffocata fuisse narratur, ut iste Benedictus et Hildebrandus, et alii quatuor sequentes, ab imperatore constituti, in Catalogo Romanorum Pontificum scripti non reperiantur. Martinus[1] autem ait, quod iste Hildebrandus Cardinalis, qui postea Gregorius dictus est,[2] cum legatus esset in Gallia, et concilio[3] contra multos simoniacos episcopos processisset, et contra unum episcopum[4] multum infamatum procedere voluisset, et illos

[A.D. 1046.] but is soon deposed by the Emperor.

Proceeding of Hildebrand (when legate in France) against simony.

---

[1] *Martinus.*] See the Chronicle of Martinus Polonus, chap. xcvi., with which this passage has been collated.

[2] *dictus est.*] In both MSS.—Papa factus est, Mart. Pol.

[3] *et concilio*] et in concilio. C.C.C.

[4] *et . . . . episcopum.*] In both MSS.—cum contra episcopum unum, Mart. Pol.

testes qui ipsum accusaverant pecunia[1] corrupisset, dixit legatus in concilio, "Cesset humanum judicium: producatur in medium Divinum Oraculum; cum certum sit quod episcopalis gratia donum sit Spiritus Sancti,[2] et quisquis[3] episcopatum mercatur contra Spiritum Sanctum facit. Si tu igitur contra Spiritum Sanctum non fecisti, dic—'Gloriam[4] Patri, et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto.'" Quod ille intrepidus incipiens, cum 'Gloria Patri, et Filio' dixisset, nullatenus 'Spiritui Sancto' dicere potuit, frequentius repetens;[5] sed dejectus ab episcopatu plene dixit. A.D. 1061.

Iste Hildebrandus, post[6] Papa Gregorius factus,[7] contra[8] Henricum Imperatorem, quia discidium procurabat in Ecclesia, invehitur.[9] Imperator vero, Wormanciæ,[10] concilio XXIII.[11] episcoporum et multorum nobilium congregato, jubet omnia decreta Gregorii quassari.[12] Propter quod Gregorius[13] Imperatorem excommunicavit, et a fidelitatis juramento[14] omnes sibi adhærentes absolvit. Imperator vero Magunciæ Gregorium Papam a papatu, quantum in eo fuit, deposuit; Guipertum, A.D. 1076. His quarrel with the Emperor; who deposes him.

---

[1] *pecunia.*] In both MSS.; pretio, Mart. Pol.

[2] *donum . . . Sancti.*] In both MSS.—sit Sancti Spiritus donum, Mart. Pol.

[3] *quisquis.*] In both MSS.—quicunque, Mart. Pol.

[4] *Gloriam.*] In both MSS.—Gloria, Mart. Pol.

[5] *repetens*] repetendo. C.C.C.; Mart. Pol.

[6] *post.*] In both MSS.—om. Mart. Pol.

[7] *factus.*] In both MSS.—effectus, Mart. Pol.

[8] *contra.*] In both MSS.—totus contra, Mart. Pol.

[9] *invehitur.*] In both MSS.—invenitur, Mart. Pol.; "invehitur," however, is given in the margin of the edition of 1616 as a various reading.

[10] *Wormanciæ.*] In both MSS.—Wormantiæ, Mart. Pol.

[11] XXIII.] XXIIII. C.C.C.—viginti quatuor. Mart. Pol.

[12] *quassari*] cassari, Mart. Pol.

[13] *Gregorius.*] In both MSS.—Papa, Mart. Pol.

[14] *a fidelitatis juramento.*] In both MSS.—a fidelitate et juramento, Mart. Pol.

A.D. 1076. The Emperor is excommunicated and compelled to do penance.

Ravennatum episcopum, pro eo[1] constituens. Dictus[2] autem Gregorius Septimus, in[3] concilio nonaginta[4] episcoporum habito, Imperatorem Henricum excommunicavit, quia Romanæ Ecclesiæ unitatem scindere voluit. Sed post, idem Henricus,[5] ad Longobardia[6] veniens, nudis pedibus super nivem et glaciem pluribus

A.D. 1080. diebus stans, vix absolutionem suam[7] impetravit. Post hæc autem[8] iterato plurimi excommunicati episcopi et seditiosi,[9] apud Brixiam[10] convenientes, Guipertum Ravennatum episcopum[11] in Papam elegerunt, et Clementem vocaverunt,[12] quem rex Henricus pronus in terra,[13] cum omnibus aliis, mox[14] adoravit. Et[15] ab [eodem] Clemente in die Paschæ[16] coronam imperii assumpsit, Papam Gregorium in Castro Sancti Angeli, cum cardinalibus, obsidendo; sed audito quod Guyscardus in adjutorium Domini[17] Papæ de Apulia veniebat, Imperator, destructo Capitolio et urbe Leonina, cum suo papa, fugit Senas.

---

[1] *eo.*] In both MSS.—ipso, Mart. Pol.

[2] *Dictus . . . . Senas.*] The whole of this passage is extracted from Martinus Polonus, Chron. Gregorius VII., ch. clxvi., with which it has been collated.

[3] *in.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *nonaginta.*] In both MSS., cx., Mart. Pol.

[5] *idem Henricus.*] om., Mart Pol.

[6] *ad Longobardia*] ad Papam in Longobardia. C.C.C., Mart. Pol.

[7] *suam.*] In both MSS.—om., Mart. Pol.

[8] *hæc autem.*] om. Mart. Pol. Capgrave has omitted after "Post" the words "de consensu ejusdem regis."

[9] *episcopi et seditiosi.*] In both MSS. —Seditiosi Episcopi, Mart. Pol.

[10] *Brixiam.*] In both MSS. In Mart. Pol., Brissinam: also in another place, (opposite the year 1090,) Brixinam. In both cases Brixiam is given in the margin as a various reading in the edition of 1616.

[11] *episcopum.*] In both MSS.—archiepiscopum, Mart. Pol.

[12] *et . . . vocaverunt.*] In both MSS.—Clementem vocantes, Mart. Pol.

[13] *in terra.*] In both MSS.—infra terram, Mart. Pol.

[14] *mox.*] om. Mart Pol.

[15] *Et,* &c.] Capgrave here omits "et cum ipso Romam veniens, sine Cardinalibus, a Bononiensi, Mutinensi, et Cerenensi episcopis benedici fecit," et ab eodem, etc.

[16] *Paschæ*] Paschatis, Mart. Pol.

[17] *Domini.*] om., Mart. Pol.

Post hæc idem Henricus apud Maguntiam, Nativitate Domini celebrata, Henricum filium suum, qui fuit Quintus, Theutonicorum post se principibus assignavit, seque Ierosolimam iturum devovit, et publice pronunciavit. A.D. 1103.

Anno secundo post hæc, iterum apud Maguntiam Imperatore [existente], Henricus filius ejus contra eum rebellionem molitur apud Ratisponam concilio Baugarorum, habens occasionem quod pater excommunicatus a Sanctissimo[1] Pontifice haberetur. Assumptis igitur principibus, Saxoniam contra imperium facile commovendam intravit, ubi omnes Saxones suæ voluntati conjunxit. Tunc Ruthardus Maguntinensis archiepiscopus a sede sua diu per imperatorem expulsus, filio suo Henrico adhæsit, et apud villam Nortusem concilio celebrato, imperatorem tanquam schismaticum excommunicavit. Item Henricum Magdeburgensem electum, sed ab imperatore reprobatum, consecravit, et in Maguntiam per auxilium filii redire disposuit. Sed pater in ea cum militia manens [propositum] impedivit. Exinde Henricus junior contra patrem movet exercitum, et pater contra eum: utriusque exercitus erat super Renum, Reno intermedio. Erat autem patris maxima potentia in exercitu Boëmorum, et in marchione Austri Lupoldo. Quo viso,[2] filius tam ducem Boëmiæ Bozoër,[3] quam Lupoldum marchionem promissionibus[4] a patris auxilio avertit; et ita pater debilitatus cogitur fugere.[5] Postea pater et filius apud Pingivam[6] colloquuntur, ubi filius monet ut pater per

A.D. 1105. Henry, the son of the Emperor, rebels against his Father, and is supported by the Saxons, and by the Archbishop of Mayence.

the latter excommunicates the Emperor.

---

[1] *Sanctissimo*] Summo, C.C.C.

[2] *Quo viso, filius*] In both MSS.—Quam rem cum filius considerasset. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Bozoër.*] In both MSS.—Boroëz. Pr. Ed.

[4] *promissionibus.*] In both MSS.—largissimis promissionibus. Pr. Ed.

[5] *et ita, etc.*]—quibus abeuntibus, pater debilitatus, a campo cedere compulsus, confusus discessit. Ab illo itaque die pater minuitur, filius autem augetur. Pr. Ed.

[6] *apud Pingivam.*] In both MSS.—ad apud Pinguiam castellum. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1105. Apostolicum [exeat] ab excommunicatione. Qui petit principes Maguntiæ[1] congregari. Ita, petente patre, generalis curia Maguntiæ[2] congregatur. Pater et filius omnibus principibus præsentantur; et, præsentibus Apostolicæ Sedis legatis, imperator coram omnibus pronunciatur excommunicatus. Unde et ipse in castro quodam custodiæ mancipatur, ubi, dum audientiam peteret, principes eum dolo circumvenerunt, et quodammodo cogunt ut filio suo regalia insignia non differat resignare, anno scilicet regni sui LII.,[3] imperii vero XL. Reversi ergo principes a patre ad filium [regalia[4] insignia] detulerunt, eumque tunc electum a patre nunciantes,[5] per manus legatorum Romanorum,[6] creavit imperatorem nonagesimum primum[7] ab Augusto.[8]

Henry is forced to resign the Empire to his son, A.D. 1106.

He retires to Cologne.

Imperator vero Henricus Quartus, omnibus regalibus filio resignatis, et omnium principum suffragio destitutus, factus egenus, dum per Renum fluvium Coloniam pervenisset, ibi non sicut exul, sed ut imperator, a civibus recipitur. Indeque procedens Leodium, insinuavit omnibus, tam verbo quam litteris, a principibus se fuisse deceptum, et ad resignationem[9] coartatum.

His death.

Transactoque pauco tempore, pater ad Leodium moritur, et more regio ibidem sepelitur. Sed postea, mandato Romani Pontificis, effoditur, et a cœmeterio ejicitur.

---

[1] *Maguntiæ.*] In both MSS.—apud Moguntiam. Pr. Ed.

[2] *Maguntiæ.*] In both MSS.—Moguntiæ. Pr. Ed.

[3] LII.] In both MSS.—quinquagesimo tertio. Pr. Ed.

[4] *regalia.*] In both MSS.—imperialia. Pr. Ed.

[5] *nunciantes*] denunciantes. C.C.C.—Pr. Ed.

[6] *Romanorum.*] In both MSS.—Romani Pontificis. Pr. Ed.

[7] *primum.*] In both MSS.—secundum. Pr. Ed.

[8] *Augusto.*] In both MSS.—Augusto Octaviano. Pr. Ed.—See the Pantheon, col. 453, D.,-454, C., with which this passage has been collated and all noticeable various readings given.

[9] *resignationem*] resignandum. C.C.C.

Speculum constitutum est in vita hujus regis omnibusque principantibus, [ut, si] schisma in ecclesia consurgat, sicut nunc est, quod tam[1] cito flectantur ad utramque partem, sed examinent discrete ubi veritas consistit, et illic favorem suum mittant. Nam credo quod venerabilis iste Cæsar, propter errorem suum, Deo permittente, penuria percussus et ingratitudine filii temporaliter punitus est, et hæc omnia finaliter patienter tulisse. A.D. 1106.

Unde dictus Godfridus,[2] in suo Pantheon, sic de eo canit metrice :— Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

"Canonici[3] studuere sui corpus venerari,
Moreque regali condere membra lari.[4]
Papa, caput cleri, jubet hinc corpus removeri,
Cunctaque Leodii mox anathema ferit.[5]
Filius ossa patris doluit fore cum sceleratis;
His cito sublatis, longius ire facit
In patriam Spiram, quæ Renica litora girat;
Ossa patris minat nimia[6] commotus in ira.
Affra capella fuit, quæ patris ossa tulit.
Rex ita translatus, feretroque novo reseratus,
Quinque reseratus[7] annis fuit non tumulatus;[8]
Tam male damnatus,[9] ludubrioque datus.

---

[1] *tam*] non. C.C.C.

[2] See col. 452, C. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Canonici.*] This quotation begins with the fourteenth line of the poem. As there is no stop, the previous line should have been given. It is as follows :—

"Tunc obiit, tunc Leodii voluit tumulari,"—

[4] *lari.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"At quia rex voluit vivens anathema mereri."

[5] *ferit.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Pellit et a sacris corpus; rebus variatis."

[6] *nimia.*] In both MSS.—nimium. Pr. Ed.

[7] *reseratus.*] In both MSS.—reservatus. Pr. Ed.

[8] *non tumulatus.*] In both MSS. —intumulatus. Pr. Ed.

[9] *Tam male damnatus.*] In both MSS.—Omnibus ingratus. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1106.

Hoc genus erroris nato fit causa doloris;
Tempore mæroris renovat feretrum genitoris,
Pulsus ab ecclesiis dum jacet ipse foris.
Sacra sepultura, Papa prohibente, negatur,
Annulus et baculus nisi Papæ restituatur,
Cum quibus ecclesias vendidit ille suas.[1]
Henricus, vere defuncti Cæsaris heres,
Amodo Pontificum baculos prohibetur habere.[2]
Vendere Pontifices non possunt amodo reges;
Illud enim sacræ prohibent per secula leges.
Expedit quod[3] Simonis crimina quisque negat.[4]
Henricus Quintus tunc cecidit[5] in laborintus:[6]
Hoc laqueo cinctus, foris est artatus et intus.
Ecclesiæ cedit, dona coacta dedit;
Hæc duo dumtaxat Cæsar repetita relaxat;
Ecclesias passas rabie[7] non amodo quassat.
Guerra dedit requiem, pax rediviva placet:
Annulus et baculus papalia jura sequuntur.
Sic et ab imperio merito mundana reguntur:
Jura coæquata sunt[8] ratione data.[9]
Sacra sepultura nunc Cæsaris est valitura.
Aurea structura patris est dans gaudia plura.
Sancta quoque[10] Spiria[11] membra extendit[12] ea.

---

[1] *suas.*] Here are omitted the following lines:—

"Vendidit ille quia raro caruit simonia,
Quæ nota ne fiat, vetuit Divina Sophia,
Papaque mente tali tollere prorsus hiat."

[2] *habere.*] Here is omitted the following line:—

"Hoc etenim fieri regula nulla feret."

[3] *quod.*] In both MSS.—ut. Pr. Ed.

[4] *negat.*] In both MSS.—neget. Pr. Ed.

[5] *cecidit.*] In both MSS.—incidit. Pr. Ed.

[6] *laborintus.*] In both MSS.—laborinthum. Pr. Ed.

[7] *rabie.*] In both MSS.—rabiem. Pr. Ed.

[8] *sunt.*] In both MSS.—stant. Pr. Ed.

[9] *data.*] In both MSS.—rata. Pr. Ed.

[10] *Sancta quoque.*] In both MSS.—Sanctaque. Pr. Ed.

[11] *Spiria.*] In both MSS.—Spirea. Pr. Ed.

[12] *extendit.*] Thus in the MS. Cotton. The MS. C.C.C., has "retendit," both of which are manifestly errors. In the Printed edition the word is "recondit."

De Imperio Henrici Quinti.

Capitulum V.

Henricus Quintus,[1] filius Henrici Quarti, regnavit annis XV., secundum quosdam; et secundum alios, XIX. A.D. 1106. Henry V., Emperor of Germany.

Iste enim,[2] mortuo patre, mirabili collecto exercitu, anno tertio post mortem patris,[3] per montem Jovis transiit Pirenum,[4] Romam proficiscens. Cumque, super Paduum[5] castrametatus, præcepisset exercitum recenseri, inventa sunt XXX. millia militum, exceptis omnibus qui ad eum de Ytalia confluxerant. Unde[6] per montem Appeninum transiens, burgum[7] Pontis Tremuli, turribus et muris[8] valde munitum, exercitum viam prohibere temptantem, destruxit.[9] Deinde per Tusciam[10] procedens usque ad Aretinum,[11] civitatem ipsam destruxit.[12] His itaque peractis, Romam venit, et in gradibus Sancti Petri a Papa Paschali, et cardinalibus, et populo Romano, cum crucibus et processione, cum tripudio et gaudio magno, susceptus est. A.D, 1110. His expedition into Italy

---

[1] *Henricus Quintus, etc.*] The whole of this account, down to the year 1125, with the exception of a few lines, is extracted from Godfrey of Viterbo, (see col. 455, A.,) with which it has been collated, the principal differences only being noticed.

[2] *filius . . . . . Iste enim.*] In both MSS.—om. Pr. Ed.

[3] *patris.*] ejus. C.C.C.

[4] *Pirenum.*] In both MSS.—Pyrenæum. Pr. Ed.

[5] *Paduum.*] In both MSS.—Padum. Pr. Ed.

[6] *unde.*] inde. C.C.C.

[7] *burgum.*] In both MSS.—bargum. Pr. Ed.

[8] *muris.*] C.C.C. and Pr. Ed.—The MS. Cotton has "muribus."

[9] *destruxit*] expugnavit atque destruxit. Pr. Ed.

[10] *per Tusciam.*] In both MSS.—Perusiam. Pr. Ed.

[11] *usque ad Arecinum.*] In both MSS.—usque Aretium. Pr. Ed.

[12] *destruxit.*] Here is omitted in both MSS. the following sentence:—"pro eo quod cives illi Ecclesiam Sancti Donati, id est Episcopium, quod est extra civitatem, destruxerant, Sedem Episcopalem intra mœnia civitatis ponere intendentes."

A.D. 1111. He makes Pope Paschal his prisoner.

Ipse autem Paschalem Papam, concilio quorundam sceleratorum, captum detinuit, et Ulrico, patriarchæ Aquiligensi, cum reverentia custodiendum commisit. Tunc orto ex improviso tumultu de[1] ornatu ecclesiæ, cunctisque rebus clericorum invasis atque distractis, qui expectabant gaudium luctum incurrunt.

The cause of the dispute.

Occasio et causa captivitatis Papæ talis fuisse narratur; quia imperatore Romam tendente, Papa cum eo tali pactione convenerat, ut imperator ei episcoporum investuras[2] dimitteret; Papa autem ei, e contra, omnia episcoporum regalia relaxaret. Hæc pactio sacramentis[3] inter Papam et imperatorem asseritur firmata: quam dum, renitentibus episcopis, Papa adimplere non posset, cum per omnia innocens esset, tanquam reus custodiæ est mancipatus. Hujus factionis conciliator præcipuus fertur fuisse Albertus, tunc imperatoris cancellarius, qui postea fuit archiepiscopus Maguntinus; quem tamen imperator post, Divino judicio, fortissimum sensit inimicum.

Papa aliquamdiu capto et retento, imperator a civibus revocatur, et episcoporum investuras[2] et annulum et baculum a Papa recipiens, ipsum Papam et cives Romanos reconciliari muneribus curavit; et a Papa coronatus, favorem et nomen imperiale sortitur, et hoc anno Domini M.XI.[4] regni vero sui VI.[5] His itaque peractis, synodus episcoporum postea celebratur, et privilegium inter Papam et imperatorem factum reprobatur.[6]

---

[1] *de*] et. Pr. Ed.

[2] *investuras*] investituras. Pr. Ed.

[3] *sacramentis*] sacramentis et obsidibus. Pr. Ed.

[4] M.XI.] This should have been M.CXI. The mistake occurs in both MSS. — Millesimo centesimo undecimo. Pr. Ed.

[5] *regni vero, etc.*] Anno vero regni ejus, ex quo pater regalia sibi resignaverat, sexto. Pr. Ed.

[6] *privilegium, etc.*] privilegium ab imperatore minis et terroribus extortum, tamquam pravilegium, reprobavit. Pr. Ed.

Imperator vero in patriam suam reversus, filiam Henrici, regis Anglorum, Matildem in uxorem sibi conjunxit, nuptiasque magnificas Maguntiæ[1] celebravit. De his nuptiis sic scribunt auctores:—"Eo tempore missi sunt ab Henrico, imperatore Romano, nuntii mole corporis et cultuum splendoribus excellentes, filiam regis Henrici Anglorum ad domini sui conjugium postulantes. Tenens ergo curiam suam apud Londonum, qua nunquam splendidiorem tenuerat, sacramenta desponsationis ab imperatoris receperat legatis.[2]" In his nuptiis Lotharius, dux Saxoniæ, qui postea fuit imperator, tunica lanea pro penuria[3] indutus, et pedibus discalceatus, procidit ad pedes imperatoris. Tantus enim terror omnes invaserat, ut aliquis voluntati suæ resistere non auderet. Ceterum in illa celebratione nuptiarum ubi omnes convenerunt, factæ sunt contra terribilitatem ejus multæ principum conspirationes; et ex tunc, tam manifeste quam occulte, multi incipiunt rebellare.

A.D. 1114. Henry marries the daughter of the King of England.

Ex concilio, ergo, et suggestione archiepiscoporum— Frederici Coloniensis, et Alberti Maguntiensis, et aliorum quorundam, Kalixtus Papa, qui post Paschalem[4] et Gelasium sedit, imperatorem excommunicavit.[5] Scismate itaque innovato,[6] imperator Romam pergens, Burdinum, natione Hispanum, in cathedram, per suam violentiam, collocavit, quem Romani post[7] captum, et camelo, ut dicitur, suprapositum, cum ignominia deportaverunt, et in cavea prope Salernum perpetuæ custodiæ tradiderunt.

A.D. 1119. He is excommunicated by Pope Calixtus;

---

[1] *Maguntiæ.*] In both MSS.—Moguntiæ. Pr. Ed.

[2] *De his nuptiis . . . . legatis.*] Not in the Pr. Ed. See Henry of Huntingdon, fol., 217, *b.*, Ed. 1596.—See also Matthew of Westminster, A.D. 1109.

[3] *penuria.*] In both MSS.—pœnitentia. Pr. Ed.

[4] *Paschalem*] Paschasium. MSS.

[5] *excommunicavit*] excommunicationis vinculo innodavit. Pr. Ed.

[6] *innovato.*] In both MSS.—renovato. Pr. Ed.

[7] *post.*] apud Sutrium postea. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1119. Imperator, videns regnum[1] paulatim desidere, et exemplum patris sui mente revolvens, atque metu
A.D. 1122. but on his submission is absolved by Lambert the legate. anathematis quo urgebatur, collecta generali curia apud Wormanciam,[2] investuras[3] episcoporum, scilicet annulum et baculum, legato apostolico, nomine Lamberto, qui postea fuit Papa Honorius, publice resignavit; per quem etiam ab anathemate est absolutus. Papa quoque imperatori tale privilegium scripsit, ut episcopi omnes, tam Cisalpini quam citra, non prius episcopi ordinarentur, quam per manus imperatoris de regalibus sint vestiti.[4]

He lays siege to Rome. Imperator vero, de Romanis ulcisci desiderans, festinato cursu in Ytaliam processit, et Urbem obsedit. Quibus contra eum incaute progressis, plurimos, aut fere omnes, cæcavit aut devastavit.[5]

A.D. 1125. He dies at Spires. Deinde veniens in patriam, morboque correptus, obiit in civitate Spira; ubi ecclesiam magnifici operis ædificavit, et complevit, atque ditavit. Sepultus est juxta patrem suum, avum, et atavum, anno regni ejus XV., secundum Martinum;[6] secundum Pollicronicam, XIX.[7] Unde et ait hic:—"Henricus sepultus legitur apud Spiram, cum progenitoribus suis, ad cujus tumulum tale scribitur epitaphium:—

'Filius hic, pater hic, avus hic, proavus jacet istic.'"

---

[1] *regnum*] regnum a se. C.C.C.

[2] *Wormanciam.*] In both MSS.—Wormatiam. Pr. Ed.

[3] *investuras.*] In both MSS.—investituram. Pr. Ed.

[4] *vestiti.*] In both MSS.—investiti. Pr. Ed.

[5] *devastavit.*] In both MSS.—denasavit. Pr. Ed.

[6] *secundum Martinum.*] "Henricus IV., Henrici filius, imperavit annis quindecim." Mart. Pol. Chron. ch. XCVII.

[7] *secundum Pollicronicam*, XIX.] "Hoc anno Henricus quartus, filius Henrici Tertii, cœpit regnare apud Teutonicos, et regnavit XIX. annis. See Higden's Polychronicon, lib. vii. cap. 14. MS. Bodl., Laud, 619, sub anno.

A.D. 1125. The account of Giraldus Cambrensis.

Veracius tamen videtur Geraldus Cambrensis, in suo Itinerario, sentire, qui dicit[1] quod Henricus iste, "demum ductus pœnitentia,[2] ultroneus exul factus est,[3] dimissa clam uxore sua Matilde, filia regis Angliæ,[4] sanctam apud Cestre, in monasterio Sanctæ Withburgæ,[5] vitam[6] consummavit. Unde nudo pede veniens decennali spatio vitam duxit artam; et ne, dum viveret, alicui innotesceret, Godescallum se vocavit, quod sonat, "A Deo vocatum." Antequam vero sic recederet, ad cor veniens,[7] investuras episcoporum Kalixto Papæ resignans, concessit per omne imperium in omnibus ecclesiis canonicam fieri electionem, possessiones, et regalia Beati Petri, quæ propter suam vel aliam cujuscumque discordiam alienatæ fuerant, Romanæ ecclesiæ restituit. Possessiones etiam aliarum ecclesiarum[8] quam laicorum, quæ, occasione guerræ suæ quam habuit in ecclesia, ablatæ fuerant, restitui fideliter disposuit.

De conquestione ecclesiæ et imperii, et invectione eorum, metrice per Godfridum[9]:—

---

[1] *qui dicit.*] This passage is collated with Camden's edition of Giraldus Cambrensis, page 874, 22. See also Walsingham, (in Camden, page 444, line 32,) who quotes this passage from Giraldus.

[2] *ductus pœnitentia.*] In both MSS. —pœnitentia ductus. Camd.

[3] *ultroneus exul factus est.*] In both MSS. — et, ultroneus exul effectus. Camd.

[4] *dimissa . . . . Angliæ.*] Omitted in Camden's Giraldus, but given in Walsingham's quotation.

[5] *sanctam . . . . . Withburgæ.*] In both MSS.—sanctam in eremo finibus istis. Camd. — heremiticam vitam duxit apud Cestriam. Walsingham.

[6] *vitam.*] In both MSS.—vitam (ut fertur). Camd.

[7] *veniens.*] rediens. C.C.C. These words, "ad cor rediens," are found in Walsingham's quotation from Giraldus Cambrensis, instead of "pœnitentia ductus."

[8] *ecclesiarum.*] After this word are inserted, in C.C.C., the words "et aliorum tam clericorum."

[9] *per Godfridum.*] See the Pr. Ed. Col. 456, D.

A.D. 1125.

Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

VERSUS.

"Quæstio[1] nunc oritur cur carcere Papa tenetur.
Respondetur eis quod[2] sustulit omnia Præsul;
Sustulit[3] imperio pontificale decus.
Nam bona Pontificum, quæ nititur ipse tenere,
Contulit imperium quæ debeat[4] Cæsar habere:
Amodo, qui teneat, Cæsare dante, feret.
Annulus et baculus de nostro munere venit;
Undique Pontifices regum sunt munere pleni:
Cæsaris officium quomodo Papa gerit?"

Responsum ecclesiæ ad imperatorem[5]:—

VERSUS.

"Retulit ecclesia,—Si quærimur[6] æqua fateri,
Annulus et baculus nunquam de Cæsare venit;
Nam Deus ecclesiæ[7] cœlitus ista dedit.
Omnia quæ reges per tempora prisca dederunt
Non modo sunt regum, sed quæ[8] data jure fuerunt.[9]
Cum tua sint regna,[10] tua sit custodia juris.
Temporibus[11] nostris mala das[12] exempla futuris,
In sancta[13] Domini dum feritate feris.

---

[1] *Quæstio, etc.*] This line is the seventh in the poem.

[2] *quod.*] In both MSS.—quia. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Sustulit.*] In both MSS.—Abstulit. Pr. Ed.

[4] *debeat.*] In both MSS.—debeo. Pr. Ed.

[5] *Responsum . . . . imperatorem.*] In both MSS.—Om. Pr. Ed.

[6] *querimur,*] In both MSS.—quærimus. Pr. Ed.

[7] *ecclesiæ.*] In both MSS.—ecclesiis. Pr. Ed.

[8] *quæ.*] In both MSS.—cui. Pr. Ed.

[9] *fuerunt.*] Here is omitted the following line:—

"Nec Deus hoc patitur, nec tua jura ferunt."

[10] *regna.*] In both MSS.—regni. Pr. Ed.

[11] *Temporibus.*] In both MSS.—carceribus. Pr. Ed.

[12] *das.*] In both MSS.—dat. Pr. Ed.

[13] *sancta.*] sanctum. C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.

Conditor es juris, qui spernere jura videris; A.D. 1125.
Nam[1] neque jura Dei, neque regia jura vereris;
Ecclesiam crucias, qui cruciandus eris.
Dedecus est Fontem juris confundere legem;
Et magis est timidum Cœlorum spernere Regem.[2]
Cur laicus quærit tradi sibi munera cœli?
Ut Deus instituit, electio concina cleri,
Judicio Cœli, libera semper erit.
Si mea tu[3] repetis, repetas[4] quæ tu tribuisti.
Hæc cum non dederis, cur tollere proposuisti?
Tradere te decuit, tollere nulla mihi.
Si quodcumque datur ratio movet[5] ut repetatur,
Dos tua tollatur, nobis quoque nostra feratur:
Hoc ita si cupias, quærimus esse ratum.
Imperium dedimus; tu pauca dedisse videris.
Ex ope Pontificis Cæsar Romanus haberis;
[Vincula] Pontificis[6] qua ratione geris?

PROSA.[7]

Hic Cæsar Henricus, spreto responso, tollit secum annulos et baculos, et ea quæ pertinent ad dignitatem Pontificum, et recedit.

---

[1] *Nam.*] In both MSS.—jam. Pr. Ed.

[2] *Regem.*] Here is omitted the following line:—

"Cum sacra jura neges tristia regna reges."

[3] *Si mea tu.*] In both MSS.—Tu tua si. Pr. Ed.

[4] *repetas.*] In both MSS.—repetes. Pr. Ed.

[5] *movet.*] monet. C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.

[6] *Pontificis.*] Pontifici. C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.

[7] *Prosa.*] The lines thus rendered into prose are as follows:

"Quicquid agat Præsul, quicquid sacra turba fatetur,
Reddere cogetur quod Cæsaris esse videtur,
Illud et in scriptis firmat uterque secus.
Annulus et baculus, vel cetera quæ memorantur,
Cæsaris ad jussum penitus reddenda parantur;
Papaque Paschalis sic spoliatus abit."

A.D. 1125.

Item metrice :—

VERSUS.

"Papa dolet,[1] lamenta movet, totumque per orbem,
Ecclesiam sua carta vocat; properantur ad Urbem.[2]
Tunc ait, 'O Patres, O Cæsaris[3] scripta notate,
Et quæcumque placent[4] super his decreta parate:
Me quoque Pontificem non fore jussa date;
Peccatis mala vestra meis venisse notavi,
Officiis me destitui dignum reputavi;
Me quoque deposui, ne pereatis,' ait.
Hæc ait, et mitram reicit,[5] mantumque reliquit:
'Ordinet Ecclesia sine me quicquid placet,' inquit,
'Moreque Pontificis, judicet ipsa sibi.'
Scripta legunt cleri; rex pontificalia quærit:
Annulus et bacculus sub Cæsare fertur haberi.
Copia Pontificum, 'Non ita,' dixit, 'erit.'"

PROSA.[6]

Extortum a Papa scriptum contra rationem per imperatorem, statim comburitur, et clerus compatiens

---

[1] *dolet.*] In both MSS.—dolens. Pr. Ed.

[2] *urbem.*] Here is omitted the following line:—

"Hæc ubi consedit, Cæsaris acta dedit."

[3] *O Cæsaris.*] In both MSS.—a Cæsare. Pr. Ed.

[4] *quæcumque placent.*] In both MSS.—quodcumque placet. Pr. Ed.

[5] *reicit.*] In both MSS.—rejicit. Pr. Ed.

[6] *Prosa.*] The lines thus rendered into prose:—

"Extortum Papæ scriptum contra rationem
Uritur, et 'priscum tibi conciliamus honorem,
Tolle pater mantum,' curia tota movet.
Rursus in Henricum Quintum nova bella gerentur,
Pristina mota patri sibi jam tormenta moventur,
Ut pater ante fuit, sic anathema luit.
Litera papalis simul et papale sigillum
Missa per imperium gravis excommunicat illum,
Et cunctos proceres qui sua jussa tenent.
Nunc Paschalis obit; succedit honore Calixtus,
Sede Viennensis, regumque propagine mixtus,
Germine Francigenæ Cæsaris hostis erat."

Papæ reddit mitram et mantum. Tunc ecclesia movet se contra imperatorem, feriens[1] eum anathematis mucrone, et omnes duces, et proceres sibi in hac parte faventes. Mortuo Paschali succedit Calixtus. Tunc quoque oritur magna lis inter curiam papalem et imperialem. A.D. 1125.

Unde Idem metrice :—

"Curia papalis contendit et imperialis,
An sit inæqualis, vel debeat æquiparari ;
Partibus oppositis, curia regis ait :—
'Spiritus es, Papa, carnis velamine clausus ;
Hunc quasi terrenum describere quis fuit ausus ?
Terrea cum Superis qua paritate geris[2] ?
Papaque[3] par Superis, Cœlum datur ore tenere,
Quo[4] ligat vel[5] solvit[6] qua regia[7] videtur habere :
Carnis in exilio spiritus astra tenet.
Cæsaris en pompa fit[8] regibus imperativa ;
Legeque sub una[9] sunt omnia jura dativa ;
Lex illa[10] castigat, solvit, et ipsa ligat.
Conditor est legis, neque debet lege teneri,
Sed sibi complacuit sub lege libenter haberi.
Quicquid ei placuit juris adinstar erit.
Qui ligat[11] et[12] solvit Deus ipsum prætulit orbi :
Divisit regnum Divina Potentia secum ;
Astra dedit Superis, cetera cuncta Sibi."

---

[1] *ferens.*] MSS.

[2] *geris.*] In both MSS.—gerit. Pr. Ed.

[3] *Papaque.*] In both MSS.—Est quoque. Pr. Ed.

[4] *Quo.*] In both MSS.—Qua. Pr. Ed.

[5] *vel.*] In both MSS.—et. Pr. Ed.

[6] *solvit.*] So also Pr. Ed.—solvat. C.C.C.

[7] *regia.*] In both MSS.—regna. Pr. Ed.

[8] *Cæsaris en pompa fit.*] In both MSS.—Cæsar lex viva stat. Pr. Ed.

[9] *una.*] In both MSS. — viva. Pr. Ed.

[10] *illa.*] In both MSS.—ea. Pr. Ed.

[11] *ligat.*] C.C.C. and Pr. Ed.—The MS. Cotton has "legat."

[12] *et.*] In both MSS.—ac. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1125. Curia papalis respondit:—

"Pars quoque papalis sic obviat Imperiali:—
'Sic regnare daris,[1] quod Petro subjiciaris;
Jus etiam nobis Christus utrumque parit.
Spiritus et corpus mihi sunt abjecta[2] potenter;
Corpore terrena teneo, Cœlestia mente:
Unde, tenendo polum, solvo ligoque solum.
Æthera scandere,[3] cœlica tangere, Papa videtur:
Nam dare, tollere,[4] nectere, solvere, Papa[5] meretur;
Cui dedit omne decus Lex Nova, Lexque Vetus.
Annulus et baculus, quamvis terrena putentur,
Sunt de jure Poli quæ significare videntur:
Respice jura Dei; mens tua cedat Ei.'"

Cæsar cedit ecclesiæ:—

VERSUS.

"Reddit Apostolico Cæsar quæcumque rogavit.
Pax bona[6] conficitur, sublata Deo reparavit;
Jura suæ partis lætus uterque trahit."

---

[1] *daris.*] In both MSS.—damus. Pr. Ed.

[2] *abjecta.*] In both MSS.—subjecta. Pr. Ed.

[3] *scandere.*] In both MSS.—pandere. Pr. Ed.

[4] *tollere.*] In both MSS.—colere. Pr. Ed.

[5] *Papa.*] In both MSS.—cuncta. Pr. Ed.

[6] *Pax bona.*] C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.—The word "Pax" has been accidentally omitted in the MS. Cotton.

De Imperio Henrici Sexti.

Capitulum VI.

Henricus Sextus cœpit imperare anno Domini M.C. nonagesimo. Mortuo enim Frederico imperatore, et filio ejus primogenito, successit secundus filius suus, Henricus, ad imperium Theutonicorum; qui imperavit annis octo. Coronatus autem fuit mense Aprili, Romæ, post Pascha. A.D. 1190. Henry VI. succeeds his father, and is crowned at Rome.

Eodem mense intravit Apuliam cum magno exercitu; et eodem mense tradidit regnum Tusculanum Romanis, quod destructum est ab eis. His expedition into Apulia.

Et eodem anno sol obscuratus est IX. Kal. Julii,[1] a tertia usque ad nonam. An eclipse of the sun.

Hic sub Celestino et Innocentio imperavit annis septem; secundum alios, et mensibus quatuor.

In anno primo coronæ suæ, Siciliæ regnum intravit, et cepit terram usque Neapolim per tres menses; ibique exercitum tanta mortalitas invasit, quod omnes fere mortui sunt, ita ut[2] Imperator cum paucis viris reverteretur. Hic accepit Constantiam filiam regis Siciliæ in uxorem. He enters Sicily but is compelled to retreat by pestilence in his army.

Anno vero quarto regni sui, totum regnum Apuliæ sibi subjugavit; ibi[3] plurimos rebelles diversis pœnis flagellavit. Tancretum, filium regis Tancreti Siculorum cum matre sua Margareta, et regem Empirotarum, secum in Almaniam duxit captivos. A.D. 1193. He subdues Apulia.

---

[1] June 23.

[2] *ut*] quod. C.C.C.

[3] *ibi*] ibique. C.C.C.

A.D. 1193. Mention is made of the captivity of Richard I. of England.

De isto narrat Pollicronica[1] quod, "quia Ricardum, regem Angliæ, de Terra Sancta revertentem, de carcere suo liberare noluit, etiam data pecunia multa, excommunicatus sit a Papa Celestino. In qua sententia decedens, sepeliri non poterat nisi aut recepta pecunia regi Ricardo redderetur, aut de consensu Ricardi sepulturæ traderetur."

Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

De isto quoque Henrico imperatore dicit Godfridus Viterbiensis[2] in suo Pantheon, faciens finem Cronicarum suarum sic,—"De rege[3]," inquit, "Henrico Sexto,[4] filio Frederici[5] Augusti, adhuc adolescente, gesta non tenemus. Videmus autem ejus elegantissimam formam, laudabilem militiam, audaciam, et largitatem, benevolentiam, justitiam, et pietatem,[6] atque omnes regias virtutes, quas ex ætate adolescentis[7] possumus optare. Qui licet litteratura et natura,[8] super omnes coëtaneos suos,[9] sapientia et sensus[10] subtilitate videatur pollere,[11] salva ejus tamen[12] majestate, cogitamus[13] ei aliquas admonitiones in medium pro-

---

[1] *Pollicronica.*] See Higden, lib. vii. cap. 24, MS. Bodl., Laud, 619, sub anno—"Sed quia regem Angliæ Ricardum, de Terra Sancta revertentem, de carcere suo, nisi data pecunia multa liberare noluerat, excommunicatus est a Papa Celestino: sub qua sententia decedens, sepeliri non poterat, nisi aut reddita Ricardo regi pecunia recepta, aut de permissione Ricardi terræ traderetur."

[2] *Godfridus Viterbiensis.*] See Col. 467, A. Pr. Ed., with which this quotation has been collated.

[3] *rege.*] In both MSS.—domino rege. Pr. ed.

[4] *Sexto.*] In both MSS.—om. Pr. Ed.

[5] *Frederici.*] In both MSS.—Domini Friderici. Pr. Ed.

[6] *justitiam et pietatem.*] In both MSS.—pietatem, justitiam, et veritatem. Pr. Ed.

[7] *adolescentis.*] In both MSS.—adolescentum. Pr. ed.

[8] *litteratura et natura.*] In both MSS.—natura et literatura. Pr. Ed.

[9] *suos.*] In both MSS.—om. Pr. Ed.

[10] *sensus.*] In both MSS.—sensuum. Pr. Ed.

[11] *pollere.*] Here both MSS. omit the following passage:—"nos quidem si plura nescimus, plura tamen temporum ratione conspeximus, plura etiam experti sumus."

[12] *tamen.*] In both MSS.—om. Pr. Ed.

[13] *cogitamus.*] In both MSS.—cogitavimus ut. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1197. Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

ferre,[1] per quas[2] ad laudabiles mores, judicium, et justitiam,[3] reformetur,[4] et ad regias virtutes, quibus, auctore Deo, in posterum[5] gloriose et honeste regat imperium, versibus heroicis animetur :—

Henrico Sexto sacra sunt diademeta præsto.
Tu pater hoc festo Frederice precator,[6] adesto.[7]
Tu diadema feres,[8] Romani culminis heres,
Regibus antiquis,[8] Henrice monarche, coheres :
Romula signa geres, secula nostra tenes :
Imperii sidus plaudent tibi mensis et idus :
Metra tibi fidus regalia dat Godefridus,
Quæ tibi sæpe legas, ut bene regna regas.
O Juvenis juvenum, flos mundi, gloria regum,[9]
Suscipe consilium quod mea metra ferunt,—
Sordibus implicitos pravosque cavebis amicos :
Omnibus æquus eris, sed castigabis iniquos :
Prospice, quicquid agis, te[10] tibi nosse magis.
Lautius est tibi te solum stringere lege,[11]
Quam varios populos aut magnos vincere reges.[12]
Si tua nolueris, neque publica jura,[13] vereri,
Qua fore te regem poteris ratione fateri ?
Si tibi non fueris, nec mihi rector eris.

---

[1] *proferre.*] In both MSS.—proponamus. Pr. Ed.

[2] *per quas.*] In both MSS.—per quas admonitiones. Pr. Ed.

[3] *judicium et justitiam.*] In both MSS.—et ad justitiam et judicium. Pr. Ed.

[4] *informetur.*] In both MSS.—reformetur. Pr. Ed.

[5] *auctore Deo, in posterum.*] In both MSS.—Sibi concessum. Pr. Ed.

[6] *precator.*] In both MSS.—monarchus. Pr. Ed.

[7] *adesto.*] Here both MSS. omit the following line :—

"O pater, O nate, regia metra patent."

[8] *Tu diadema feres,—Regibus antiquis.*] The order of these lines is reversed in the MSS.

[9] *regum.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Urbis et orbis honor cui plaudent tempora rerum."

[10] *te.*] C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.—This word is omitted in the MS. Cotton.

[11] *stringere lege.*] In both MSS.—constringere legem. Pr. Ed.

[12] *reges.*] Here is omitted the following line :—

"Hæc si mente leges, Rex, bene regna reges."

[13] *jura.*] In both MSS.—vota. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1197. Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

Doctor Alexandri Magni pravos sibi mores
Fixit,[1] et incessus inhonestos absque decore.
Rex puer hæc didicit, sed didicisse dolet.
Vicit Alexander Darium simul et Babilonem;
Sed nequit impressum sibimet devincere morem:
Quo semel imbuitur testa tenere solet.
Tu, puer, explora si te nota prava coloret,[2]
Prorsus, et absque mora, vitium removere labora;
Namque vetus vitium nescit abire foras.
Cum[3] tibi cuncta licent, non quæras cuncta licere;
Nam quæ sæpe licent poterunt temptata nocere.[4]
Legum frena tenens, freno te fortiter arce:
Plus aliis, minus ipse tibi, pro tempore parce:
Dum nullum metuis, sis metus ipse tibi.
Vita Pharaonis, scelerosaque gesta Neronis,
Et transgressoris monstrant culpæ Salamonis,
Quæ mala sunt reprobis, quæ bona nata bonis.
Has tibi tam duras Veterum propono figuras,
Ut Sacra Scriptura tibi sit doctrina futura;
Hac poteris patrias arte fovere tuas.
Judicis officio loca sacra decenter honora;
Pace frui, punire malos, Henrice, labora:
Si scelus expellas,[5] pax erit absque mora.
Ecclesias jubeas multa pietate foveri;
Semper in adversis, te subveniente, tueri,
Ecclesiæ precibus vult diadema geri.
Si cupias Veri Regis promissa mereri,
Auxilio cleri studeas, Henrice, doceri.
Ut placeas Domino cras quoque sicut heri.

---

[1] *Fixit.*] In both MSS.—finxit. Pr. Ed.

[2] *coloret.*] In both MSS.—colorat. Pr. Ed.

[3] *nocere.*] Here is omitted the following line:—

"Res etenim licitæ noxia sæpe ferent."

[4] *Cum.*] In both MSS.—Dum. Pr. Ed.

[5] *expellas.*] In both MSS.—exploras. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1197. Extract from Godfrey of Viterbo.

Pauperis aut viduæ dum cernis adesse querelas;
Provisius[1] exhibeas plena pietate medelas,
Judicium miseri cum pietate[2] geras.
Prima poli, postrema fori sit[3] jura coæqua,
Ut jus prævaleat quantum tua suppetat[4] ætas:
Omne malum reseca, noxia cuncta veta.
Expedit interdum sancita remittere legum,
Ne pereat, feritate mala, clementia regum;
Nam puto sæpe Dominum[5] vivere velle reum.
Indulgere tuis tua sic dignetur honestas,
Ut magis absolvat quam puniat alma potestas.
Si miserando feris, rector amandus eris.
Judicio residens animum sic reprime,[6] judex:
Ne, scelerum vindex, vultus sit pectoris index;
Et quæ sunt pœnæ proxima, clausa tene.
Æqua[7] sorte bonus causæ sit utrique[8] patronus;
Par quoque portet onus extraneus atque colonus;
Et nihil arcanum polluat ante manum.
Currant Marte[9] suo parili discrimine lites;
Nec reprimant miseros sub Majestate Quirites.[10]
Si varios testes cupiunt[11] producere partes,
Ne dolus intersit, examine cuncta coerces,[12]
Atque memor pueri tunc Danielis eris.

---

[1] *Provisius.*] In both MSS.—Promptius. Pr. Ed.

[2] *medelas . . . . pietate.*] These words were accidentally omitted (in consequence, evidently of the recurrence of the word "pietate)," by the writer of the MS. Cotton. They are found in the Printed edition, and the MS. C.C.C., from which they have been restored to the text.

[3] *sit.*] In both MSS.—sic. Pr. Ed.

[4] *suppetat.*] suppetit. C.C.C.; Pr. Ed.

[5] *Dominum.*] Deum. C.C.C.—Pr. Ed.

[6] *reprime.*] In both MSS.—comprime. Pr. Ed.

[7] *Æqua.*] In both MSS.—Et qua. Pr. Ed.

[8] *utrique.*] In both MSS.—utrinque. Pr. Ed.

[9] *Marte.*] MS. Cotton, and Pr. Ed.—in arte. C.C.C.

[10] *Quirites.*] Here is omitted in both MSS. the following line:—

"Lite cadant lites judicis arte sitæ."

[11] *cupiunt.*] In both MSS.—cupiant. Pr. Ed.

[12] *coerces.*] In both MSS.—coarctes. Pr. Ed.

A.D. 1197. Si superest carta causam perscripta coarta;
Nec sceleri parcas, si falsa prodiit arca.
Falso, fraude, dolo, non tibi plaudat homo.
Si scelus ulcisci ratio certissima possit,
Rex, age quod subito tua debet[1] ultio nosci:
Ultio tarda foret crimina, damna movet.
Si mea vincla prius subito punita fuissent,
Nulla Maguntina[2] tibi captio damna dedisset:
Crimina non fieri regia pœna facit.
Laudibus inspectis quas audis commemorari;
Nolo superborum cupias feritate[3] levari:
Tædia nam populis vita superba parit.
Proximus esse Deis hac forsan laude putaris:
Rex, moritura caro, caveas ne decipiaris,
Es[4] quia mortalis mors tibi fata parit.
Corpore mortalis mortalia sic moderaris,
Ut rex [jure pari cum] pauperibus moriaris:
Divitis et miseri vita coæqua[5] cadit.

---

[1] *debet.*] In both MSS.—debeat. Pr. Ed.

[2] *Maguntina.*] In both MSS.—Moguntini. Pr. Ed.

[3] *feritate.*] In both MSS.—veritate. Pr. Ed.

[4] *Es.*] In both MSS.—Et. Pr. Ed.

[5] *coæqua.*] In both MSS.—coæva. Pr. Ed.

INCIPIT

DISTINCTIO SECUNDA.[1]

DE SEX REGIBUS ANGLIÆ HENRICIS,

VIRIS ILLUSTRIBUS ET HONORE DIGNISSIMIS.

Dedication of Part II. to King Henry VI.

QUONIAM regales actus et regalia tempora descripturis regalis quoque favor blandus est, hoc summe imprecandum in principiis meis puto, ut id minus meus rex[2] super opus[3] debile benigno arrideat vultu, quatinus et auctor liberius ad cetera sua opuscula et alacrius[4] procedat, tanto lucis radio et benevolentiæ aspectu illustratus.

---

[1] *Distinctio Secunda.*] In this, the Second Part of the Work, which is compiled with far greater care than the previous portion of the History, (probably because of its greater interest to Englishmen,) it has not been considered necessary to collate the present text with that of Capgrave's authorities, when there is no direct reference made to their works. This rule, therefore, does not hold good of quotations made with a direct acknowledgment of the works from which they are borrowed; and in some few instances, where in passages borrowed without acknowledgment, mistakes in the original copying had rendered the text of Capgrave not properly intelligible, [e.g. "insignium sonitibus," substituted (at page 62) for "in signorum sonitibus," which Henry of Huntingdon wrote,] collation has been resorted to as the best means of removing the difficulty.

[2] *ut id minus meus rex*] ut dominus meus. C.C.C.

[3] *super opus*] super hoc opus C.C.C.

[4] *alacrius*] libentius. C.C.C.

Dedication of Part II.

Senatores[1] enim regni,[2] et almæ gentis nostræ protectores fuerunt ii, de quibus agimus; quorum bona sequenda, mala cavenda superius consultum est. Sed et nunc quoque hoc idem recitare delectat, ut ubi reges bene egisse legimus, non pudeat reges sequi; ubi autem de malis eos pœnituisse commemoravimus, exemplum sit eis pœnitendi. Nam et Beatus Ambrosius in Apologia David, proniores asserit multos ad gloriam regum sequendam, quam humilitatem imitandam. "Peccavit," inquit,[3] "David, quod solent reges; sed pœnitentiam gessit, flevit, et ingemuit, quod non solent reges. Confessus est culpam, obsecravit indulgentiam, humi stratus deploravit ærumnam, jejunavit, oravit, confessionis suæ testimonium in perpetua secula vulgato dolore transmisit." Hæc Beati Doctoris verba, summe et inclite Rex, me audacem fecerunt vobis non solum bene acta prædecessorum vestrorum describere, sed etiam peccatorum purgamenta, quæ dignis et diris fletibus habere meruerunt, ad laudem Domini et eorum gloriam perpetuam. Ad honorem igitur Ejusdem Domini, sic ad initia Hujus Partis festinamus.

---

[1] *Senatores.*] Senitores. MS.
[2] *regni*] regnum. MS.
[3] See "S. Ambrosii Apologia David Prima, ch. IV. (Ed. Paris, 1586.) i. 631, M.

De Henrico Rege Primo.

Capitulum primum.

Henricus Primus, rex Angliæ, filius Willielmi Conquestoris tertius, regnavit anno Domino M.C. A.D. 1100. Henry I., of England.

Dictus enim Willielmus, moriens, regnum Angliæ Willielmo filio suo tradidit: Roberto, filio suo primogenito, Normanniæ ducatum concessit: Henrico clerico, filio suo, thesauri magnam copiam legavit. Willielmus autem dictus Rufus coronatur in Anglia, et regnavit annis XIII. Disputes about the succession on the death of William I.

Hæc audiens Robertus, frater suus, apud Hamptun applicuit, ut regnum Angliæ sibi vendicaret. Cui rex Willielmus misit nuncios, qui dicerent:—"Frater tuus Willielmus non se clamat regem, sed subregulum, et hoc per te, et sub te, quia illo major es, melior, et natu prior. Non enim usurpavit, si placet, quod ad tempus, pro tui absentia, suscepit. Et quia ita contigit, quod coronatus est, petit ut ab eo, sub te tamen regnaturo, annuum tributum III. milliarum marcarum suscipias, et qui altero supervixerit honores habeat utriusque." Robertus autem, non expectato concilio, consentiens, exercitum dimisit, et Neustriam rediit, nil nisi promissa secum referens. Robert claims the kingdom, but agrees to a compromise with his brother William;

Idem vero Robertus, audita morte Willielmi, fratris sui, de Terra Sancta rediit, cum uxore sua, quam in Sicilia desponsaverat. Primatum Ierusalem respuit, malens, si posset, regnum Angliæ habere quam principatum in Terra Sancta gerere: unde contigit ut postmodum nunquam in bello fieret fortunatus. on whose death he returns to England.

A.D. 1102. Anno ergo Domini M.CII., Ranulphus, episcopus Dunelmensis, callide de custodia Turris London evasit; mare transiit; Roberto, duci Normanniæ, ut Angliam hostiliter invaderet, persuasit. Quod plures de Anglia proceres litteris et nunciis rogaverunt. Qui statim, collecto grandi exercitu, apud Portesmouth applicuit. Mediantibus tamen regni prudentioribus, pax ea conditione inter fratres reformatur, ut singulis annis, tria millia marcarum[1] argenti Roberto solverentur, et fautoribus ejus terræ ablatæ restituerentur, et qui diutius viveret, heres esset, si alter absque filio moreretur. Hoc autem juraverunt XII. eximiores procerum utriusque partis. Robertus ergo perendinavit in regno fratris sui usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis,[2] et postea ad propria rediit.

He lands at Portsmouth with a large army, but does not proceed to hostilities.

The quarrel is renewed. A.D. 1105. Anno Henrici regis VI., Robertus, dux Normannorum, venit ad regem, fratrem suum, apud Northampton, amicabiliter ab eo petens, ut ablata sibi amicabiliter redderet. Cum vero concordiæ eorum lætus dies non effulsisset, dux iratus rediit in Normanniam, et rex cito secutus est eum. Dux autem, confidens de viribus suis, et de strenuitate militiæ suæ, ducatum Normanniæ, quem fratri suo Henrico impigneraverat, pecunia non soluta, contra pactionem inter eos initam, occupare non erubuit. Et civitatibus, castris, et oppidis in deditionem resumptis, ministros fratris sui, regis Henrici, violenter expulit et abjecit, proventibus ejusdem ducatus totus incumbens.

Robert seizes on Normandy.

Henry enters Normandy, Quo audito, rex Henricus invitatus a nonnullis Normannorum magnatibus, quibus dux Robertus formidabilis fuerat et odiosus, congregato exercitu copioso, ab Anglia transfretavit[3] in Normanniam, sibique in adjutorium innumerabilem stipendiariorum cœpit adjungere comitivam, de pecunia, quæ sibi copiose abundavit,

---

[1] *marcarum*] librarum, C.C.C.

[2] September 29.

[3] *transfretavit*] "transfretravit." MSS.

sufficienter stipendia subministrans, fratri suo, prævaricatori in fide, bellum indicens ad diem certum et locum. Interim, cum Henricus rex obsedisset castrum Tenechebray, venit dux Normannorum, et cum eo Robertus de Bolesme, et consul de Mortevyle, et omnes fautores ejus. Rex vero omnes proceres Normanniæ, et robur Angliæ, et Andegaviæ, et Britanniæ, non improbus habebat. A.D. 1105. and lays siege to Tenechbray. [A.D. 1106.]*

Igitur, cum cornua rauco perstrepuissent cantu, dux Normanniæ cum paucis multos audacissime aggressus est, assuetusque bellis Ierosolimitanis, aciem regalem fortiter et horrende depulit. Willielmusque, consul de Mortevyle, aciem Angliæ de loco in locum turbando promovit. Cui acies occurrit Britannorum. Rex vero, et dux, et acies ceteræ, pedites erant, ut constantius pugnarent. Rex autem ex adverso aciem ducis promens, subito mole magnitudinis oppressit, sicque pars ducis dissoluta est atque victa. Robertus, vero, de Bolisme, hoc aspiciens, fuga sibi consuluit. Captus est ergo dux fortissimus, et consul de Mortevile. Reddiditque Dominus vicem duci Roberto, quia cum gloriosum reddidisset eum in actibus Ierosolomitanis, regnum Jerusalem sibi oblatum renuit, magis eligens quieti et desidiæ in Normannia, quam Domino regum in Civitate Sancta desudare. Damnavit ergo eum Deus desidia perenni, et carcere sempiterno. A battle is fought, in which the Duke of Normandy is routed.

In hujus rei signum, in eodem anno, cometa apparuit, anno scilicet Domini M.CVI. Prima Ebdomada Quadragesimæ, Feria Sexta,[1] circa horam vespertinam, stella insolita visa est lucere inter Austrum et Occidentem, et semper lucebat eadem hora per XXV. dies. Remarkable appearances in the sky.

---

* In arranging the chronology of this King's reign, Capgrave has neglected to count his regnal year, and in consequence has misplaced almost every event; *e.g.* his "second year" is properly the third year. The correct dates of the principal events have been added in the margin in brackets.

[1] The Friday in the first week of Lent, *i.e.* February 9 in the year 1106.

A.D. 1105. Cui ingens trabes visa est de Oriente occurrere. Post hoc, in Cœna Domini,[1] visæ sunt duæ lunæ plenæ, parum ante diem, una in Oriente, altera in Occidente.

Reference to the imprisonment of Hen. IV., Emp., by his son.

Quo quidem anno hæc supradicta contigerunt, et eo etiam anno factum est execrabile discidium inter Henricum imperatorem et Henricum filium ejus, de quo supra diximus,[2] adeo ut filius patrem incarceraret.

The King returns to England, imprisons Robert, and holds his Court at Windsor.

Rex ergo, devictis hostibus, et Normanniam pro libito disponens, rediit in Angliam, fratremque suum, ducem Robertum, et consulem de Mortevyle carceralibus ingessit tenebris. Igitur victoriosus, et tunc primum rex fortis, tenuit Curiam suam in Pascha[3] apud Wyndesores, in qua proceres Angliæ simul et Normanniæ cum timore et tremore affuerunt. Antea namque, et dum juvenis fuisset, et postquam rex fuerat, in maximo habebatur despectu; sed Deus, qui longe aliter judicat quam filii hominum, qui exaltat humiles et deprimit potentes, Robertum omni favore celeberrimum deposuit, et Henrici despecti fortunam[4] per orbem terrarum clarescere jussit. Deditque ei Dominus Omnipotens gratis tria,—Sapientiam, Victoriam, et Divitias.

He is consecrated King by the Bp. of London, Aug. 5, A.D. 1100.

In principio regni sui sacratus est a Mauricio, episcopo Londoniensi, quoniam et Anselmus Cantuariensis tunc in Normannia fuerat.

He marries Maud, daughter of Malcolm of Scotland, Nov. 11, 1100.

Audiens autem Ancelmus regem coronatum, rediit in Angliam, et desponsavit Matildam, filiam Malcolmi, regis Scotiæ, et Margaretæ reginæ, Henrico, regi[5] novo tunc constituto.

A.D. 1107.

Anno Henrici octavo celebratum est Londoniæ concilium, in quo, annuente rege, statutum est, quod nunquam de cetero rex, aut aliqua laica persona, investuram faceret cum traditione annuli et baculi.

---

[1] Holy Thursday, *i.e.* April 6, in the year 1105.

[2] *de quo supra diximus.*] See pp. 33. 34.

[3] Easter day fell on March 25 in the year 1106.

[4] *fortunam*] famam. C.C.C.

[5] *regi*] regis. MSS.

A.D. 1107. The Archbishop of York yields homage to the See of Canterbury.

Quo tempore Giraldus, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, impositis manibus suis in manus Ancelmi, subjectionem et obedientiam ei fecit, sub iis verbis:—"Ego, Giraldus, Eboracensis consecrandus metropolitanus, profiteor subjectionem et canonicam obedientiam Sanctæ Dorobernensi Ecclesiæ, et ejusdem Ecclesiæ primati canonice electo Ancelmo, et successoribus canonice inthronizatis, salva fidelitate domini nostri[1] Henrici, regis Anglorum, et salva obedientia ex parte mea tenenda, quam Thomas, antecessor meus, Sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ ex parte sua professus est."

A.D. 1108. Punishments assigned to sundry offences.

Anno Henrici IX., statuit idem rex, ut fures suspenderentur, et fabricatores falsæ monetæ oculos et membra genitalia amitterent. Verum quia cum denarii eligebantur et flectebantur, rumpebantur, ideo statuit ut denarii et oboli essent rotundi.

A.D. 1109. The Bishopric of Ely established. Hervey of Bangor the first Bishop

Anno regni sui decimo, idem rex fecit sedem episcopalem apud Hely, instituens ibidem Herveum nuper Bangornensem præsulem. Et, quia partes Lincolniensis diœcesis detruncavit, conferendo pagum Cantabriggensem sedi Helyensi, ideo contulit episcopo Lincolniæ villam suam regiam de Spaldyng.

A.D. 1113. Monastery of Hida re-built.

Anno regni sui quarto decimo, idem rex construxit novum monasterium de Hida, extra muros Wyntoniæ, quod prius infra urbem fuerat.

Thurstan, Archbishop of York refuses to submit to the Archbishop of Canterbury, and is deprived.

Eo etiam anno electus est Strustanus in Eboracensem archiepiscopum; qui, licet a rege sæpius esset monitus subjectionem canonicam facere Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, potius elegit dignitati cedere, quam Cantuariensi obedire. At dum privatus sederet, solitis obsequiis destitutus, æger ipse ambitione facti pœnituit, regem ultra mare secutus est, ubi Papa Pascalis, procurantibus clericis Strustani, epistolam regi direxit pro restitutione ejus. Qui cum ad sedem redisset et obedientiam Cantuariensi adhuc facere subtraxisset, renovatur antiquum

[1] *nostri*] mei. C.C.C.

A.D. 1113. The matter is discussed at Rheims by the King and the Pope, and the latter restores Thurstan.

discidium. Statuunt Remis ad concilium concurrere, pro causæ determinatione; ubi Papa primo promisit regi Henrico et Radulpho Cantuariensi nihil contra dignitatem Cantuariensem statuere: immo tale privilegium videbatur concedere, "Quæcumque authentica, et a prædecessoribus nostris concessa, habeat Ecclesia vestra, ea nullatenus imminuimus, sed inconcussa volumus observari." Hic si dominus Papa dixisset,—"Et has dignitates habuit ecclesia vestra," absolvisset litigium, sed modo reliquit indeterminatum. Sic callidus lepos Romanorum novit se ad oratorum convertere versutias, ut quæ vult cassa suspendeat ambage, non parcens alienis laboribus, dummodo suis consulat profectibus. Unde dominus Papa, recedentibus nunciis regiis, inflexus favoribus aut muneribus, callidius quam tantum virum decuit, Strustinum, spreta antiquitatis regula, consecravit, pallium tradens. Et licet rex Henricus, in hoc plurimum indignatus, terram suam Strustano prohiberet, apostolicis tamen litteris perterritus est, quibus comprehensum fuerat, ut aut Strustanum admitteret, aut ipse rex anathemati subjaceret, et Cantuariam officii dignitate suspenderet. Quamobrem rex ipse Strustanum tandem coactus admisit.

The King resists, but is compelled to submit.

Disturbances at the time of the King's second marriage.

Radulphus ex hoc ad iracundiam et paralysim plurimum inclinatus, die quo rex Henricus, mortua prima uxore, Matilde bona, filiam ducis Lotharingiæ duxerat, episcopum Sarisberiæ sacris vestibus indutum, illud[1] officium tanquam infra diocesim suam facere volentem, exutis eximiis cedere coëgit, ac Wentano episcopo, suis in hoc successoribus præcavens, officium hoc delegavit. Postera autem die, cum regem vidisset præter sui conscientiam coronatum, accessit ad eum dicens:—"Injuste es coronatus; tu ergo aut abstinebis corona aut ego Missa." Cui rex ait:—"Pater, quod perperam actum est, corrige." Vix autem pro-

[1] *illud*] illudque. C.C.C.

cerum precibus Radulphus est inflexus, quin regiam coronam de regio capite excussisset. A.D. 1113.

Anno regni sui nonodecimo, pugnavit Henricus rex[1] contra regem Franciæ[2] gloriose. Præposuerat quidem rex Francorum Lodewicus[3] aciem, cui præerat Willielmus, filius Roberti ducis, fratris Henrici.[4] Ipse vero Lodewicus in sequenti cum maximis viribus interfuit[5] agmine. Rex vero Henricus in prima acie proceres suos constituerat. In secunda cum propria familia eques ipse residebat. In tertia vero filios[6] cum summis viribus pedites collocaverat. Igitur acies prima Francorum agmen procerum Normanniæ statim equis depulit, et ipsa dispersa est.[7] Acies[8] regales sibi invicem offenderunt, et acerrime pugnatum est; hastæ franguntur omnes; gladiis res agitur. Inter hæc Willielmus Crisping regis[9] caput gladio bis percussit. Cumque lorica esset impenetrabilis, magnitudine tamen ictuum ipsa lorica aliquantulum capiti regis inserta est, ut sanguis prorumperet. Rex vero percussorem suum ita gladio repercussit, ut cum galea esset impenetrabilis, mole tamen ictus equitem et equum prosterneret; qui mox ante regios pedes captus est. Sed acies pedestris, in qua filii regis[10] inerant, nondum percutiens, sed mox percussura, lanceis inclinatis ex adverso insurrexit. Quod Franci videntes, horrore insperato liquefacti terga verterunt.[11] Victoriosissimus[12] autem rex Henricus perstitit in campo, donec optimates hostium capti A.D. 1118. Battle of Brenville. [A.D. 1119.] Henry is victorious.

[1] *pugnavit Henricus rex, etc.*] The entire account of this battle, and the verses which follow it, are extracted from Henry of Huntingdon's Chronicle, and have been collated with the corresponding account in the MS. Bodl., Laud, 564. *fol.* 76, *b.*

[2] *Franciæ*] Francorum. MS. Laud.

[3] *Lodewicus*] om. MS. Laud.

[4] *Henrici*] Henrici regis. MS. Laud.

[5] *interfuit*] erat. MS. Laud.

[6] *filios*] filios suos. MS. Laud.

[7] *et ipsa dispersa est*] et dispersit. MS. Laud.

[8] *acies*] acie itaque. MS. Laud.

[9] *regis*] regis Henrici. MS. Laud.

[10] *regis*] Henrici. MS. Laud.

[11] *verterunt.*] dederunt. MS. Laud.

[12] *Victoriosissimus*] Victoriæ . . . in campo. MS. Laud.

A.D. 1119. sunt, et ante pedes ejus positi. Reversus vero Rothomagum, insignium sonitibus,[1] et cleri concentibus, Deum et Dominum[2] benedixit.

Extract from Henry of Huntingdon.

De cujus victoria magnifica sic quidam[3] scripsit:—

"Henricus,[4] regum rex et decus, abstulit altos
Francigenis animos, Lodoveum[5] namque Migensi[6]
Rex regem campo magnum major superavit.
Præposuere fugam bellis, calcaria telis,
Galli præcipites: fama spoliisque potitos,
Laurea Normannos et laus æterna coronat.
Sic decus iste ducum, sic corda tumentia,[7] pressit,
Oraque Francorum mutire superba coegit."

Marriage of the King's son.

Annoque[8] eodem, rex Henricus copulavit Willielmum primogenitum suum filiæ comitis Andegaviæ; et pacem

Peace with France.

fecit cum rege Franciæ, ea conditione, quod primogenitus suus Willielmus teneret Normanniam de rege Franciæ.

Conference with Pope Calixtus at Gisors.

Item eodem anno, Kalixtus Papa Gisorcium venit; quo, ad ejus colloquium, rex Angliæ Henricus occurrit. Inter alia rex a Papa impetravit ut omnes consuetudines, quas pater suus in Anglia et Normannia habuerat, sibi concederet, et maxime, ut neminem aliquando legati officio in Anglia fungi permitteret, si non ipse, aliqua præcipua querela urgente, quæ ab epis-

---

[1] *insignium sonitibus*] in signorum sonitibus. MS. Laud.

[2] *Dominum.*] Dominum exercituum. MS. Laud.

[3] *quidam.*] Henry of Huntingdon. See Savile's "Scriptores post Bedam," pp. 295–399.

[4] *Henricus, etc.*] See "Script. post Bedam," page 381, 15; the MS. Bodl., Laud. 564. f. 77, and the MS. Brit. Mus. Bibl. Reg. 13, B. VI., with which these and other lines which follow, by the same writer, have been collated.

[5] *Lodoveum.*] In both MSS. of Capgrave.—Ludoveum. MS. Laud; —Lodovicum. Savile's Ed.

[6] *Migensi.*] In both MSS. of Capgrave.—Nugensi. MS. Laud; Savile's Ed.

[7] *tumentia.*] In both MSS. of Capgrave, and in Savile's Ed.—tumacia. MS. Laud, and MS. Reg.—"tumentia" is written in the margin of the MS. Reg., but in a later hand than the text.

[8] *Annoque*] Anno. C.C.C.

copis regni sui terminari non posset, hoc fieri a Papa postularet. A.D. 1119.

Anno regni sui vicesimo, omnibus pacificatis et domitis in Gallia, cum ingenti gaudio rediit rex Henricus in Angliam. Sed, in ipso maris transitu, duo filii regis, Willielmus et Ricardus, et filia regis, et neptis, et multi proceres, dapiferi, camerarii, pincernæ regis, et Ricardus consul Cestriæ naufragati sunt. Qui omnes, vel fere omnes, sodomitica dicuntur fuisse peste irretiti. Inter istos fuit archidiaconus Herfordiæ, et alii multi proceres numero centum quadraginta, de quibus nullus evasit, excepto uno ignobili rustico. In crastino multum thesaurum reperierunt per arenas, sed corpora defunctorum nulla; de quibus ita scribit poëta[1]:— A.D. 1119. The King returns from France. The King's sons, and many others, drowned. [A.D. 1120.]

"Cum[2] Normannigenæ, Gallis claris[3] superatis,
Anglica regna petunt, obstitit Ipse Deus.
Nam fragili torvum dum percurrit[4] mare cymba,
Intulit, en, cito[5] nubila densa mari,
Dumque vagi cæco rapiuntur tramite nautæ,
Ruperunt imas abdita saxa rates:
Sic mare, dum superans tabulata per ultima serpsit,[6]
Mersit rege satos; occidit orbis honos."

Eodem anno, ad Natale, rex fuit apud Brampton, cum Theobaldo, comite Blesensi. A.D. 1121.

Et post hæc apud Wyndesores duxit Aelidam,[7] Henry marries

[1] *poeta.*] Henry of Huntingdon. See MS. Laud, fol. 77. Savile's ed. page 381, 35.

[2] *Cum.*] In both MSS. of Capgrave.—Dum. MS. Laud, MS. Reg., and Savile's ed.

[3] *claris.*] In both MSS.—clari. MS. Laud. fol. 77, and Savile's ed.

[4] *percurrit.*] In both MSS.—percurrunt. MS. Laud, MS. Reg., and Savile's ed.

[5] *en cito.*] In both MSS.—excito. MS. Laud, and Savile's ed. The MS. Reg. has "exitio."

[6] *serpsit.*] In both MSS., in Savile's edition, and the Laud MS. The MS. Reg. has "serpit."

[7] *Aelidam.*] Thus written in both MSS.

A.D. 1121. Adelais of Lovain.

filiam ducis Lotharingiæ, causa suæ pulchritudinis; et in Pentecoste[1] fuit diadematus, cum regina sua nova, apud Londoniam. De pulchritudine vero prædictæ reginæ sic scripsit quidam[2]:—

"Anglorum regina, tuos, Adelida,[3] decoros[4]
Ipsa referre parans Musa stupore riget.
Quid diadema tibi pulcherrima? quid tibi gemmæ?
Pallet gemma tibi, nec diadema nitet.
Deme tibi cultus, cultus natura ministrat;
Nec meliorari forma beata potest.
Ornamenta cave, nec quicquam luminis inde
Accipis; illa micant lumine clara tuo.
Non puduit me tuas[5] de magnis dicere laudes;
Nec[6] pudeat dominam, deprecor,[7] esse meam."

A.D. 1124. The Empress Matilda visits the King, her father. He founds a Monastery at Reading. [A.D. 1126.]

Anno regni sui XXV., venit Matilda imperatrix ad patrem suum Henricum, sumptis secum manu Beati Jacobi Apostoli incorrupta, et corona imperiali. Rex vero Henricus, præ gaudio illius, fundavit nobile cœnobium de Redingis, et in eo posuit manum Beati Jacobi Apostoli. Hæc Matildis fuit uxor imperatoris Henrici Quinti; et, post mortem ejus, copulata est Galfrido Plauntgeneth, comiti Andegaviæ, de qua idem Galfridus genuit Henricum Secundum Angliæ regem futurum.

A.D. 1126. The King having no son, claims

Convocatis igitur rex Henricus totius regni sui proceribus, prospiciens regno cujus status præ sua teneritudine pendule vacillabat, eo quod non haberet[8] here-

---

[1] Whit Sunday fell on May 29, in the year 1121.

[2] *quidam.*] The same Henry of Huntingdon. See MS. Laud, fol. 77, and Savile's Ed., page 381, 50.

[3] *Adelida.*] In all the MSS.—Adelina, in Savile's Ed.; but the latter gives "Adelida" as a various reading.

[4] *decoros.*] In both MSS.; also in MS. Laud, and in Savile's Ed. The MS. Reg. has "decores."

[5] *me tuas.*] In both MSS.,—an evident mistake of the scribe for "modicas," the reading given in MS. Laud, MS. Reg., and Savile's Ed.

[6] *Nec.*] In all the MSS.—Ne. Savile's Ed.

[7] *deprecor.*] In both MSS.—te precor. MS. Laud, MS. Reg., and Savile's Ed.

[8] *haberet*] habebat. C.C.C.

dem masculum de corpore suo legitime procreatum, qui sibi posset jure hereditario in regno succedere, fecit eos jurare fidelitatem filiæ suæ, Matildis imperatrici, et heredibus ex ea procreandis, quæ nondum de corpore suo sobolem procreaverat. Inter aliquos [1] qui juraverunt, primus et præcipuus extitit Stephanus, comes Bononiæ et Blesensis, regis Henrici, ex sorore sua, nepos, qui non solum in persona propria sacramentum fidelitatis emisit, sed in aliis regni proceribus jurisjurandi formam præstruxit. Siquidem idem Stephanus, majoris Stephani, comitis Bononiæ, primogenitus et heres, promovente eum avunculo, rege Henrico, unicam filiam et heredem comitis Blesensis duxerat in uxorem. Unde factum est ut ex successione paterna comitatum Bononiæ, et per uxorem suam comitatum Blesensem, pariter possideret.

A.D. 1126. the allegiance of his subjects for his daughter Matilda.

Anno regni ejus XXXIII., obiit Robertus, quondam dux Normanniæ, vocabulo Curthose, frater Henrici regis, quem idem Henricus vinculaverat, et ignita pelvi obcæcaverat. Obiit autem apud Castrum de Kardiffe, in Wallia. Legitur autem de eodem Roberto, quod, cum rex Henricus contra Natale Domini sibi et dicto Roberto robas de secta una parari fecisset, et primo de duobus caputiis temptatis aptius sibi reservasset, reliquumque fratri suo misisset, dictus Robertus audiens a camerario, pannos nobiles afferente, [2] quod grossior esset scapulis domino suo rege, et ideo rex, utroque temptato caputio, sibi largius transmisisset, respondisse fertur,—"Nunc nimis diu vixi, cum junior frater meus mihi emiserit veteres pannos, quos ipse reliquit, induendos." Et, ex cordis magnitudine, nunquam de cetero voluit comedere nec bibere.

A.D. 1132. Death of Robert, Duke of Normandy at Cardiff Castle, [A.D. 1134.]

Anno regni sui XXXV., idem Henricus in Normannia morabatur continue, sed sæpe redire in Angliam proponebat, nisi a filia sua detineretur, propter

A.D. 1134. The King in Normandy.

[1] *aliquos*] alios. C.C.C.

[2] *afferente*] affererenti. MSS.

A.D. 1134. varias discordias quæ oriebantur ex pluribus causis[1] inter regem et consulem Andegaviæ, artibus filiæ suæ. Quibus stimulationibus rex in iram et rancorem animi excitatus est, quæ a nonnullis causa refrædationis, et postea mortis ejus, dictæ sunt fuisse naturalis. Cum ergo rex a venatu redisset, apud Sanctum Dionisium, in sylva Leonum, comedit carnes murænarum, quæ semper ei nocebant, et semper eas amabat. Cum autem medicus hoc comedi prohiberet, non acquievit rex salubri consilio, secundum quod dicitur:—

"Nititur in vetitum semper, cupimusque negata."[2]

A.D. 1135. His death. Hæc igitur comestio, pessimi humoris illatrix, et consimilium vehemens excitatrix, senile corpus infrigidans letaliter, subitam fecit perturbationem. Contra quod natura renitens excitavit febrem acutam, ad impetum dissolvendum materiei gravissimæ. Cum autem restare nulla vi posset, decessit rex magnus, cum regnasset annis XXXV. mensibus tribus, in prima die Decembris. De cujus morte dat musam memorialem Henricus Huntyngdon,[3] dicens:—

"Rex Henricus obit, decus olim, nunc dolor, orbis:
Numina flent numen nunc deperisse[4] suum.
Mercurius minor eloquio, vi mentis Apollo,
Jupiter imperio, Marsque vigore gemunt;
Janus cautela minor, Alcides probitate
Conflictu Pallas, arte Minerva gemunt.
Angliaque cujus,[5] quæ sceptro numinis hujus
Ardua splenduerat, jam tenebrosa ruit.
Hæc cum rege suo, Normannia cum duce marcet;
Nutrit[6] hæc puerum, perdidit illa virum."

---

[1] *ex pluribus causis*] ex pluribus de causis. MSS.

[2] Ovid. Am. iii. 4. 17.—"*Nitimur* in vetitum," &c.

[3] See Savile's Ed., page 385, 34.

[4] *nunc deperisse.*] In both MSS.—deperiisse. MS. Reg. and Savile's Ed.

[5] *Angliaque cujus.*] In both MSS. and in MS. Reg.—Anglia, quæ cunis. Savile's Ed.

[6] *Nutrit.*] In both MSS.—Nutriit. MS. Reg. and Savile's Ed.

Defuncto ergo rege magno Henrico, libera, ut solet, de mortuo judicia populi depromebantur. Alii eum tribus irradiasse splendoribus asserebant :—Sapientia ; nam in consilio profundissimus, providentia conspicuus, et eloquentia clarus habebatur. Victoria ; quia, præter alia quæ egregie gesserat, regem Francorum lege belli superaverat. Divitiis ; quibus omnes prædecessores suos longe lateque præcesserat. Alii tribus vitiis eum inficiebant :—Cupiditate ; quia, ut omnes parentes sui, pauperes, tributis et exactionibus inhians delatoris hamis intercipiebat. Crudelitate ; quia consulem de Mortevile, cognatum suum, in captione positum, deoculavit, nec sciri facinus [1] tam horrendum potuit, usquequo mors secreta regis aperuit. Et fratrem suum Robertum, ducem Normanniæ, pelvi candente excæcavit. Luxuria ; quia mulierum ditioni, more Salamonis, continue subjacebat. A.D. 1135. Contradictory estimates of the King's character.

Corpus itaque regis defuncti ita evisceratum et excerebratum, saleque multo respersum est, causa fœtoris vitandi, quod jam multos infecerat. Tandem in corio taurino reconditur, nec potuit adhuc humor ille noxius contineri. Corpus ejus Rothomagum allatum est, et ibi viscera ejus, et cerebrum, et oculi consepulta sunt. Inde vero corpus regium Cadomum sui deportaverunt, ubi diu in ecclesia positum est in qua pater suus sepultus fuerat.

Tandem reliquiæ regalis cadaveris allatæ sunt in Angliam, et sepultæ apud abbatiam de Redinggis. He is buried at Reading.

Vide ergo, quicumque legis, quomodo regis potentissimi corpus, cujus cervix diadema auro et gemmis, quasi diei splendore, vernaverat, cujus utraque manus præradierat, cujus reliqua superficies auro textili tota rutilaverat, cujus os tam deliciosis cibis pasci solebat ; cui omnes assurgere, omnes expavescere, omnes congaudere, omnes admirari solebant ;—vide, inquam, quo corpus illud devenerit, quam horribiliter delituerit, quam miserabiliter abjectum fuerit !

---

[1] *facinus*] fascinus. MSS.

De Henrico Rege Angliæ Secundo.

Capitulum Secundum.

Henry II. of England born, [A.D. 1133.]

Henricus Secundus, rex Angliæ, filius Galfridi, comitis Andegaviæ, et Matildis, filiæ Henrici Primi, quondam imperatricis, natus est Andegaviæ circa annum Domini M.CXXXVIII.;[1] cui regnum Angliæ hereditario jure competebat.

A.D. 1135. Stephen seizes the throne.

Stephanus tamen, comes Bononiæ et Blesensis, regnum occupabat, non obstante sacramento quo super hac re constrictus erat. De regno vero ejus, et numero annorum quibus regnavit, bellis quoque in quibus victus est, vel victor effectus, inter ipsum et dictam Matildam, non est præsentis negotii enucleare, cum solos Henricos Illustres hoc tractaculo commendandos suscepi.

A.D. 1139. The Empress Matilda invades England on behalf of her son.

Matilda igitur imperatrix, nunc comitissa Andegaviæ, audita patris morte, muliebrem animum exuens, et virilem induens, devia pelagi pericula non formidans, assumpto secum filio suo adhuc impubere, ut puta in cunabulis[2] vagiente, consentiente marito suo, comite Andegavensi, qui, ne terras suas relinqueret indefensas, cum ea transfretare tutum fore non decrevit, classe parata, cum militaribus copiis navem ascendit, et, aura gratius arridente, secundis flatibus navigando, applicuit in Angliam, ut jus quod filio suo super regno Angliæ competebat, proavorum successione, et avi sui assignatione, radice rectissima, vendicaret. Procerum quoque regni, quorum animos jurisjurandi transgressio titillabat,

---

[1] M.CXXXVIII.] Thus in both MSS.—Capgrave says "circa," but he is five years wide of the mark. Prince Henry was born in the year 1133.

[2] *cunabulis.*] C.C.C. cunabilis MS. Cotton.

provida deliberatione sibi conciliabat, denuncians regi Stephano, alieni juris invasori, ut vel regno cederet, aut ad motus se bellicos repararet. Evocavitque sibi virum potentissimum, Robertum, comitem Gloverniæ, quem pater suus de non legitimo concubitu progenuerat. A.D. 1139.

Sexdecim igitur annis confligebant partes imperatricis et regis Stephani; quibus Henricus, adhuc puer, in Scotia demoratus est; nam et imperatrix, ut aiunt, filium suum adhuc impuberem, dum regem Stephanum sorte bellica fatigaret, clarissimo regi David, regi Scotorum, tradidit nutriendum. Henry remains in Scotland during the war.

Cum ergo idem rex Henricus sextumdecimum ætatis attigisset annum, rex Scotorum, perspiciens ipsum jam aptum armorum et prœliorum exercitiis, eum apud Karloil militiæ cingulo decoravit. A.D. 1149.

Audita autem morte patris sui comitis Andegavensis, cum omni celeritate ad partes se transtulit Gallicanas, et Andegaviam ex successione paterna, Normanniam, et Cenomanniam, ceterasque terras avito sibi jure competentes, nullo prorsus resistente, in deditionem accepit, et, spreto comitis nomine, nomen ducis induit, et se ducem Normanniæ publice proclamavit. A.D. 1150. Henry hastens to to Anjou, and proclaims himself Duke of Normandy.

Eodem anno duxit idem Henricus Helianoram reginam, relictam scilicet regis Francorum, et comitissam Pictavorum. Agitata enim diutius lite inter Helianoram reginam Franciæ et virum suum regem, ipsa Helianora agente et petente, divortium factum est, ratione consanguinitatis quam proposuit inter se et virum suum. Auctoritate autem apostolica celebratum est divortium inter eos. Instantius autem laborabat mulier ad divortium, eo quod nuptias Henrici, ducis Normanniæ, et futuri regis Angliæ, ferventius cupiebat. Erat autem ipsa filia unica et heres ducis Aquitaniæ, quam nos Vasconiam nuncupamus. Solutoque matrimonio inter ipsam et regem, ad nuptias ducis quas concupierat, illico advolavit. Unde factum est ut dux Henricus jus hereditarium uxoris suæ, ducatum Aqui- He marries Eleanor of France, [A.D. 1151.]

A.D. 1151. taniæ, etiam invito rege Franciæ, justitia tamen exigente, in deditionem acciperet, et ducatui Normanniæ et comitatibus Andegaviæ et Cenomanniæ sociaret. Et cœpit inter primos orbis proceres tanquam famosissimus reputari. Possessiones istas amplissimas tenuit et possedit idem Henricus, et posteri ejus usque ad tempus Johannis; qui, malis innumeris crebrescentibus circa eum, eas sua mollitie perdidit.

A.D. 1153. Stephen acknowledges Henry's right to the throne.

Anno Domini M.CLIIII.,[1] Justitia de Cœlo prospiciente, rex Stephanus, omni luce privatus, cum duce Henrico, intercedentibus et intervenientibus magnatibus terræ, taliter concordati sunt quod rex Stephanus recognovit in conventu magnatum Angliæ quod dux Henricus jus hereditarium in regnum Angliæ, habebat. Et dux benigne concessit ut rex Stephanus, omni tempore vitæ suæ, regnum pacifice possideret. Ita tamen confirmatum est pactum, quod ipse rex et episcopi tunc præsentes, cum ceteris regni optimatibus, jurarent quod dux Henricus, post mortem Stephani, si illum superviveret, sine aliqua contradictione regnum obtineret. Et super ista pace inviolabiliter observanda confecta est una solemnis carta in loco securissimo observanda.

A.D. 1154. Accession of Henry II.

Mortuo siquidem Stephano, Henricus rex Secundus regnavit.

Birth of Prince Henry.

Cujus anno primo Henricus filius ejus, rex futurus, Londoniæ natus est.

A.D. 1155. Pope Adrian consents to the invasion of Ireland by the King.

Per idem tempus, silicet anno Domini M.CLV., misit nuncios solemnes Romam, rogans Papam Adrianum, adhuc novum,—cujus gratiam confidenter obtinere speravit, eo quod Anglicus esset idem Papa, natus apud Sanctum Albanum,—ut liceret ei Hiberniam hostiliter intrare, et sibi eam subjugare, atque homines illos bestiales ad Fidem Christi decentius revocare, ecclesiæque Romanæ fidelius inclinare. Quod

[1] M.CLIIII.]—M.CLIII. C.C.C.: this latter is the correct date.

Papa gratanter regi annuit, et eidem super hoc Privi- A.D. 1155.
legium[1] destinavit.

Tenor vero Privilegii Henrico Secundo concessi ab Adriano Papa super expeditione Hiberniæ conquerendæ, hic est :— The Pope's Bull.

" ADRIANUS[2] EPISCOPUS, SERVUS SERVORUM DEI, CARISSIMO[3] FILIO ILLUSTRI ANGLORUM REGI, HENRICO,[4] SALUTEM ET APOSTOLICAM BENEDICTIONEM.

" Laudabiliter et fructuose de glorioso Nomine propagando in terris, et æternæ[5] felicitatis præmio cumulando in Cœlis, Tua Magnificentia cogitat, dum ad dilatandum Ecclesiæ terminos, ad declarandum indevotis[6] et rudibus populis Christianæ Fidei veritatem, et vitiorum plantaria de Agro Dominico extirpanda, sicut Catholicus Princeps, intendis, et ad id convenientius exsequendum, consilium Apostolicæ Sedis exigis, et favorem.

" In quo facto, quanto altiori consilio et majori discretione procedis, tanto in eo feliciorem progressum te, præstante Deo, confidimus habiturum; eo quod ad bonum exitum semper et finem solebant attingere, quæ de ardore fidei et religionis amore[7] principium acceperunt.

" Sane Hiberniam, et omnes insulas, quibus Sol Justitiæ, Christus, illuxit, et quæ documenta Fidei Christianæ perceperunt,[8] ad Jus Beati Petri et Sacro-

[1] *Privilegium.*] See Mansi's Conciliorum Nova Collectio, xxi. 788, with which the text of Capgrave has been collated. See also Rymer's Fœd. i. 19; Wilkins 1. 426; Twysden, 529.

[2] *Adrianus.*] Hadrianus. Mansi.

[3] *Carissimo.*] In both MSS.—Carissimo in Christo. Mansi.

[4] *Henrico.*] In both MSS.—om. Mansi.

[5] *æternæ.*] In both MSS. and in the Conciliorum Collect. Regia.—om. Mansi.

[6] *indevotis.*] In both MSS.—indoctis. Mansi.

[7] *religionis amore.*] In both MSS.—de religionis amore. Mansi.

[8] *perceperunt.*] In both MSS.—ceperunt. Mansi.

A.D. 1155. The Pope's Bull.

Sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ, quod Tua etiam Nobilitas recognoscit, non est dubium pertinere. Unde tanto in eis[1] plantationem fidelem et germen gratum Deo inserimus, quanto a nobis id interno examine districtius prospicientes[2] exigendum.

" Significasti siquidem nobis, Fili in Christo Carissime, te Hiberniæ insulam, ad subdendum illum populum legibus, et vitiorum plantaria inde extirpanda, velle intrare; et de singulis domibus annuam unius denarii Beato Petro velle solvere pensionem, et jura Ecclesiarum terræ illius illibata et integra conservare.

" Nos igitur[3] pium et laudabile desiderium tuum in favorem congruum[4] prosequentes, et petitioni tuæ benignum impendentes assensum, gratum et acceptum habemus, ut, pro dilatandis Ecclesiæ terminis, pro vitiorum restringendo decursu, et[5] moribus corrigendis, et virtutibus inserendis, pro Christianæ Religionis augmento, illam[6] ingrediaris, et quæ[7] ad honorem Dei et salutem illius terræ spectaverint, exsequaris; et illius terræ populus honorifice te recipiat, et sicut Dominum veneretur; jure nimirum Ecclesiarum[8] illibato et integro permanente, et salvo Beato Petro, et Sacrosanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ de singulis domibus annua unius denarii pensione.

" Si ergo quod cepisti[9] animo effectu duxeris prosequente[10] complendum, studeas gentem illam bonis moribus informare; et agas tam per Te, quam per

---

[1] *tanto in eis.*] In both MSS.—tanto in eis libentius. Mansi.

[2] *prospicientes.*] prospicimus. C.C.C., Mansi.

[3] *igitur.*] In both MSS.—itaque. Mansi.

[4] *in favorem congruum.*] In both MSS. — cum fervore congruo. Mansi.

[5] *et.*] In both MSS.—pro. Mansi.

[6] *illam.*] In both MSS.—insulam illam. Mansi.

[7] *quæ . . . . . spectaverint.*] In both MSS.—quod . . . . spectaverit. Mansi.

[8] *Ecclesiarum.*] In both MSS.—ecclesiastico. Mansi.

[9] *cepisti.*] In both MSS.—concepisti. Mansi.

[10] *prosequente.*] In both MSS.—om. Mansi.

alios,[1] quos ad hoc fide,[2] verbo, et vita,[3] idoneos esse perspexeris, ut decoretur ibi Ecclesia, plantetur et crescat Christianæ Fidei Religio, et ea,[4] quæ ad honorem Dei, et salutem pertinent animarum, taliter ordinentur, ut a Deo sempiternæ mercedis cumulum consequi merearis, et in terris gloriosum nomen valeas in seculis obtinere." A.D. 1155. The Pope's Bull.

Hoc Privilegium etiam confirmavit Alexander,[5] ejusdem Adriani successor.

Anno regis Henrici II., et anno Domini M.CLVI., in Francia, divina revelatione, inventa est tunica Christi inconsutilis, quam, sicut litteræ cum ipsa re indicabant, Mater Ejus fecerat Ei, et crevit Ipso crescente. Narrat etiam Pollichronica,[6] quod, anno Domini sexcentesimo septimo, tempore Focæ imperatoris, in valle Josaphat, tunica Domini inconsutilis inventa est, et per Gregorium, Antiochenum episcopum, in archa delata est Ierusalem marmorea. A.D. 1156. Discovery of the seamless coat of Christ.

Anno Domini M.CLX., Henrici VI., idem rex Henricus, a Tholosa rediens, Margaretam, filiam regis Francorum triennem, quam in custodia habebat, Henrico filio suo septenni, ad Burgum, cum maxima solemnitate fecit desponsari. A.D. 1160. Marriage of Margaret of France to the King's son.

---

[1] *alios.*] In both MSS.—illos. Mansi.

[2] *quos ad hoc fide, etc.*] In both MSS.—quos adhibes, quos fide, etc. Mansi.

[3] *vita.*] The word "opere" has been erased, and "vita" written above by a later hand in C.C.C.

[4] *ea.*] In both MSS.—om. Mansi.

[5] *confirmavit Alexander.*] See Mansi's Conciliorum Collect. Nova. xxii. 132., where an account of the "Concilium Cassilense, in Hibernia habitum," is given from Hoveden, and which ends thus:—"Rex vero Angliæ misit transcriptum chartarum universorum archiepiscoporum et episcoporum Hiberniæ, ad Alexandrum Papam; et ipse authoritate apostolica confirmavit illi et heredibus suis regnum Hiberniæ, secundum formam chartarum archiepiscoporum et episcoporum Hiberniæ."

[6] *Pollichronica.*] See Higden, lib. v. cap. 10, MS. Bodl., Laud. 619:—"Circa hoc tempus tunica Domini inconsutilis inventa est in valle Josaphat per Gregorium Antiochenum, in archa marmorea quæ delata est Ierusalem. *Ranulphus.*"

A.D. 1162. Thomas Becket is consecrated.

Et anno Domini M.CLXII., Thomas, regis cancellarius, et archidiaconus Cantuariæ, consecratus est episcopus, III. nonas Junii, Dominica prima post Pentecosten.[1]

Per idem tempus rex Henricus fecit omnes magnates jurare fidelitatem Henrico, filio suo. Et inter omnes magnates regni Thomas archiepiscopus primus fidelitatem juravit, salva fide regis, quamdiu viveret.

He resigns the Great Seal.

Et cito postea idem Thomas resignavit sigillum regium,—quod rex nimis moleste tulit,—et deinceps vitam curialem in sanctissimam convertit.

A.D. 1163. Pope Alexander visits France, and summons a council at Tours.

Anno Domini M.CLXIII., Henrici IX., Alexander Papa, per maris devia navigando, ut insidias Octaviani et Frederici declinaret, valedicens Apuliæ, devenit in Gallias. Et, occurrentibus et applaudentibus sibi regibus Angliæ et Franciæ, gratumque sibi favorem præstantibus, convocatis universis occidentalis ecclesiæ prælatis, generale concilium in civitate Turonensi celebravit. Interfuitque eidem concilio venerabilis Thomas Cantuariensis.

The King plots the ruin of Becket.

Rex autem Henricus, ab eo tempore, vertit amorem suum et cor a Thoma archiepiscopo, et ex illo tempore insidias paravit ei et impedimenta. Ipso quoque tempore, Rogerus, comes Clarensis, a Thoma Cantuariæ archiepiscopo vocatus est ad faciendum ei homagium de Castello de Tonebrigge. Quod cum audisset rex, prohibuit fraudulenter hoc fieri; et hoc fuit primum indicium odii regii manifestum.

A.D. 1164. Council of Clarendon.

Et anno sequente, apud Claringdon, coram rege et magnatibus regni, facta est recordatio Libertatum regiarum et Consuetudinum, quibus quia Thomas Cantuariæ assensum non præbuit, recessit cum magna indignatione regis.

A.D. 1166. Becket excommuni-

Et anno XII. ejusdem regis, præfatus Thomas archiepiscopus excommunicavit omnes conservatores

[1] June 3.

Libertatum et Consuetudinum regiarum apud Claring-don recitatarum, quas potius execrabiles abusiones, quam usus vel libertates, appellavit; et quosdam super hoc regis fautores, tam clericos, quam laïcos, nominatim excommunicavit. A.D. 1166. cates all who support the Constitutions of Clarendon.

Eo tempore rex Henricus procuravit amotionem Thomæ a Pontuniaco; et cito post ab Anglia totum genus suum, non tantum a Londonia, sed a toto regno suo immisericorditer proscribit. Sub eisdem temporibus episcopi Angliæ facti sunt regis fautores, et Beati Thomæ in causa sua persecutores. The King procures his removal from Pontigny.

Porro, post septem annos exilii sui, veniens in Angliam, martyrizatus est, rege ipso Henrico, ut multi asserunt, ignorante. Nam post martyrium suum, misit rex Henricus solemnes nuncios ad Papam Alexandrum propter necem Sancti Thomæ, qui jurantes pro ipso in animam suam, ipsum de dicto facto excusarunt. Sed Alexander Papa, Tusculana civitate receptis nunciis et auditis, misit duos cardinales ad Galliæ partes, ut innocentiam regis investigarent. Coram quibus rex juravit, quod nunquam de consilio vel jussu suo fuerat interfectus; sed quia occasione turbationis, quam erga ipsum habuit, occisus fuerat, pro illo mox obtulit ducentos milites ultra mare per annum ibi moraturos, et seipsum cruce signatum infra triennium transfretaturum. A.D. 1170. His violent death. The King sends messages to the Pope declaring his innocency of the murder. [A.D. 1171.]

Anno regni sui decimo octavo, cœperunt sibi fieri revelationes, potissime de vita sua corrigenda.[1] A.D. 1171. An account of certain mysterious warnings given to the King.

Primo per quendam senem, apud castrum Kardyff[2] in Wallia, Dominica in octavis[3] Paschæ,[4] ubi, post

---

[1] *Anno regni, etc.*] The whole of this account has been extracted from Higden. lib. vii. cap. 22. MS. Bodl. Laud. 619, fol. 142, with which the text has been collated.

[2] *castrum Kardiff.*] In both MSS.—Castrum de Caerdef. Higden.

[3] *Dominica in octavis.*] In both MSS.—Dominica in albis, octavo. Higden.

[4] April 4. Easter Day fell on March 28, in the year 1171.

A.D. 1171. missam auditam, dum rex ad equum suum festinaret,[1] affuit subito[2] vir quidam flavus, tonsura rotunda, macer et procerus, tunica alba vestitus, nudisque pedibus, qui et regem Theutonica lingua sic affatur :— "Good holde, knyth![3] Salutat vos[4] Christus et Pia Mater Ejus, Johannes Baptista, et Clavicularius Petrus,[5] mandantes[6] ne per terras ditionis vestræ fiant mercatus, aut opera servilia diebus Dominicis, exceptis iis quæ ad ciborum usum pertinent. Quod si feceris,[7] quicquid inceperis, in felici[8] fine complebis."[9] Rex autem dixit Gallice militi qui frænum suum tenebat : — "Inquire a rustico, si[10] ista somniaverit." Ac dum miles[11] hoc Anglice exponeret, subjicit ille lingua[12] priori :—"Sive hoc somniaverim, sive non, vide quis dies sit hodie, quia nisi hæc feceris, vitamque tuam emendaveris,[13] tales infra præsentem annum rumores audies, quod usque ad exitum tuum inde dolebis." His dictis, vir ille disparuit. Et infra annum illum tres filii regis, Henricus, Galfridus et Johannes,[14] ad regem Franciæ contra patrem suum diverterunt ; rex

---

[1] *festinaret.*] In both MSS.—accederet. Higden.

[2] *affuit subito.*] In both MSS.—astitit ei. Higden.

[3] *Good holde, knyth.*] In both MSS.—"Gode olde gyge." Deinde sic prosequitur. Higden. See also page 38 of "Giraldus Cambrensis De Instructione Principum." (8vo. London, 1846,) where the words are given as follows :—"God houlde dhe Cuning!" [quod Latine sonat, Deus te custodiat, Rex.]

[4] *vos.*] In both MSS.—te. Higden.

[5] *Clavicularius Petrus.*] In both MSS.—Petrus Apostolus. Higden.

[6] *mandantes.*] In both MSS.—mandantes firmiter. Higden.

[7] *feceris.*] In both MSS.—observaveris. Higden.

[8] *in felici.*] The syllable "in" is written above the line in a later hand in the Cotton MS., but it is not found in C.C.C.

[9] *in felici fine complebis.*] In both MSS.—feliciter consummabis. Higden.

[10] *si ista.*] In both MSS.—an hæc. Higden.

[11] *miles.*] om. Higden.

[12] *lingua.*] C.C.C. In the MS. Cotton this word is written by mistake "ligua."

[13] *emendaveris.*] In both MSS.—correxeris. Higden.

[14] *Johannes.*] In both MSS.—Ricardus. Higden.

Scotiæ, et comes Cestriæ,[1] contra regem insurrexerunt;[2] multæque aliæ præmunitiones divinitus fiebant:[3] sed hæc omnia parvi pendebat. A.D. 1171.

Secundo, namque, præmunivit eum quidam Hibernicus, cum adjectione signorum secretorum.

Tertio, quidam miles,[4] Philippus de Esterby,[5] transito mari Gallico, exposuit regi in Normannia septem articulos, quos emendaret; quod si faceret, honorifice per septennium viveret,[6] Crucem Christi de Ejus hostibus eriperet; alioquin in anno quarto ignominiose moreretur.[7] Primi tres articuli[8] fuerunt, quæ juravit in coronatione sua, scilicet[9] de ecclesia Dei manu tenenda,[10] de legibus justis faciendis,[11] et ne aliquem, quamvis reum,[12] sine judicio damnaret. Quartus articulus[13] fuit de ablatis hereditatibus restituendis. Quintus,[14] de justitia sine pretio facienda. Sextus,[15] de reddendis stipendiis ministrorum. Septimus fuit de Judæis de terra sua[16] expellendis, parte pecuniæ, unde abire possent,[17] eis relicta.

Sed rege non correcto, insurrexerunt in eum plures validi et fortes. Nam Henricus, primogenitus ejus, nuper A.D. 1173. Troubles with the King's sons.

---

[1] *comes Cestriæ.*] The Laud MS. here adds :—"et comes Laycestriæ."

[2] *insurrexerunt.*] In both MSS.—surrexerunt. Higden.

[3] *divinibus fiebant.*] In both MSS.—Regi fiebant. Higden.

[4] *miles.*] miles de Lyndesey. Higden.

[5] *Esterby.*] In both MSS.—Estreby. Higden.

[6] *viveret.*] In both MSS.—regnaret. Higden.

[7] *moreretur.*] In both MSS.—obiret. Higden.

[8] *Primi tres articuli.*] In both MSS.—Tria prima. Higden.

[9] *scilicet.*] In both MSS.—observare. Higden.

[10] *manu tenenda.*] In both MSS.—tuenda. Higden.

[11] *faciendis.*] In both MSS.—statuendis. Higden.

[12] *quamvis reum.*] In both MSS.—om. Higden.

[13] *Quartus articulus.*] In both MSS.—Quartum. Higden.

[14] *Quintus.*] Quintum. Higden.

[15] *Sextus.*] Sextum. Higden.

[16] *de terra sua.*] In both MSS.—om. Higden.

[17] *unde abire possent.*] In both MSS.—ad exeundum. Higden.

A.D. 1173. coronatus voluntate patris ut regnum securius possideret, junctis sibi duobus fratribus suis et rege Franciæ, cujus filiam desponsaverat, cœpit inquietare patrem, ita ut ad guerram moveret, ut rex in signum tanti peccati quod nondum expiaverat, sua sentiret sibi viscera[1] repugnare.

A D. 1174. The King does penance at the tomb of Becket.

Tunc rex ecclesiæ Cantuariensi reconciliatus, pœnitentiam[2] egit, et Sancto Thomæ[3] votum faciens, ipsumque specialiter invocans, venit Cantuariam, et in Capitulo a conventu absolvitur, resignans illas Consuetudines pro quibus Beatus Thomas usque ad mortem certavit.

He is reconciled to his sons.

Inter hæc, mediatoribus plurimis laborantibus, facta est concordia inter regem Henricum et filium suum Henricum, regem juniorem, sub hac forma, ut filius qui patrem offenderat, humiliter ad patrem veniens, reatum suum publice recognosceret; quod et fecit, et veniam obtinuit. Et quod ulterius patrem non inquietaret, trifariam præstitit cautionem juratoriam, scilicet sacramentum corporale præstans; deinde fidejussores dominos inducens; postremo obsides. Tres quoque fratres juniores pater facile et impune admisit ad gratiam, quos ætatis immaturitas excusabat. Ipsi quoque cum patre remanserunt; senior in provinciis Andegaviæ et Aquitaniæ, quas pater sibi concesserat, continue morabatur.

A.D. 1177. A great congress of foreign Ambassadors at Westminster.

Anno Domini M.CLXXVII., Henrici XXIII., nuncii regis Castellæ, et nuncii regis Navarriæ, nuncii Manuelis, Imperatoris Constantinopolitani, et nuncii Romani Imperatoris Frederici, nuncii Willielmi, Treverensis archiepiscopi, nuncii comitis Flandriæ, Philippi, nuncii ducis Henrici Saxonici, quos varia trahebant[4] negotia, tanquam ex condicto, pridie idus Novembris,[5]

---

[1] *viscera.* C.CC. — visera. MS. Cotton.

[2] *egit.*] agit. C.C.C.

[3] *Thomæ.* Thoma. MSS.

[4] *trahebant.*] C.C.C.—trahehebant. MS. Cotton.

[5] November 12.

omnes in curia regis Henrici simul apud Westmonasterium convenerunt. Hoc ideo dicimus, ut notum sit omnibus quantæ rex Henricus sapientiæ fuerit, quantæque magnificentiæ, ad cujus audientiam totius fere orbis concilia discutienda venerunt. A.D. 1177.

Anno Domini M.CLXXXII., Henrici XXVIII., Henricus rex iste apud Waltham, in præsentia procerum regni, ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ, XLII. millia[1] marcas argenti, et quingentas marcas auri, liberabiliter[2] assignavit. A.D. 1182. The King contributes money to the Crusade.

Anno sequente obiit delectabilis indolis rex Henricus junior, filius regis Henrici Secundi, in die Sancti Barnabæ Apostoli[3] in transmarinis partibus, qui primo Cenomanniæ est sepultus, deinde apud Rothomagum. A.D. 1183. Death of Prince Henry.

De quo quidam metricus sic scripsit :—

"Omnis honoris honor, et decus orbis et urbis,
Militiæ splendor, gloria, lumen, apex.
Julius ingenio, virtutibus Hector, Achilles
Viribus, Augustus moribus, ore Paris."[4]

De morte hujus regis junioris, et ne nimis contristaretur super hoc rex senior, scripsit Petrus Blesensis notabilem epistolam,—Liber Epistolarum, epistola prima.[5]

---

[1] *millia.*] This word has been inserted above the line by a later hand, in the MS. Cotton. It forms part of the text in C.C.C.

[2] *liberabiliter.*] liberaliter. C.C.C.

[3] June 11.

[4] *omnis honoris . . . . ore Paris.*] Quoted also in Higden's Polychronicon, from which Capgrave has borrowed largely both in the present work and in the Chronicle of England. See MS. Bodl., Laud. 619, where the first line is given as follows :—

" [De quo quidam sic cecinit metrice :—]

' Omnis honoris honos, decor et decus urbis et orbis.' "

[5] See page 1 of "Petri Blesensis Opera," fol. Paris, 1667. The Epistola Prima is merely an epistle dedicatory to Henry II. The letter referred to in the text is "Epistola Secunda," of which the argument is as follows : — "Solatur regem Henricum patrem, æquo gravius in filii Henrici III. obitu mærentem, probatque morem quidem lugendi vita defunctos pium esse si moderatus sit ; at nullam causam esse tam acerbe deplorandi mortem filii, eum tantas ipse a se de anteactæ vitæ lapsibus pœnas exigeret, ut minime dubium sit eum hanc vitam cum æterna commutasse."

A.D. 1184. Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem visits England. [A.D. 1183.]

Anno Henrici regis XXXI. venit Heraclius,[1] Patriarcha Ierosolimitanus, in Angliam, ad regem Henricum, petendo auxilium contra Saracenos, ex parte omnium procerum Orientalium Christianorum offerens ei claves Urbis Sacræ Dominicique Sepulcri, cum vexillo regio, et cum litteris Lucii Papæ commonitoriis, ac juramenti regii super hoc prius præstiti. Sed rex Henricus responsum usque Londonium protelabat.

Tandem, cum multi, ad sermonem Patriarchæ, ac Baldewynus cruce signarentur, rex respondit, quod terras suas absque tutela deserere, nec Francorum rapacitati exponere posset, sed proficisci volentes abunDanter de sua pecunia respicere vellet. Cui patriarcha:—

He remonstrates with the King, who refuses to join the Crusade.

"Nihil agis, o rex; Principem quærimus, non pecuniam. Quælibet fere pars mundi pecuniam nobis mittit, sed Principem nulla. Virum quidem petimus qui pecunia indiget, non pecuniam quæ viro eget." Recessit ergo Patriarcha, spe frustratus; quem rex usque Dovoriam prosequitur, ut vel consuetis blandimentis offensam mitigaret. Cui Patriarcha:—"Hactenus regnasti gloriose, sed amodo te Ipse deseret Quem deseruisti. Recole quid Dominus tibi contulit, et quæ Ei rependisti; quomodo regi Francorum infidus fuisti; Beatum Thomam occidisti, et nunc protectionem Christianorum abjecisti." Cumque rex ad hæc excandesceret, obtulit ei Patriarcha caput et collum, dicens:—"Fac de me quod de Thoma fecisti: adeo volo a te occidi in Anglia, sicut a paganis in Siria, quia omni Saraceno tu pejor es." Cui rex:—"Si omnes homines mei unum corpus essent, unoque ore loquerentur, non auderent talia mihi dicere." At ille:—"Non est mirum, quia non te, sed tua, diligunt: prædam, non hominem, sequitur turba ista." Tunc rex:—"Recedere non possum, quia filii mei insurgerent in absentem."

---

[1] *Heraclius*] Eraclius. C.C.C.

"Nec mirum," ait ille, "de diabolo venerunt, ad diabolum ibunt." Eodem anno Saraceni ceperunt Ierusalem, Crucem Sanctam asportaverunt, occiso magistro militiæ Templi, et aliis multis. A.D. 1185.

Obiit autem dictus rex Henricus pridie nonas Julii,[1] cum regnasset annis XXXIIII., mensibus VII., diebus V.; et sepultus est in partibus transmarinis, in illo nobili monasterio Monialium Fontis-Ebrardi. Igitur cum decederet, omnes circumastantes ita rapacitati indulserunt, ut corpus ejus diu jaceret nudum, donec puer quidam inferiores corporis partes pallio brevi contegeret. Tunc videbatur cognomen ejus adimpletum, quo ab infantia vocabatur,—"Henricus Curtemanteles," id est, "cum curto mantello;" nam iste primus omnium curta mantella ab Andegavia in Angliam transvexit. A.D. 1189. Henry II. dies and is buried at Font-evrault.

Hujus regis mores et vitia tangit Giraldus Cambrensis[2] in suis distinctionibus, hoc modo :—"Erat rex Henricus[3] vir subrufus,[4] amplo capite et pectore,[5] oculis glaucis,[6] voce quassa,[7] corpore carnoso,[8] cibo tamen[9] et His character from Giraldus Cambrensis.

---

[1] July 6.

[2] *Giraldus Cambrensis.*] Hibernia Expugnata, lib. 1. cap. xlv. See the edition of this work contained in Camden's "Anglica Scripta," page 783, with which the whole of the following passages have been collated.

[3] *Erat rex Henricus.*] In both MSS.—Erat igitur Anglorum rex Henricus. Camd.

[4] *subrufus*] In Camden's edition is here added,—"cæsius."

[5] *pectore.*] This word is omitted by Giraldus Cambrensis, who reads "amplo capite et rotundo."

[6] *glaucis.*] Here are omitted in both MSS. the following words :—"ad iram torvis, et rubore suffusis; facie ignea."

[7] *voce quassa.*] Here are omitted in both MSS. the following words which occur in Camden's edition:—"collo ab humeris aliquantulum demisso, pectore quadrato, brachiis validis."

[8] *corpore carnoso.*] Here the following words, occurring in Camden's edition, are omitted in both MSS. :—"et naturæ magis quam gulæ vitio citra tumorem enormem, et torporem omnem moderata quadam immoderantia; ventre præamplo. Erat enim——"

[9] *tamen.*] This word is found in both MSS., but it is omitted in Camden's edition.

A.D. 1889. potu[1] parcus; et, ut pinguedinem reprimeret,[2] corpus suum vexatione, statione, et deambulatione vexabat. Statura[3] quoque mediocris. Eloquens, et litteratus.[4] In armata militia strenuus, in togata providus,[5] in bellis ambigua facta formidans.[6] Humanior semper[7] extincto militi quam superstiti; plus[8] mortuos lugens quam vivos amans.[9] Urgentibus incommodis nemo benignior;

---

[1] *et potu.*] In both MSS.—potuque modestius ac sobrius, et parsimoniæ, quoad principi licuit, per omnia datus. Camd.

[2] *pinguedinem reprimeret, etc.*] hanc naturæ incuriam industria reprimeret ac mitigaret, carnisque vitium animi virtute levaret, bello plusquam intestino tanquam in se conjurans, immoderata corpus vexatione torquebat. Nam præter bellorum tempora, quæ frequenter imminebant, quibus quod rebus agendis supererat, vix id tantillum quieti dabat. Pacis quoque tempore sibi nec pacem ullam nec requiem indulgebat; venatione namque trans modestiam deditus summo diluculo equo cursore transvectus, nunc saltus lustrans, nunc sylvas penetrans, nunc montium juga transcendens, dies ducebat inquietos: vespere vero domi receptum, vel ante cœnam, vel post, rarissime sedentem conspexeris. Post tantas namque fatigationes, totam statione continua curiam lassare consueverat. Sed quoniam hoc ad vitam in primis utile, ut ne quid nimis, nullumque remedium simpliciter bonum, cum tibiarum pedumque tumore frequenti, recalcitrantium ad hoc jumentorum ictibus aucta læsione, ceteras ad ipsum corporis incommodates accelerabat, et si non aliam matrem incommodorum atque ministram certe vel senectutem. Camd.

[3] *Statura, etc.*] Staturæ vir erat inter mediocres, quod nulli filiorum contingere potuit; primævis ambobus paulo mediocritatem excedentibus, in moribus vero duobus infra subsistentibus. Camd.

[4] *Eloquens, et litteratus.*] Citra animi turbationes et iracundiæ motus, princeps eloquentissimus; et quod iis temporibus conspicuum est, litteris eruditus. Vir affabilis; vir flexibilis et facetus, nulli prorsus hominum, quicquid intus palliaverit, urbanitate secundus. Princeps adeo pietate spectabilis, ut quoties armis vicerat, ipse quoque magis pietate vinceretur.

[5] *providus.*] In both MSS.—improvidus. Camd.

[6] *in bellis . . . . . formidans.*] Semper tamen in rebus Martiis ambigua bellorum fata reformidans, et ex summa prudentia, juxta comicum illud, omnia priusquam arma pertentans. Amissos in acie plus principe plangens, et—Camd.

[7] *semper.*] In both MSS.—om. Camd.

[8] *plus.*] In both MSS.—longeque majori dolore. Camd.

[9] *amans.*] In both MSS.—amore demulcens. Camd.

resumpta securitate, nemo rigidior. Acer in indomitos, clemens interdum[1] in subactos. Durus in domesticis,[2] profusus[3] in extraneis,[4] largus in publico, parcus in privato. Quem semel exosum vel dilectum haberet, vix ad contrarium flecteretur.[5] Verbi spontaneus transgressor: morosus ad cuncta responsor. Quietis amator, sed nobilitatis oppressor.[6] Justitiæ venditor et dilator, fidei transgressor, varius verbo et versutus. Adulter publicus, ecclesiæ malleus, Deo semper ingratus.[7] " A.D. 1189.

Discordias semper inter filios summopere fovebat, solum sibi ex eorum discidio pacem sperans provenire.

Si autem excursuum suorum metæ quærantur, prius deerit orbis, quam aderit finis. Animoso quidem pec- His exploits in war.

---

[1] *interdum.*] In both MSS.—om. Camd.

[2] *domesticis.*] In both MSS.—domesticos. Camd.

[3] *profusus.*] In both MSS.—effusus. Camd.

[4] *extraneis.*] In both MSS.—extraneos. Camd.

[5] *Quem semel, etc.*] In both MSS.—Quem semel exosum habuerat, vix in amorem, quem semel amaverat vix in odium revocabat. Avium quarum victus ex præda, volatu plurimum; canumque feras narium sagacitate persequentium tam voce sonora et consona quam cursu veloci ultra modum delectatus; et utinam tam devotioni deditus quam venationi. Post gravem matris, ut fertur, instinctu filiorum in patrem offensam, publicus legitimi fœderis violator. Naturali quadam inconstantia, verbi plerumque spontaneus transgressor. Nam quoties res in arctum devenerat, de dicto malens quam facto pœnitere, verbumque facilius quam factum irritum habere. Ideo in cunctis agendis prospector providus et moderator, ut ob hoc etiam, medicina ex parte modum excedente, juris et justitiæ dilator extiterit. Et non absque suorum enormi gravamine, morosus ad cuncta responsor. Denique gratis exhibenda quæ Deus et justitia vult; dum pretio provenit impreciabile, et in quæstu prostat omnia præstans, magnos Giezi tam regno quam sacerdotio reliquit heredes.

[6] *Quietis . . . . . oppressor.*] In both MSS.—Author pacis diligentissimus et observator. Incomparabilis, eleemosynarum largitor, et præcipuus terræ Palestinæ sustentator. Humilitatis amator, nobilitatis oppressor, et superbiæ calcator. Esurientes implens bonis, et divites dimittens inanes; exaltans humiles, ponens de sede potentes.

[7] *Justiciæ . . . . . ingratus.*] This sentence is a very loose and far from exact analysis of the remainder of the forty-fifth Chapter of Giraldus Cambrensis.

A.D. 1189. tori cessare poterunt terræ, cessare nesciunt[1] victoriæ, nec deerunt triumphi, sed modi triumphandi.[2] In utraque militia, Martis et Minervæ, singulariter effulsit. Terras quoque hereditarias potenter pacificavit; Hiberniam potenti classe subjugavit; Scotiæ regnum, capto rege Willielmo, præter solitum adjiciens,[3] ab Australi Oceano usque ad Boreales Orcadum insulas, quasi sub una monarchia terras concludens, imperium egregie dilatavit; quod quidem post Julii Cæsaris tempora nemini legitur contigisse. In transmarinis quoque partibus, præter Normanniam, Aquitaniam, Andegaviam, Cenomanniam, quæ ei patrimoniali jure contigerant, Pictaviam quoque et Vasconiam usque ad Pireneos Hispaniæ montes, quæ ei matrimonialiter advenerant, Alverniam cum quibusdam terris aliis suo dominatui subjecit. Solebat etiam dicere inter confabulantes, totum mundum viro potenti et viro sapienti satis parum esse.

Ireland and Scotland subdued.

His foreign possessions.

Reges aliquando Hispaniæ ad sedandum discordias inter eos, in hunc regem compromiserunt.

Et quamvis in nonnullis successibus ejus cuncta quietis obstacula, felicis hominis auspicio, quasi exquisito fortunæ favore, ad vota fuerant subvincta, nonnulla tamen quasi fato infausto sibi contigerunt, ad ejus siquidem humiliationem, si autem pœnitens fieret, sin autem obstinatus carne propria carnifex cruciaretur. Imprimis nempe Helianoram, reginam Francorum, Lodewyco domino suo indebite subtraxit, sibique de facto, cum de jure non posset, copulavit; de qua pater suus Galfridus Andegavensis ne eam tangeret omnino prohibuit, pro eo dum senescallus regis Franciæ fuerat, eam cognoverat.

---

[1] *nesciunt.*] C.C.C. — Written "nessiunt" in MS. Cotton.

[2] *Si autem . . . . triumphandi.*] See Giraldus Cambrensis Topogr. Hib., lib. iii. cap. 45.—Camden, page 750.

[3] *adjiciens.*] C.C.C. adiciens. MS. Cotton.

Ex ea tamen Henricus iste quatuor filios, Henricum, Galfridum, Ricardum, et Johannem, et sex inclitas filias suscitavit, quarum primam, Matildem, duci Saxoniæ; secundam, Helianoram, regi Hispaniæ; tertiam, Johannam, regi Siciliæ, copulavit. Et hæc quidem de hoc rege dicta sufficiant, nam reliquas filias non legimus maritatas. A.D. 1189. His children.

De Henrico Rege Angliæ Tertio.

Capitulum Tertium.

A.D. 1216. Accession of Henry III.

Henricus igitur Tertius, rex Angliæ, filius Johannis regis, juvenis quidem regni coronam sumpsit; sed nec in debito loco, propter Lodewicum filium regis Franciæ, qui tunc Londoniam et adjacentes tenuit provincias.

The crown claimed by Louis of France.

Quo autem titulo, quibusve succursibus, Lodewicus iste regnum hoc decorum sibi intitulaverat, ex multis opinionibus unam cumulantes, veritatem succincto sermone transcurrimus. Mortuo enim Henrico, primogenito Henrici Secundi, ante Patrem, denique et patre mortuo, regnavit Ricardus, rex victoriosissimus. Qui, cum decederet, Arthurum designavit heredem, filium fratris sui Galfridi, dicti Plauntegeneth junioris, et comitis Andegaviæ. Sed Johannes, ultimo natus, regnum cepit, Arthurum vinculavit et occidit; cujus sororem Lodewicus iste duxerat. Proceres ergo hujus almi regni, tyrannidem Johannis non sufferentes, regnum dicto Lodewico obtulerunt, Henrico isto Tertio juvene existente.

Anno igitur Domini M.CCVIII., natus est iste Henricus, Johannis vero decimo. Et Interdictum septem annis duraturum tunc incepit.

Henry is crowned at Gloucester.

Et anno Domini M.CCXVI., defuncto Johanne, rege Angliæ, convenerunt apud Gloverniam legatus Gualo, et multi magnatum Angliæ. Et quoniam Westmonasterium,

ubi locus est ex consuetudine regiæ coronationi, destitutus nunc[1] inimicis suis, præsidente dicto Lodewico, obsessum est; idcirco, necessitate cogente, apud Gloverniam, in ecclesia conventuali, ante majus altare, dictus Henricus, primogenitus regis Johannis, in regem unctus est, et solemniter coronatus. Proceres enim Aquilonares et Marchienses, cum ceteris regni fidelibus, partem Lodewyci detestantibus, pacemque regni et tranquillitatem affectantibus, Henricum, filium Johannis, heredem legitimum assumentes, Gloucestriam adduxerunt. Ibique barones supradicti, non expectata præsentia Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, sertum ei quoddam, loco diadematis, imponentes, præsentibus et coöperantibus Dubilinensi archiepiscopo, et Guallone, legato Sedis Apostolicæ, nec tamen manum apponentibus, ne forte fieret in præjudicium Sedis Cantuariensis, solemnitate qua poterant, sublimarunt in regem, et edicto publico rex proclamari fecit per totam Angliam, quod nullus laïcus, nec masculus, nec femina, domum suam per mensem egrederetur, nisi sertulum portaret in capite, ut sic innotesceret toti regno coronatio novi regis. Facta est autem hæc coronatio, quinto kalendas Novembris,[2] a quo die, quamdiu vixit, descripta est data in Brevibus regis Henrici. A.D. 1216.

Et exinde multi nobiles terræ Lodewycum deseruerunt, et Henrico se tradiderunt; et hoc per legem terræ Anglicanæ, scilicet,—"Quando pater alicujus moritur feofatus, de jure filius portabit hereditatem." Et alia causa, quia Lodewicus, mortuo Johanne, se jam exosum et superbum exhibuerat, et munitiones eorum et terras, spretis Anglis et fœdere quod cum eis firmaverat, contrivit. Et ideo juveni Henrico, qui nihil culpæ versus eos meruerat, nobiles terræ fideliter adhæserunt. Louis becomes unpopular.

---

[1] *nunc*] tunc. C.C.C. | [2] October 28.

A.D. 1217. He refuses to acknowledge the young King, and marches against Lincoln.

Anno ergo Domini M.CCXVIII., Henrici primo,[1] Lodewicus coronationem novi[2] regis, propter ætatis teneritudinem, habens contemptui, æstimansque ipsum, propter impubertatem suam, conatibus suis non posse resistere, aliquod arduum attemptare præsumpsit, et confidens de numerositate complicium, relicta civitate Londoniarum, procedens versus Aquilonem, irruit improvise super illam nobilissimam[3] civitatem Lincolniæ, ut et ipsam, sicut Londonias, suo subjugaret dominio. Verum in contrarium res lapsa est. Veniente siquidem Lodewico, cum innumerabili bellatorum comitiva, ut expugnaret civitatem ex parte meridionali, per quam ascenditur, occurrerunt ei ex parte aquilonari proceres Angliæ, novi regis fautores, viribus et numero non impares, statimque adversus Gallos prœlium construentes, omnes fere aut ceperunt aut peremerunt. Captus est ibi nobilis vir comes de Perce, de cujus probitate Galli potissime confidebant.

He is repulsed with great loss.

He sues for peace.

Quod ut vidit Lodewicus, rogavit ea quæ pacis sunt. Convenientibus ergo in unum Guallone legato, cum episcopis et clero, Willielmo Marescallo, regis rectore et regni, de pace tractatus habebatur. Et in quadam silva juxta Kyngeston formatur pax inter regem et dictum Lodewycum, in vigilia Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis,[4] ipso Lodewyco prius a sententia qua tenebatur absoluto, sub hac forma,—"Quod Lodewycus et sui complices, tactis sacrosanctis, starent judicio ecclesiæ, et ipse recederet cum suis omnibus de regno Angliæ, non rediturus, vel aliquam calumniam contra barones An-

---

[1] *primo.*] This is an unacccountable mistake for "tertio," in consequence of which the years of this King's reign, with the exception of the years 1227, 1257, are wrongly calculated throughout.

[2] *novi.*] Both MSS. have "nove."

[3] *nobilissimam*] C.C.C. Written "nobissimam" in the MS. Cotton.

[4] September 13.

gliæ, quos fallacia mendacii deceperat, impositurus. Induceretque patrem suum, quantum posset sine simultate, ut regi Henrico sua omnia restitueret; et si quando ad regnum Franciæ proveniret,[1] ipse eadem sine aliqua difficultate resignaret." Juravitque postea rex Henricus, cum legato, et Marescallo, et magnatibus, ibidem congregatis, quod redderet baronibus Angliæ, et omnibus aliis de regno Angliæ, jura et hereditates suas, cum omnibus libertatibus ante petitis, pro quibus mota fuit guerra. A.D. 1217.

Anno Domini M.CCXX., Henrici vero quarto,[2] incepit idem Henricus novum opus monasterii ad honorem Dei, et Sancti Petri, et Sancti Edwardi, apud Westmonasterium. Et idem rex primum lapidem posuit, in vigilia octavarum Sancti Martini.[3] Henry founds the Monastery at Westminster.

Anno autem regni sui XII., venit in Angliam archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, ad dominum regem missus a magnatibus Vasconiæ, Aquitanniæ, et Pictaviæ: venerunt etiam ad eum solemnes nuncii de Normannia; quorum omnium communis erat suggestio, ut rex ad partes transmarinas securus veniret, et eorum magnates immutabiliter starent ad jura sua, et ad omnia amissa recuperanda. Quod cum audisset Hubertus de Burgo, distulit negotium in futurum, donec tempus clementius arrideret. Nuncii vero aliud non habentes in responsis, ad propria remeabant. Iste Hubertus comes Cantiæ erat, et Justiciarius. A.D. 1227. He is urged to visit his foreign possessions, but is prevented by Hubert de Burgh.

Anno Domini M.CCXXXV., Henrici XVIII.,[4] misit idem rex nuncios suos in Provinciam, ut Helianoram, filiam comitis Provinciæ, sibi sumeret in uxorem. Et factæ sunt nuptiæ in festo Sanctorum Fabiani et Sebastiani,[5] cum solemnitate inaudita, apud Westmonasterium. A.D. 1235. The King's marriage. [A.D. 1236.]

---

[1] *proveniret*] perveniret. C.C.C.
[2] *quarto.*] A mistake for "quinto."
[3] July 10.
[4] *XVIII.*] A mistake for XX.
[5] January 20.

A.D. 1236. His sister espouses the Emperor Frederic.

Ipso quoque anno Fredericus Imperator desponsavit Isabellam, sororem Henrici, regis Angliæ, in die Pentecostes.[1]

A.D. 1239. Birth of Edward I.

Et anno regni ejus XXII.,[2] natus est Edwardus, primogenitus regis Henrici, apud Westmonasterium, XV. kalendas Julii, in festo Sancti Botulphi,[3] ex Helianora,

His baptism and confirmation.

filia comitis Provinciæ. Hunc Edwardum baptizavit Otto legatus, et confirmavit Sanctus Edmundus archiepiscopus.

A.D. 1242. The King proceeds to France.

Anno Henrici XXV.,[4] idem rex cum regina, comitante fratre suo Ricardo, cum septem comitibus et militibus multis, circiter trecentæ[5] naves, ascendit

He is unsuccessfully opposed by the French King, who obtains a five years' truce.

versus Burdegalam, ubi habuit conflictum cum rege Franciæ, sed coactus est rex Franciæ per quinquennium[6] a rege Angliæ treugas postulare, et obtinuit. Petiit tunc rex Henricus a rege Franciæ, ut restitueret sibi Pictaviam, Andegaviam, et alias terras suas ultramarinas, sibi jure hereditario competentes, quas injuste detinuit; sed nihil profecit. Sed neque ducatum Normanniæ, in quo jus sibi maturius competebat, reddere dignabatur. Processit ergo rex in Vasconiam, non modica stipatus comitiva, ubi regina

Birth of a Princess in Gascony.

peperit ei filiam, quam vocavit Margaretam. Dicunt tamen aliqui quod vocata est Beatrix, comitissa Provinciæ, quæ sic vocabatur, procurante.

A.D. 1254. Marriage of Edward I.

Anno regni ejus XXXVII.,[7] Edwardus, primogenitus Henrici, missus est, cum maximo apparatu, ad regem Hispaniæ, Amphulsum, ut Helianoram ejus sororem apud Burges desponsaret; qui et votum obtinuit, et ab eodem rege Hispaniæ cingulo decoratus est militari.

---

[1] Whitsunday fell on May 27 in the year 1235. The marriage took place on July 20.

[2] *XXII.*] A mistake for XXIV.

[3] June 17.

[4] *XXV.*] A mistake for XXVII.

[5] *trecentæ.*] C.C.C.—trescentæ. MS.

[6] *quinquennium.*] quinquiennium. MSS.

[7] *XXXVII.*] A mistake for XXXIX.

Veniens autem Edwardus, cum uxore sua, ad patrem, detulit secum cartam domini regis Hispaniæ, quod quietam clamavit totam Vasconiam pro se et heredibus, auro bullatam. Contulit ei etiam dominus rex Angliæ, pater suus, et uxori suæ, Vasconiam, Hiberniam, Walliam, Bristolliam, Staunfordiam, et Grantam. A.D. 1254.

Circa hæc tempora moneta nova de auro, jubente rege, fabricata est, et acclamatur per civitates Angliæ, ne aliquis aureum denarium pro XX. denariis refutare sit ausus. Introduction of a new coin.

Hoc etiam tempore pax reformata est, per Ottobonem legatum, inter Henricum, regem Angliæ, et Leulinum, Principem Walliæ, apud Montem-Gomeri, sub hac forma:—"Quod Leulinus deinceps, et sui successores vocarentur Principes; et quod homines terræ illius facerent illi homagia." Rex autem recepit ab eo triginta millia marcarum, et super hoc rex fecit cartam suam, sigillo legati corroboratam, auctoritateque domini Papæ confirmatam. Peace is made between the King and Llewellyn of Wales. [A.D. 1257.]

Anno Domini M.CCLVII., Henrici XLII., electus est in regem Alemaniæ frater dicti regis Henrici, nomine Ricardus, comes Cornubiæ. Magnates vero Angliæ, prospicientes hunc Ricardum ab Anglia recessisse, qui dum esset in Anglia, regem et regni moderamina gubernabat, credentes eum in Angliam non reversurum, regemque Angliæ in regni sui negotiis inutilem et insufficientem discernentes, circa festum Beati Barnabæ,[1] Oxoniæ congregati sunt in unum adversus dominum regem. Initoque concilio, in primis potestatem regiminis sibi penitus adimebant, statuentes ut, de cetero, de majoribus regni eligerentur viginti quatuor, qui regem et regnum solito commodius gubernarent; sicque mutaretur perperam ordo juris naturalis, ut rex, qui subditos regere tenebatur, a suis subditis regeretur. In isto siquidem concilio regem ad A.D. 1257. Richard Earl of Cornwall, leaves England. A.D. 1258. The nobles conspire against the King.

[1] June 11.

A.D. 1258. certos articulos jurare compulerunt; et fratres regis ex parte matris, tanquam alienigenas, a regno exulabant.

A.D. 1259. Return of Richard, King of the Romans.

Cumque rex Romanus redisset ad Angliam, antequam pranderet, Cantuariæ, coram rege et regni magnatibus, qui sibi omnes fere occurrerant, sacramentum illud publice et solemniter adimplevit. Hoc fecerant sibi barones, quia formidabant tam celerrimum ejus adventum; intelligentes eum velle vindictam sumere propter exilium fratrum regis ex parte matris uterinorum, et repagula Provisionibus poneret contraria. Nam et in prædicto Parliamento ordinaverunt barones Angliæ, quod prædicti fratres regis, sicut et omnes alienigenæ, terram Angliæ evacuarent.

The King visits France.

He makes an agreement with the French King to give up certain territorial rights in exchange for an annual tribute.

Eodem anno rex et regina transfretarunt in Franciam, et dominus Ricardus de Graveshende, episcopus Lincolniæ, ad tractandum de pace inter regem Angliæ et Franciæ, de terris Normanniæ, Pictaviæ, Andegaviæ, quas ipse et prædecessores sui injuste occupaverunt et detinuerunt, in præjudicium regis[5] Anglorum. Deinde conventum est, quod rex Franciæ daret regi Angliæ viginti quinque millia libras Parisienses, per annum; dum tamen rex Angliæ conficeret sibi cartam suam de quieta clamatione terrarum omnium quas vendicaverat, et etiam exhiberet ei cartas domini Edwardi filii sui, domini Ricardi, regis Romanorum, Symonis de Monte-forti, et heredum suorum. Rex ergo Henricus, ex consensu regis Alemaniæ sive Romanorum, fratris sui, et ex consensu prælatorum et procerum regni Angliæ, quietum clamavit in perpetuum regi Francorum quicquid juris requirebat in ducatu Normanniæ et comitatibus Andegaviæ, Cenomanniæ, Turoniæ, et Pictaviæ, et eorum feodis, recipiendo ab eodem, ut prædicitur, annis singulis viginti quinque millia librarum Parisiensium. Rex etiam Franciæ quietum clamavit ei quicquid habuit juris

---

[1] *regis*] regi. MSS.

in Burdegalia, Baiona, et Ageneis, in Vasconia, et ceterarum terrarum, quæ de Lemocenensi, Petragorisensi, Catursensi, Xanconensi, id est, Gasconiæ, episcopatibus adjacet; et, ut Francorum[1] parem et Aquitaniæ ducem eum recepit, homagio pro ducatu Aquitaniæ prius præstito. Et exinde rex Angliæ litterarum suarum abbreviavit titulum, ut neque ducem Normanniæ, neque comitem Andegaviæ deinceps se vocaret. Et ex ipso tempore cœpit regis redditus maturare. Compertumque est, certis rationibus, regem Angliæ per ipsam Vasconiam consumpsisse vicesies septies centum millia libras, exceptis terris et redditibus quos contulit alienis. A.D. 1259.

Anno Domini M.CCLXI., idem rex Henricus, anno regni sui quadragesimo quinto,[2] cum suis consuluit, qualiter Provisiones baronum, Oxoniæ editorum, posset enervare. Majoribus vero terræ hæc verba dixit:— "Provisum inter vos universaliter decrevistis, et me ad hoc sacramento alligastis, quo statuto percipio me et regiam potestatem meam subdi et minui; vos autem, propriis adhærentes emolumentis, me quasi ministrum vestris subjugastis mandatis. Unde libertas et potestas regis fere prostratæ succumbunt; quare non miremini si non amplius vestris consentio frivolis Provisionibus, quia super his de cetero remedium requiram." Tunc misit rex Romam pro absolutione, et scripsit specialiter regi Franciæ, pro subministrando subsidio. Cui rex Franciæ quasi infinitos promisit milites per septem annos, si opus fuerit, propriis sumptibus sustinendos. Rex interim in Turrim Londoniæ se intrusit, thesaurum suum ibi deposuit, omnesque cives fidelitatem sibi fecit jurare. Tunc circuivit omnia castella sua, volens eorum et totius regni plenum possidere dominium, animatus ex hoc, quod rex Fran-

A.D. 1261. The King resolves to resist the Provisions of Oxford.

He is promised assistance by the King of France.

---

[1] *Francorum.*] C.C.C.—Francorem. MS.

[2] *quinto.*] A mistake for "sexto."

A.D. 1261. corum nuper sibi promiserat succursum. Vocatis ergo Cancellario et Justiciariis[1] nuper institutis, a baronagio sigillum suum sibi reddi, et rotulos sibi mandavit restitui. Qui responderunt, se nullatenus hoc facere posse, sine baronum consensu. Hoc responso commotus rex, baronagio inconsulto, Cancellarium Walterum de Merton, et Justiciarium Willielmum Basset constituit. Eodem anno dominus Papa absolvit regem a juramento, tanquam ab illicito, ut puta quod sine consensu et voluntate domini Papæ et cardinalium ecclesiæ Romanæ, cujus vassallus rex est, factum fuerat.

He makes Walter de Merton his Chancellor.

A.D. 1263. The King meets the barons in London.

Et anno sequente, in quindena Paschæ,[2] convenerunt barones apud Londoniam, tractaturi cum rege. Et post multos tractatus concesserunt quod a pluribus articulis in Provisionibus Oxoniæ contentis resilirent, si quosdam eorum eis confirmaret. Ibique provisum fuit, quod de quolibet comitatu eligerentur ab universitate comitatus quatuor milites, qui scirent ea quæ ad officium pertinent vice-comitis, et mitterentur ad regem Alemanniæ fratrem regis, et ipse quem de eis vellet facere, faceret vice-comitem usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis,[3] et quod exinde rex faceret vice-comitem quem vellet. Habitis igitur frequenter tractatibus inter partes, rex et universi complices sui, comes Leicestriæ cum omnibus sibi adhærentibus, Ricardus rex Alemanniæ, dominus Edwardus, comites, barones, milites, archiepiscopi, episcopi, universi ecclesiarum prælati, immo generaliter clerus et populus unanimi assensu compromittebant in regem Franciæ, super omnibus[4] ortis inter regem et barones Angliæ, occasione Provisionum Oxoniæ, et quicquid super dictis Provisionibus et Statutis, seu contentionibus ordinaret et statueret de alto et de basso,

The matter is referred to the King of France.

---

[1] *Cancellario et Justiciariis*] Justiciariis et Cancellario. C.C.C.

[2] *quindena Paschæ.*] The Quinzaine of Easter; *i.e.* the eight days before, and the eight days after Easter Day. Easter Day fell upon April 1 in the year 1263.

[3] September 29.

[4] *omnibus*] omnibus compactionibus. C.C.C.

nulla prorsus exceptione facta, utraque pars inviolabiliter observaret. Et ut nullus esset liber a crimine perjurii, vel prævaricatione præmissorum, omnes et singuli compromissum supradictum sigillis suis roborarunt, necnon et, tactis Sacrosanctis, personaliter juraverunt, quod ab ordinatione vel arbitrio prætaxato nullatenus resilirent, dum tamen rex Franciæ citra Pascha[1] super hoc[2] sententiam promulgaret. A.D. 1263.

Rex autem Angliæ, tertio die Nativitatis Dominicæ,[3] se transtulit versus Franciam, ut arbitrio supradicto interesset. Barones vero dominum Adam de Novo-Mercato, dominum Willielmum de Blundis, et paucos alios, loco omnium pro eodem negotio in Gallias transmittebant. The King proceeds to France.

Igitur in crastino Sancti Vincentii Martyris,[4] congregato apud Amias populo, rex Francorum Lodewycus protulit dictum suum solemniter pro rege Angliæ, contra barones, et arbitrium suum auctoritate apostolica roboravit, regemque Angliæ pristinæ potestati restituens, Provisiones Oxoniæ seu Statuta abrogavit penitus et cassavit, discernens quod rex Justiciarium, Cancellarium, Thesaurarium, Vice-comites, Balivos, Conciliarios, et Ministros, eligeret, quoscumque vellet. Rex quoque reversus ad propria, quanto ex hoc fuerat lætitia circumfusus, tanto barones mæstiores reddidit et confusos. A.D. 1264. Louis decides in the King's favour, and abrogates the Provisions of Oxford.

Iste rex Henricus multis et diversis temporibus civitatem Oxoniarum audacter intravit, spreta illa veteri superstitione, qua vulgariter dicebatur, quod beata virgo Fredeswida suis precibus obtinuerat a Deo, quod nullus umquam rex oppidum supradictum sine discrimine corporis possit intrare.

---

[1] April 1.

[2] *super hoc*] C.C.C.—The second word is not legible in the MS. Cotton. It is not "hoc," however, but may possibly be a contraction for "hac re."

[3] December 28.

[4] January 23.

A.D. 1264. The barrons hold Northampton, but are soon dispossessed.

Rex autem, audito quod maxima pars baronum oppidum Norhamptone, cum castro adjacente, violentibus ausibus occupassent, domini Edwardi, filii sui, strenua fretus audacia, irruit supra oppidum prædictum exercitu[1] non modico, et eam quinto die Aprilis sibi subjugavit. Captique sunt ibi multi de baronibus, videlicet dominus Symon de Monte-forti, junior, filius comitis Leicestriæ; Baldewynus Wake; Radulphus Basset; Petrus de Monte-forti; et alii nobiles vexilliferi. Captique sunt ibi circa centum milites.

The earl of Leicester attacks Rochester;

Quod audiens, comes de Leicestria et Gilbertus de Clara, et alii nobiles multi, cum multis Londoniensibus, in vigilia Beati Alphegi,[2] civitatem Roffensem ingressi sunt; et, multis ibi interfectis, per VII. dies in obsidione castri laborabant. Cujus tamen captio dilationem accepit, eo quod, cum hoc ad regis aures advenisset, cum celeri festinatione versus Londoniam duxit exercitum. Nunciatumque fuit domino Edwardo, quod civitas Londoniarum consilio et auxilio penitus extitit destituta, et quod secure eam veniret accepturus.

but on the approach of the King's army, advances on London.

Major vero civitatis, fraudem et traditionem quorundam timens, adventum domini regis comiti Leicestriæ intimavit, et sic, obsidione Roffensi relicta, comes idem versus Londoniam properavit. Taceo hic de multis infestationibus baronum erga dictum regem, et specialiter de bello habito apud Lewes, quia opus hoc brevitate quadam in commendatiunculis horum virorum congaudet.

A.D. 1272. Death of Henry III.

Post innumerabiles igitur molestias baronum et militum, tandem victor effectus, ætatis suæ anno sexagesimo quinto, in die Sancti Edmundi regis,[3] obdormivit in Domino, anno regni sui quinquagesimo quinto.

---

[1] *exercitu*] cum exercitu. C.C.C.

[2] April 18.

[3] November 20.

Dicunt autem alii[1] quod obiit in die Mercurii, in festo Sancti Edmundi episcopi,[2] et Dominica proxima sequente, videlicet in festo Sancti Edmundi regis, in Basilica Westmonasterii, quam opere sumptuoso a fundamentis extruxerat, regni magnatibus exequias debitas impendentibus, cum ea qua decuit honorificentia, tumulatus est. Sane corpus ipsius pretiosissimis indumentis et diademate regio ornatum, omnium assistentium judicio, cum a nobilioribus regni in locello portabili deferretur[3] ad tumulum, ampliore splendore decoris effulgebat mortuum, quam prius, dum vixerat, appareret. A.D. 1272.

[1] *Dicunt . . . . alii.*] See Higden. MS. Bodl. Laud. 619., fol. 150, b. —Lib. vii., cap. 37.—"Hoc anno obiit Henricus, rex Angliæ, die Sancti Edmundi Pontiniaci."

[2] Wednesday, November 16.

[3] *deferretur.*] C.C.C.—deferreretur. MS.

De Henrico Quarto, Rege Angliæ.

Capitulum Quartum.

A.D. 1366. Henry IV. born.

Henricus Quartus, qui Henricus de Bolyngbroke dictus est, eo quod ibi natus, regnavit post Ricardum Secundum, non tam titulo sanguinis, quam electione populi. Hunc enim, quam magnificus seculo, et providus ecclesiæ fuerat ante assumptum regnum, manifestant gesta ejus a nonnullis sparsim conscripta. Fuit enim filius prudentissimi viri et nobilissimi domini, ducis Lancastriæ, Johannis; qui et tertius filius regis Edwardi ultimi erat. Sororem autem ejus desponsavit rex Portugaliæ, nobilis et strenuus adjutor ejusdem ducis in bellis suis pro jure suo vendicando in regno Hispaniæ. Siquidem et domina Blanca, mater hujus regis Henrici, filia regis Castellæ erat. Aliam autem sororem hujus viri, etiam ex domina Blanca, duxit prius comes de Penbrok; deinde viduatam accepit Johannes de Hollond, frater regis Ricardi Secundi.

A.D. 1388. Disputes between Ric. II. and his lords. Bolingbroke visits the Holy Land.

Orta autem seditione inter Ricardum regem et quinque dominos, qui vulgariter dicti sunt domini de Campo, hic vir magnificus, post multas molestias sibi intentatas, mare transiit, Loca Sancta devoto affectu visitans.

An account of the disputes.

Causa autem hujus tempestatis erat, quia idem rex Ricardus indignos et malitiosos promovebat, et nec regni commodum, nec dominorum consultum admittens, solum iis qui adulationis stibio superficiem colorabant, assensum præbuit. Quod indigne ferentes multi in faciem sibi resistebant. Sed principaliores erant

isti :—Dominus Thomas Wodstok, dux Gloverniæ ; dominus Henricus, Lancastriæ ; comes Derbyæ ; dominus Ricardus, comes Arundeliæ ; dominus Thomas de Bellocampo, comes Warwici ; dominus Thomas Mounbray, comes de Nothingham. Videns igitur dictus Henricus sibi periculum imminere, litem temporalem in peregrinationem sanctam vertit. A.D. 1388.

Unde et anno Domini M.CCC. nonagesimo, in Septembri, idem Henricus de Lancastria cum nobili comitiva militari, mare transiit in Prusiam, ubi, infra breve tempus post adventum suum, conflictus immi- nebat inter Christianos et Saracenos. In quo conflictu egregius adolescens Henricus cum inimicis Crucis Christi confligebat, ut amodo nihil majus sibi in animo firmaret, quam opprobrium vendicare Crucifixi: pro qua re hoc sibi contigit, ut, magna victoria potitus, magna in omnium ore laude divulgaretur. Certis autem ex causis iterum ad Angliam rediit circa festum Sancti Marci Evangelistæ.[1] A.D. 1390. Henry gains a victory over the infidels. He returns to England.

Iterum autem, anno Domini M.CCC. nonagesimo secundo, idem venerabilis dominus, adhuc vivente patre, mare transiit versus Prusiam, concomitantibus sibi, ut dicitur, ferme trecentis viris. Et in festo Beati Jacobi Apostoli,[2] navem apud Hetham, prope Lennam, ascendit ; et felici navigio terram desideratam intravit. Ubi cum favorem dominorum provinciæ suo desiderio non sensisset amicabilem, relictis illis, Venetias applicuit, et deinde Ierosolimam. Ibi quoque Loca Sancta cum magna devotione veneratus est ; pauperes Christi magna clementia recreabat, et quosdam captivos, multo dato pretio, ad terras fidelium secum reduxit. A.D. 1392. He visits Jerusalem.

Dignum autem duxi hic enucleare, per quas terras et per quos principes, ad optata littora pervenit. Totum enim hunc annum solemni peregrinatione expendebat: in quo quidem labore ita provide se suos- Detailed account of his journey:

[1] April 25.

[2] July 25.

A.D. 1392. que gubernabat, ut placabilis Deo, honorabilis regno, amicabilis quoque iis in[1] quibus conversabatur, prædicaretur.

Prussia. Poland. Hungary. Austria. Venice. Candia. Rhodes. Jerusalem. Cyprus. Pavia.

Nam de Prusia versus Hungariam, per Poloniam, aliasque provincias diversas, pertransivit, ubi, a rege Hungarorum honorabiliter receptus, magnis muneribus decoratus est. Deinde dux Austri benigne sibi occurrit, viam simul et victualia condigno favore ministrans; et hoc per omnes magnates in dicta peregrinatione fiebat. Nam et dux Venetiarum cum galeis sibi per aquam occurrens, eum in proprium palatium suscepit, in Candiam, et in Rodis, ac in Jerusalem conducens, totiusque peregrinationis suæ comes individuus extitit. Visitatis quoque Sepulchro Sancto et aliis locis sacrosanctis, ad Ciprum reversus est, honorifice ibidem a rege illius insulæ receptus et deductus. Apud Papiam quoque et Mediolanum cum duce hospitabatur, peregrinationem suam dulcissimo contubernio confortans. Comes enim Urtutum,[2] (nam et tali titulo tunc gloriabatur,) ipsum ad castrum ubi corpus Beatissimi Patris Augustini quiescit, introduxit; quod, non sine magna contemplatione, dux noster amplexatus est. Ibi et corpus summi philosophi, necnon et theologi, Boëtii conspexit: ibi et corpus Leonelli, quondam ducis Clarenciæ, et avunculi sui, vidit tumulatum. Nam et sic moriens dictus Leonellus servis suis mandaverat, ut cor suum et ossa ad Conventum Clarensem, Ordinis Fratrum Heremitarum Sancti Augustini, in Anglia, transferrentur,[3] carnibus suis cum visceribus coram sepulchro Doctoris eximii devote relictis. Et quoniam dominus Virtutum, dux scilicet Mediolanensis, offensus erat Fratribus, propter quasdam Canonicorum et Abbatis querelas, ita ut ad mille marcas multare eos medi-

He visits the graves of St. Augustin, Boëthius, and the Duke of Clarence.

---

[1] *in*] cum. C.C.C.

[2] *Urtutum*] Virtutem. C.C.C.

[3] *transferrentur*] transferrerentur. MSS.

taretur idem dux, aut, occasione accepta, a loco illo ejicere, pius et venerabilis dominus iste Henricus pacis vias invenit, offensam pacavit, indignationem removit, et, dato Fratribus suæ munificentiæ donario satis gratifico, ab eis recessit. Transactisque Transalpinis partibus, per regem Boëmiæ et duces Almaniæ, in Franciam devectus est; ubi non diu tardans, tandem ad terram suam nativam devenit. A.D. 1392. Bohemia. Germany. France.

Eo autem tempore, quo dux ipse, defuncto jam patre, littora nostra applicuit, rex Ricardus in Hibernia, certis de causis tunc orbi notis, moram faciebat. Applicanti quoque duci occurrerunt non pauci magnates, sed et populus innumerus, plangentes vitam regis, et familiæ mores exponentes; quantis miseriis, quantis quoque molestiis, populum vexabant. Ipse quoque dux, hujusmodi miseriarum et molestiarum satis expertus, quippe qui traditor regis et regni per omnes civitates pronunciatus est, causam populi et suam Deo committens, per consultum dominorum, et juxta votum populi, se quasi tutorem regni et justitiæ fautorem periculo supposuit. Habebat autem secum in contubernio venerabilem virum, dominum Thomam Arundel, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, cujus consilio et prudentia res gerebatur. Hi enim, sicut et alii, exules a regno ad tempus permanserunt. A.D. 1399. He lands in England while K. Ric. II. is in Ireland. Is accepted as guardian of the Realm.

Nam dictus rex Ricardus, consilio malo deceptus, anno regni sui XXI., in Parliamento apud Westmonasterium, exulavit[1] dictum Thomam Archiepiscopum, et Henricum, comitem de Derby; et Ricardum, comitem Arundelliæ, fratrem dicti Archiepiscopi, decapitavit; comitem[2] Gloverniæ, avunculum suum, suffocari fecit apud Caleys; comitem Warenniæ et dominum Cobham[3] perpetuis carceribus mancipavit. The cruelties of Richard.

---

[1] *exulavit*] exiliavit. MSS.

[2] *comitem*] comitem autem. C.C.C.

[3] *dominum Cobham*] dominum de Cobham. C.C.C.

A.D. 1399. Hæc enim facta et alia dicti regis sibi ceciderunt in laqueum, juxta illud tritum proverbium apud Psalmistam:—"Fodit foveam, et incidit in eam."[1] Nam, permittente[2] Deo, ii quos injuste punierat, ipso de medio sublato, sublimati sunt.

The Historian vindicates his accuracy, and proceeds to relate the deposition of Richard II.

Sed quoniam de depositione regis Ricardi, et sublimatione regis Henrici, diversi diversa scripserunt,—nec mirum, cum in tanto schismate alius sic, alius autem sic ibat,—ego, qui medius inter utrosque existo, credo me meliorem viam et securiorem tenere, quoniam, utrisque partibus discussis, ad solam veritatem elucidandam sedulus existo, nulli post me scripturo præjudicans, si ipse aut verius aut planius materiam hanc discutiendam susceperit.

Henry proceeds to Bridlington, and thence to Bristol.

Anno igitur regni regis Ricardi XXIII., dicto rege in Hibernia constituto, applicuerunt dicti venerabiles viri, Thomas Archiepiscopus et dux Henricus, prope Bridlyngton, in festo Sancti Swithini.[3] Qui, magno exercitu mox congregato, versus Bristolliam tenderunt, ubi decapitati sunt perturbatores pacis, ut dicebatur, et mali conciliarii regis, Willielmus de la Scroop, comes de Wiltschere; Johannes Buschi, et Henricus Grene, milites. Et in castro de Flynt ceperunt ipsum dominum regem, satis honorifice ducentes eum, per certas custodias et dominationes, usque ad Turrim Londoniarum, sicut testantur ii qui tunc interfuerunt, et adhuc superstites sunt. Ubi rege constituto, proposita sunt contra eum multa infamia, videlicet de destructione regni, et morte dominorum.

Richard is secured in the Tower of London.

The charge brought against the King.

Ex multis autem articulis tunc contra regem promulgatis, hæc pauca hic excerpta sunt;—in aula Westmonasterii, sede vacante, archiepiscopo, duce, et ceteris dominis, ac populo infinito, præsentibus:—

---

[1] Psalm vii. 15.

[2] *permittente.*] C.C.C.—The MS. Cotton has only "permitte."

[3] July 15.

Primo, quod bona et possessiones ad coronam spectantia donaverat indignis. A.D. 1399.

Secundo, quod fecerat judices in camera sua jurare ea quæ illicita erant et contra leges, ad destructionem avunculi sui et aliorum dominorum.

Tertio, quod exulari[1] fecerat injuriose dominum Thomam Archiepiscopum, et dominum Henricum, Lancastriæ ducem; et decapitari jusserat Ricardum Arundelliæ, perpetuisque carceribus mancipari fecerat comitem Warenniæ, et dominum de Cobham; et, quod iis molestius erat, suffocari fecerat avunculum suum, ducem Gloverniæ.

Quarto, quod attraxit sibi, in maximam et secretissimam familiaritatem, malefactores quosdam, qui populum regni spoliaverunt; uxores et filias virorum dehonestaverunt; qui etiam, omnia ementes, nihil solverunt. Quarto, etiam, quod in tantum odium accrevit, ut publice faceret proclamari, quod nullus oraret aut instantias faceret pro Henrico Lancastriæ, ut ad gratiam regis rediret, aut de exilio revocaretur.

Quinto, quod, non obstante quod ad duellum admisit dictum Henricum Lancastriæ contra Thomam, ducem Northumbriæ, ipsum tamen Henricum relegavit ad decennium.

Sexto, quod fuit perjurus in multis et arduis causis.

Hæc et multa alia objecta contra regem, ipsum regem timidum et pusillanimem reddiderunt, in tantum quod idem rex publice coram multis resignavit coronam et regiam potestatem sponte, libere, et pacifice. He resigns the crown voluntarily.

Formam autem[2] resignationis hic inserendam dignum duxi:— The form of abdication.

"In Dei Nomine. Amen.—Ego, Ricardus, Dei gratia Rex Angliæ et Franciæ, et Dominus Hiberniæ, omnes

---

[1] *exulari*] exiliari. MSS.

[2] *Formam autem, etc.*] See Rotul. Parliament., iii. 416, with which the text has been collated.

A.D. 1399. The form of abdication.

dictorum regnorum et dominiorum Archiepiscopos, Episcopos, et alios quoscumque ecclesiarum secularium regulariumve[1] prælatos, cujuscumque dignitatis, gradus, status, seu conditionis existant; Duces, Marciones, Comites et[2] Barones, Milites, Vasallos, Valvasores, et legeos[3] homines meos quoscumque, ecclesiasticos vel seculares, quocumque nomine censeantur, a juramento fidelitatis et homagii, et aliis quibuscumque mihi factis, omnique vinculo legantiæ[4] et regaliæ ac dominii, quibus[5] obligati fuerunt, vel sint, vel alias quomodolibet astricti, absolvo. Et eos, et eorum heredes et successores in perpetuum ab eisdem obligationibus et juramentis, et aliis quibuscumque relaxo, libero, et quieto. Et liberos,[6] solutos, et quietos, et immunes, quantum ad personam meam attinet, dimitto, ad omnem juris effectum, qui ex præmissis sequi poterit, vel aliquo præmissorum.[7] Omnique regiæ dignitati, majestati,[8] et coronæ, necnon et[9] dominio et potestati dictorum regnorum et dominii, aliisque dominiis et possessionibus meis, seu mihi quomodolibet competentibus quibuscumque, quocumque nomine censeantur, infra regna et dominia prædicta, et[10] alibi ubilibet constitutis, omnique juri et colori juris, ac titulo, possessioni, et dominio, quæ unquam habui, habeo, seu quovis modo habere potero in eisdem, seu eorum aliquo, vel ad ea, cum eorum[11] juribus et pertinentiis universis seu dependentibus, qualitercumque ex[12]

---

[1] *regulariumve.*] In both MSS. —vel regularium. Rot. Parl.

[2] *et.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot. Parl.

[3] *legeos.*] In both MSS.—ligeos. Rot. Parl.

[4] *legantiæ*] ligeantiæ. C.C.C. and Rot. Parl.

[5] *quibus*] quibus mihi. Rot. Parl.

[6] *et liberos.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot Parl.

[7] *præmissus . . . . præmissorum.*] In both MSS.—promissis . . . promissorum. Rot. Parl.

[8] *majestati*] ac magistati. Rot. Parl.

[9] *et.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot. Parl.

[10] *et.*] In both MSS.—vel. Rot. Parl.

[11] *eorum.*] In both MSS.—suis. Rot. Parl.

[12] *ex.*] In both MSS.—ab. Rot. Parl.

A.D. 1993. The form of abdication.

eisdem vel eorum aliquo; necnon regimini, gubernationi, et administrationi regnorum[1] hujusmodi omnibus[2] et omnimodis, mero et mixto imperio et jurisdictioni in eisdem regnis et dominiis mihi competentibus, seu competituris; nominique, et honori, ac regaliæ, et celsitudini, regiis, pure, sponte, simpliciter, et absolute melioribus modo, via, et forma quibus potero,[3] in his scriptis renuncio,—et ea in toto[4] resigno, ac re et verbo dimitto, et[5] eisdem cedo, et ab eisdem recedo in perpetuum: salvis successoribus meis, regibus Angliæ, in regnis et dominiis et ceteris omnibus præmissis in perpetuum juribus in eisdem, seu eorum aliquo, competentibus et competituris quibuscumque. Meque ad regimen dictorum regnorum,[6] et gubernationem dictorum regnorum cum suis pertinentiis universis, fateor, recognosco, reputo, et veraciter, ex certa scientia, judico, fuisse et esse insufficientem penitus et inutilem, ac propter mea demerita notoria non immerito deponendum.

"Et juro ad hæc Sancta Dei[7] Evangelia, per me corporaliter tacta, quod nunquam præmissis resignationi[8] et cessioni contraveniam, seu ea quovis modo[9] impugnabo, facto vel verbo, per me vel per alium, vel[10] alios, seu contraveneri vel impugnari permittam, quantum in me est, publice vel occulte; sed easdem scilicet[11] resignationem, renunciationem, dimissionem, et cessionem, in perpetuum ratas et gratas habebo,[12] et firmiter tenebo, et observabo, in toto et in omni sui

---

[1] *regnorum*] regnorum et dominiorum. Rot. Parl.

[2] *omnibus*] omnibusque. Rot. Parl.

[3] *potero.*] In both MSS.—poterit. Rot. Parl.

[4] *in toto.*] In both MSS.—in totum. Rot. Parl.

[5] *et*] et in. Rot. Parl.

[6] *dictorum regnorum.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot. Parl.

[7] *Dei.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot. Parl.

[8] *resignationi*] renunciationi, resignationi, dimissioni. Rot. Parl.

[9] *quovis modo.*] In both MSS.—quomodolibet. Rot. Parl.

[10] *vel.*] In both MSS.—seu. Rot. Parl.

[11] *scilicet.*] In both MSS. — om. Rot. Parl.

[12] *habebo.*] habeo. C.C.C.

A.D. 1399. The form of abdication.

parte; sicut Deus me adjuvet, et hæc Sancta Dei Evangelia. Amen.[1]

"Et ego, prædictus Ricardus, me subscribo, præsentibus his hominibus:—

The names of the witnesses.

"Henrico duce Lancastriæ;
"Reverendo Patre, Thoma, Archiepiscopo Cantuariæ;
"Ricardo Scrop, Archiepiscopo Eboracensi;
"Johanne Herfordens:
"Et Nobilibus viris Comitibus,—
"Henrico Northumbriæ;
"Radulpho, Comite Westmorlandiæ;
"Thoma[2] Arundeliæ;
"Thoma[2] de Berkle,
"Et Willielmo Beucham de Bergevene.
"Hugone[3] de Burnel,
"Willielmo Roos,
"Henrico de Bello-Monte,
"Willielmo de Wylby,—Baronibus.
"Thoma[2] Grey,
"Thoma[2] Erpyngham,
"Thoma[2] Ramston,
"Willielmo Fullestane,
"Hugone[3] Watirton,—Militibus.
"Willielmo Lucas,
"Johanne[4] Norbury,
"Edwardo Beucham,
"Radulpho Bradford,—Armigeris."[5]

[1] *Amen.*] In both MSS.—om. Rot. Parl., which adds—"Ego Ricardus rex antedictus propria manu me subscribo," omitting in this place the names of the witnesses, which had been given earlier.

[2] *Thoma*] Thome. MSS.

[3] *Hugone*] Hugoni. MSS.

[4] *Johanne*] Johanni, MSS.

[5] The list of names given in Rot. Parl. is as follows:— "Memorandum, quod die Lunæ in festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, anno regis Ricardi Secundi vicesimo tertio, Domini spirituales et temporales, et aliæ personæ notabiles, videlicet Ricardus le Scrop, Archiepiscopus Eboracensis; Johannes, Episcopus Herdefordensis; Henricus, Comes Northumbriæ; et Radulphus, Comes Westmorlandiæ; Hugo, Dominus de Burnell; Thomas, Dominus de Berkeley; Prior Cantuariensis, et Abbas Westmonasteriensis; Willielmus Thirnyng, Miles, et Johannes Markham, Justiciarii; Thomas Stowe, et Johannes Burbache, Legum Doctores; Thomas de Erpyngham et Thomas Gray, Milites; Willielmus de Feriby et Dionysius Lopham, Notarii Publici.

Præmisit tamen idem rex protestationem quod noluit nec intendebat renunciare carecteribus animæ suæ impressis. A.D. 1399. Certain reservations made by Richard.

Item, quod reservavit sibi redditus, terras, et tenementa, per ipsum empta et adquisita, de domino Ricardo le Scroop, pro obitu suo, et aliorum, apud Westmonasterium tenendo, et cetera.

Item, voluit et declaravit quod renunciavit regimini regni; ita tamen quod, quantum in eo fuerit, dominus Henricus, dux Lancastriæ, proximo sibi succederet in regno.

Acta sunt hæc die Lunæ, in festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, anno regni sui XXIII. Promiserat enim apud Cumwey hæc omnia se impleturum, et sicut promiserat, implevit apud London, in Turri constitutus.

Sequenti autem die, scilicet Martis,[2] lecta sunt omnia hæc in Aula Westmonasterii, scilicet articuli contra regem propositi, et resignatio ejus, coram dominis et tota communitate. Tunc missi sunt ad regem Johannes, episcopus Assavensis; Johannes abbas Glastoniæ; Thomas comes Gloucestriæ; Thomas dominus de Berkle; Thomas Erpyngham, et Thomas Grey, Milites; et Johannes Thirnyng, Justiciarius, et denunciaverunt sibi quod, secundum vota populi, et sententiam dominorum, ac setiam confessionem propriam, indignus esset ad tale regimen, propterea sententialiter pronunciaverunt eum depositum. The charges and the form of resignation having been publicly read at Westminster, Richard is deposed.

Et post hæc, eodem die, surgens dux Lancastriæ, Henricus, vendicavit sibi coronam:—Primo, ex propinquitate sanguinis, quam probavit ex antiquis quidem gestis, quorum veras copias necdum vidi. Audivi enim pro parte sua tunc allegatum fuisse, quod descenderat ex filio majore et seniore, et per consequens, ad regnum propinquiore. Secundo, vendicavit sibi Accession of Henry IV.

---

[1] Monday, September 29.

[2] Tuesday, September 30.

A.D. 1399. regnum ex electione dominorum et populi; nam et omnes tunc in ipsum clamore magno consenserunt. Tertio, ex assignatione supradicti regis Ricardi, qui eum ore proprio assignaverat, et in testimonium horum, ostendit ibidem populo signetum regis prælibati.

He holds his first Parliament.

Et die Lunæ sequente,[1] incepit Parliamentum magnum, in quo proceres totius regni convenerunt; ubi de coronatione novi regis tractatum est. Et quoniam multis complacuit ut coronatio hæc non diu protelaretur, concordatum est, ut in festo Sancti regis Edwardi[2] solemnitas ista celebraretur; sicque dictus Henricus coronam adeptus est, providente hoc Deo, ut credimus, Qui potens est potentes de sede ponere, et humiles exaltare.[3]

His coronation.

His character.

Sublimatus igitur in regni solium, dictus rex Henricus vias justitiæ observavit, servos Domini quam maxime honoratus est, et, de Scripturæ fontibus hauriens, non sitibundus exivit. Nam novi temporibus meis litteratissimos viros, qui colloquio suo fruebantur, dixisse ipsum valde capacis fuisse ingenii, et tenacis memoriæ, in tantum, ut multum diei expenderet in quæstionibus solvendis et enodandis. Meminerat enim illud illustrissimi Salamonis votum, in quo non divitias, non honores præoptavit, sed assistricem Dei Sapientiam, et, juxta cujusdam super hoc versificatoris sententiam,—

"Ad patris vota cum sumpsisset diadema,
Et sibi quid mallet Deus optandum statuisset,
Non hostes vinci, non annos multiplicari,
Nec gazas, petiit, sed prona mente rogavit
Cor sapiens fieri sibi pro munimine regni."

Hæc autem quæ de Salamone dicta sunt, in rege isto Henrico sunt impleta, quanquam aliter. Nam, etsi sapiens fuerat, ad cumulum tamen sapientiæ qui in Salamone fuerat, non pervenit. Sufficiat posteriori

[1] Monday, October 6.
[2] October 13.
[3] S. Luke i. 52.

seculo scire, quod vir iste in moralibus dubiis enodandis studiosus fuerit scrutator, et quantum regale otium a turbinibus causarum eum permisit liberum in his semper solicitum fuisse. A.D. 1399.

Hic autem rex, ex prima uxore sua Maria, filia scilicet comitis Hertfordiæ, suscitavit quatuor filios, inter mundi principes præfulgentes. E quibus primus fuit Henricus Quintus; cujus gesta in posteriori capitulo divulganda sunt. Prince Henry born, A.D. 1388.

Secundus, dux Clarenciæ, Thomas; magnus quidem debellator hominum sibi repugnantium, et suavissimus amator eorum, qui sibi, quocumque titulo benevolentiæ, pertinebant. Thomas, Duke of Clarence, born A.D. 1389.

Tertius autem, dux Bedfordiæ, Johannes; vir quidem bonis moribus pollens erat iste, et ad pacem tractandam tenendamque fortunatissimus. John, Duke of Bedford; born, A.D. 1390.

Quartus filius, qui adhuc superest, dux est Gloverniæ, Humfridus; vir quidem inter omnes mundi proceres litteratissimus, cujus laudes ad alia tempora, et ad aliam vacationem ideo differendam puto, quoniam specialem Tractatulum super commendatiuncula ejus quandoque me facturum existimo. Insuper, quoniam constrinxi me in hoc opere solos illustres Henricos commendare, ad rem non pertinet alterius nominis viros hic inducere, ne onerosus fiam; ne, insuper, regularum a me superius positarum transgressor existam. Humphrey Duke of Gloucester (whose life was written by Capgrave), born A.D. 1391.

Unicam filiam hujus excellentissimi regis ego vidi in villa de Lenne, ubi navem intravit, cum, Angliam relinquens, ad conjugium regis Norwegiæ festinavit. Dicunt qui noverunt eam, in tantam sapientiam succrevisse, ut omnes causæ regni ad eam confluerent, rege sæpissimis infirmitatibus continue vexato, et ipsam provido consilio omnia feliciter terminasse. Hæc est quidem regalis progenies, quam ego oculis conspexi. The Princess Philippa marries the King of Norway.

Ceterum, post mortem primæ uxoris, duxit idem rex filiam regis Aragonum, et relictam ducis Britanniæ Minoris; ex qua nullum suscepit ventris fructum. A.D. 1405. Henry IV. marries Joan of Navarre.

A.D. 1405. Insurrection of the Earl of Northumberland.

Rexit autem vir iste regnum hunc gloriosum satis pacifice, nisi quod in principio regni sui insurrexerunt in eum Henricus Percy, comes Northumbriæ, cum avunculo suo, Thoma, et ceteris complicibus suis; et factum est grave bellum adversus dominum regem. Veruntamen tota causa hujus belli fuit dictus Thomas, ut dixerunt. Nam et rex libenter pacificatus fuisset comiti, et gratias sibi concessisset, si peteret. Comes etiam libenter se humiliasset ad gratiam regis. Sed Achitophel iste Thomas, inter eos medium se fingens, falsus utrisque, extitit, pro dolor! causa totius excidii. Apud regem dixit nepotem nullo modo tractabilem ad petendam gratiam. Apud comitem dixit regem jurasse ut caput suum illo die cerneret in sublimi. Et hæc finis istius belli,—multi ex utraque parte occisi sunt; postremo ipse comes trucidatus est, ubi Anglia optimum militem perdidit. Facta sunt hæc in campo juxta Salopiam, sub anno Domini M.CCCCIII., regni vero Henrici hujus Quarti anno tertio, XXII. die mensis Julii.

The treachery of his uncle, Thomas.

Troubles with the Esquire of the Earl of Arundel.

Et post hæc quasdam animi perturbationes habuit idem rex cum uno armigero Ricardi, comitis Arundell, qui armiger dictus est Glendore, quem rex sæpius quæsivit et nunquam invenit. Nam in montibus et cavernis Walliæ circumvagans, nunquam certum locum habuit, nec a quoquam capi potuit.

A.D. 1412. Death of Hen. IV. [A.D. 1413.]

Cum autem regnasset dictus Henricus rex annis XIIII., tandem finem vitæ habuit felicem, in festo Sancti Cuthberti,[1] Episcopi et Confessoris, anno Domini M.CCCCXII.[2]

His dying address to his eldest son.

Moriturus autem, pro rege Henrico, filio suo, mox futuro misit, cui et exhortationem sanctissimam præbens, taliter sub compendio exorsus est:—"Considera, fili, et vide patrem tuum, olim in armis strenuum, nunc

[1] March 20.

autem solum ossibus et nervis ornatum. Fortitudo corporalis recessit, sed, Deo tribuente, accessit spiritualis. Nam et infirmitas hæc, quæ usque ad mortem est, ut veraciter sentio, animum meum fortiorem et devotiorem[1] reddit. Cogita, fili mi, inter gloriam et prosperitatem regni, quo pervenies. Dilige Dominum Deum tuum, et Eum super omnia time. Confessor sit tibi unus sapiens et prudens, qui sciat et audeat te informare monitis saluberrimis; nec acquiescas eis, "qui consuunt pulvillos sub omni cubito manus."[2] Consilium cordis tui aperias bonis et modestis et religiosis personis, maxime iis qui solitariam vitam habent in studio, et oratione, et otio sancto. Otiosus non sis, sed semper aut circa[3] Deum, aut circa regni commodum propter Deum, aut circa delectationes quasdam et lusus admirabiles,[4] quæ tamen nullam spurcitiam[5] habeant vitiorum. Debita patris tui, fili, fideliter solvas, ut benedictione fruaris Altissimi; et Deus patrum nostrorum, Abrahæ, Ysaac, et Jacob, det tibi benedictionem omnibus bonis refertam, ut sic benedictus vivas in secula seculorum. Amen." A.D. 1413,

Hæc sunt ultima verba hujus victoriosissimi regis Henrici Quarti.

---

[1] *devotiorem.*] C.C.C.—The word is written "devotionem" in the MS. Cotton.

[2] Ezekiel xiii. 18.

[3] *circa.*] C.C.C.—This word is written by mistake "cira" in the MS. Cotton.

[4] *admirabiles.*] amiabiles. C.C.C.

[5] *nullam spurcitiam*] nulla spurcitia, MSS.

De Rege Henrico Quinto.

Capitulum Quintum.

A.D. 1413. Henry V.

Henricus Quintus, victoriosissimus, cœpit regnare anno Domini MCCCC.XII.[1]

Primus dies integer regni sui fuit festum Sancti Benedicti,[2] ut intelligamus eum in omnibus operibus suis benedictum, quoniam Deum dilexit, ecclesiam veneratus est, et justitiæ vias firmissime observavit.

His coronation.

Coronatus est autem nono die mensis Aprilis, anno Domini M.CCCC.XIII., apud Westmonasterium: quo anno magnæ inundationes aquarum et nivium factæ sunt in hieme, et in æstate plura incendia, ex quibus signis nonnulli prædixere ipsum bellicosum futurum et plura pericula guerrarum experturum.

Sir John Oldcastle conspires against the King.

In principio ejus regni conspiravit contra dominum regem quidam dominus, Johannes Oldcastel dictus, qui fautor sectæ hæreticæ fuit per magistrum Johannem Wiclif introductæ. Hic, scilicet Oldcastel, adductus ad regem, et accusatus propter plura documenta erronea quæ sustinuit, primo blanditiis mollitus est ut ab inceptis desisteret; deinde minis territus: qui nec sic flecti potuit. Coram concilio episcoporum adductus, et, certis hæresibus ac erroribus recitatis, ipse idem Oldcastelle proterva facie eos defendit. Unde et ibidem

---

[1] *M.CCCCXII.*] Henry V. began to reign, as is proved by the entry in the Red Book of the Exchequer,—"Anno Domini M.CCCCXIII. — Item data Regis Henrici Quinti a Conquestu mutatur singulis annis in festo Sancti Benedicti, accidente XXI. die Martii."

præsidente venerabili Thoma, Episcopo Cantuariæ, publice pro hæretica pravitate, et tanquam hæreticorum fautore principali, condemnatus est. Dominus tamen rex ipsum in gratiam recepit, sub spe quod lucraretur eum: posuit tamen eum in Turri custodiendum, ubi et vincula rumpens aufugit, et, per partes regni secretius latitans, congregavit multam turbam perfidorum suorum, ut regem in festo Epiphaniæ,[1] quasi sub titulo amicitiæ et jocunditatis, interimeret. Nam post dictum festum, per aliquot dies insidias parans, cupiebat implere quæ proposuerat. Et in rure Egidii, quod prope Londoniam est, congregari proponebant. Sed rex, non ignarus insidiarum, eos præoccupat, et cum suis primo campum intravit, comprehendens hæreticorum vulpeculas, sicut ex antris processerunt; ubi ipse auctor et fautor aufugit; sed post dies plurimos captus et adductus, dignas suo errore sustinuit pœnas, sicut postea patebit. Et post hæc rex jubet litanias fieri et processiones per totum regnum; autumans placitum et gratum Deo esse, quod, post tantam stragem malorum, et post abscissum a puris granis nefandissimum lollium, Summo Satori reddantur gratiarum actiones.

A.D. 1413.

He is consigned to the Tower, but escapes.

A.D. 1414. His second attempt fails.

Tunc, ecclesiæ cultum ampliare intendens, tria monas-

The King builds three Monasteries.

[1] *in festo Epiphaniæ.*] In the margin immediately opposite these words is written, in the MS. C.C.C., the following curious instruction to the Scribe who should copy this Chronicle:—"Corrige librum quia erronee scribitur." It does not appear, however, from the MS. Cotton, that the suggested alteration was made; at least, the passages referred to correspond in both MSS. It is clear to what Capgrave's note refers. He says that Oldcastle had intended to compass the King's death on the Feast of the Epiphany, that is, on the Sixth of January, but that some days after the said Feast, when his plans were not matured, he was captured by the King's soldiers. Now he was taken on the night of the Sixth, and not when he had been "*post* dictum festum, per aliquot dies insidias parans." The alteration of "post" into "ante" would have made the statement correct, but not very clear; and it must be supposed that Capgrave thought it necessary that the entire sentence should be reconstructed.

A.D. 1414. teria fecit juxta Schene; quorum opus, sine scriptorum commendatiuncula, se manifestat.

He holds his Parliament at Leicester.

Deinde Parliamentum constituit apud Leycestriam, in quo multa magna et ardua terminata sunt. Nulla exactio ibidem imponebatur clero vel populo; et ex hoc Parliamentum illud suavius reputatum est. Ibi tractatum est de nuptiis hujus inclitissimi regis, qui labente animo in illas consensit, dummodo talis mulier sibi copularetur quæ pacem et concordiam induceret et tranquillitatem in regno suo. Deinde scripsit imperatori, et aliis regibus ac principibus catholicis, pro pace et amicitia contrahenda, et specialiter ad regem Franciæ embassiatores misit, pro jure suo in Normannia et ceteris,[1] injuste per eos retentis; ipsi vero Galli turphis[2] et irrisionibus tardabant nuncios, et sic finaliter sine effectu revertuntur. Fertur autem Delphinum tunc temporis pilas solemnes misisse ad regem nostrum, mandans ut his ludis exerceret juventutem suam, et non præsumeret contra tam nobile regnum certamen sumere. At rex noster per litteras respondit in brevi, tales pilas se illis missurum quæ civitates eorum et turres fortes tremere facerent.

A.D. 1415. Warlike preparations against France.

Tunc videns rex superbiam eorum et derisum, præparat ea quæ necessaria sunt ad conflictum, intendens pro jure suo certamen inire, causam suam Deo et Omnibus Sanctis committens. Inter hæc parantur classes arma conduntur, congregantur homines, et novum militiæ genus undique confluit.

Certain traitors dissuade him from the expedition, and are put to death.

Sed inter hæc quidam de suis, in quibus magnam fiduciam habuit, prece conducti Gallorum, conabantur ipsum a proposito impedire, vel simpliciter occidere, ut dicebatur. Et non cognovit rex traditionem usque in articulum temporis quo erat mare transiturus. Ii autem qui in hac causa culpabiles inventi sunt, et

---

[1] *ceteris.*] ceteris terris. C.C.C. | [2] *turphis*] truphis. C.C.C.

propter manifestam traditionem occisi, erant Ricardus, comes Cantabriggiæ, et Henricus Scroop, ac Thomas Gray. Facta autem hac commotione, consuluerunt ceteri domini dominum regem ut mare non transiret. Sed ipse, causam suam Deo committens, intrat mare in festo Sancti Tiburtii Martyris,[1] et in vigilia Assumptionis Beatæ Virginis,[2] in villa de Kidecaus,[3] littora illa feliciter applicuit. Tunc edictum publicum per totum exercitum sonuit, ut nullus suorum ecclesias spoliaret, sacerdotes injuriose tractaret, aut mulieres violaret; et hoc sub pœna mortis. A.D. 1415.

Et venit ad Hareflw, quam multis munitionibus, et cautelis, et fortaliciis, cepit. Nam ipse dominus de Gaucort, postquam viriliter restiterat multis diebus, necessitate tamen ductus, reddidit claves villæ regi, et submisit se et sua ad regis gratiam. Quem et rex libere permisit, cum aliis captivis, accedere ad regem Franciæ, et ei notificare rei adventum, ea tamen conditione, ut ad suam præsentiam Calesiæ, præstito juramento, reverterentur. The taking of Harfleur.

Et inter hæc, misit haraldum ad Delphinum Franciæ, quod expectaret eum in villa de Hareflw per octo dies; mandans, ut redderet sibi terram de jure sibi pertinentem, sine effusione sanguinis; vel, si hoc non placeret, quod terminarent jus et dominium regni jure gladii inter ipsos solos. Sed respondit ei in his causis nullus. Facta est autem clades inter hanc suam gloriam quam maxima. Namque ex fluxu sanguinis plures infirmantur; comes quoque Suthfolchiæ, et Episcopus Norwicensis, dictus Courtney, ex hac infirmitate moriuntur; multique ad Angliam reversi sunt, ita ut vix quinque millia cum rege remanerent. The King sends a herald to the Dauphin, and begs him to come to terms without bloodshed.

Sed rex, ad ista intrepidus, transivit prope villam de The King's progress.

[1] August 11.
[2] August 14.
[3] *Kidecaus.*] Kidecauns. C.C.C.

A.D. 1415. Archus, quæ sita est super viam qua tendere deberet, pontibus et turribus satis munita, ubi rumor fuit de bello imminente. Deinde amovit hostem ad Iwe, ubi comperit omnes pontes patriæ destructos, et omnia calceta defossa, ut nullus inde transitus fieret; atque omnia victualia aut asportata, aut suspecta invenit. Tunc demum amovit ad villam de Bowys; et inde ad campum dictum Corby, ubi, Gallis subito irrumpentibus, sagittariis elaborantibus, sunt effugati. Transito quoque uno marisco, et fluvio dicto Somme, atque uno calceto satis stricto, ubi et insultum Gallorum iterum sustinuit, mittunt ad eum dux Aurelianensis et dux Burbon, quod præparet se ad bellum in brevi. Nullus locus, nulla dies assignatur, sed maxima pompa nuncii hæc referentes reversi sunt. Fertur autem nuncios hujus rei fuisse dominus de Hayle, qui ruperat Castrum apud Wysbeche,[1] et fugerat; et alter, Johannes Gravelle, miles. Tunc rex intrepidus, causam suam Deo committens, transiit flumen de Swerdis, et, elevatis oculis, a longe conspicit Francorum cohortem,[2] et inter utrosque hostes vallem mediam. Tunc jubet omnes ut peccata sua Deo fideliter confiteantur, pœnitentiam salutarem acciperent, reputans se posse fieri victor hominum si ipse prius victor esset vitiorum. Sacerdotes pauci ibidem erant; propter quod non cito fiebat quod voluit. Tota igitur die ibidem permanentes, alii non descenderunt. Nox venit, et descendit rex ad villam unam prope. Nox illa pluviosa nimis erat; ubi in pluvia et sine pane populus pausabat. Galli mane putant regem fugisse, securitateque vana seducti ad aleas ludunt, quis illum et quis illum possessurus sit. Res miranda nimis! cum ex parte regis septem millia fuisse referuntur, et ex parte Francorum sexaginta;

Heralds announce the approach of the French.

Battle of Agincourt.

[1] *Castrum apud Wysbeche*] C.C.C. —Castrum de apud Wysbeche in the MS. Cotton.

[2] *cohortem*] cohortes. C.C.C.

victoria tamen Anglicis data est. Taceo de arci- A.D. 1415.
tenentibus, et de sudibus, quomodo ordinati sunt, et multis aliis ibidem contingentibus; nam et longam declarationem petunt. Sufficiat scire, ut nunc, quod hæc victoria, annuente Deo, facta est in festo Sanctorum Crispini et Crispiniani;[1] ubi occubuerunt ex parte nostra dux Eboraci et comes Suthfolchiæ, ac de populo, ut dicunt, non ultra quam XXX. Occisi sunt ex parte Francorum Archiepiscopus Senonensis, duces tres, comites septem, dominus de la Bret, Constabularius Franciæ, centum barones, mille milites et quingenti; procerum quoque septem millia. Capti sunt duces duo, comites tres, et plures alii generosi.

Videbatur a quibusdam Sanctus Georgius ibidem pro rege pugnans, ut asseritur. Legend.

Ea nocte permansit rex ibidem; et in triduo reversus est ad Calesiam, ubi per viginti dies repausat a laboribus. Factum est autem hoc bellum in gaudium et exultationem unius gentis; in dolorem vero et opprobrium alterius gentis. Illuc venit Gaucort, cum aliis captivis, ut promiserat. The King proceeds to Calais,

De Calesia venit rex Cantuariam, et tunc Londonias; ubi honorabiliter, sicut decuit, receptus, multis honestioribus imaginibus et picturis, tam in ponte, quam in aliis locis civitatis, propter eum factis. Et quantus concursus populorum ibi fiebat, mirum est dicere. Sic recepto rege, tota terra nostra in jubilo et exultatione lætatur. and thence, through Canterbury, to London.

Primo die Martii proximo sequente, incipitur Parlia- A.D. 1416.
mentum apud Westmonasterium, in quo per Episcopum Wyntoniæ, tunc Cancellarium regni, et nunc Cardinalem, notificabatur populo, quomodo rex Edwardus Tertius pro jure suo vendicaverat sibi regnum Franciæ: similiter et princeps Edwardus, et nunc demum Henricus

[1] October 25.

A.D. 1416. Quintus. At in peroratione sua idem Cancellarius magnas gratiarum actiones reddendas Deo a populo præoptavit, quoniam et fortissimos portus acquisierant reges nostri,—Edwardus scilicet portum Calesiæ, et Henricus portum de Hareflw; et, quod maxime ad gloriam regni pertinet, corda Gallorum attonita et suspensa rex noster in hoc ultimo bello reddiderat.

The Earl of Dorchester defeats the French. Inter hæc, venit nuncius ad regem nova gaudia ferens, comitem scilicet Armanak devictum, cum millibus suis, et hoc a paucis Anglorum. Comes enim Dorcestriæ, qui postea fuit dux Exoniæ, victoriam hanc obtinuit super quindenis millibus Francorum, cum vix nongentos homines haberet.

The Emperor Sigismund visits England. Post ista omnia, venit ad Angliam Sigemundus, imperator Romanorum, Parliamento nondum soluto, quoniam et imperatoris adventum expectabant. Mille viris stipatus, venit ad Calesiam, cito post Pascha;[1] ubi comes Warwycy eum reverenter suscepit; deinde, apud Dovoriam, dux Gloverniæ; et apud Cantuariam, dominus archiepiscopus; et apud Rouchestriam, dux Bedfordiæ; et apud Dorthforth, dux Clarensis receperunt.[2] Rex vero prope Londonias, cum quinque millibus procerum stipatus, ei satis solemniter obviavit, exceptis civibus Londoniarum, et eum per medium civitatis ducens, usque ad Westmonasterium duxit; et in quintadecima Paschæ, in Parliamento, renovatur publice fraternitas inter imperatorem et regem, olim secretius initiata. Cartisque firmatur hæc solemnitas, ad perpetuum concordiæ et amoris nutrimentum.

He is made Knight of the Garter. Instante quoque festivitate Sancti Georgii Martyris,[3] imperator huic festivitati interfuit, ubi eligitur in fraternitatem Militiæ de Gartere, et debitis insigniis installatur. In qua festivitate dux Hollondiæ inter-

---

[1] Easter Day fell on April 19, in the year 1416.

[2] *receperunt*] susceperunt. C.C.C.

[3] April 23.

fuit, cum centum militibus, ut fertur, pro pace inter Angliam et Franciam perpetuo servanda tractaturus. A.D. 1416. Et sub hoc pacis tractatu, Franci, fraudulenta machinatione et duplicitate solita, villam de Hareflw per certas carucas de Januensibus obsidere parant, et deinde ad naves regis concremandas apud Hampton festinant. Troubles at Harfleur. Hoc rex comperto, Parliamentum dissolvit, dux Hollandiæ ad propria revertitur, imperator ad Castellum de Ledis, in Cantiam, solemniter conductus est, et rex ipse usque ad Hampton properat. Iterum sub nomine et sigillo regis Franciæ, mittuntur litteræ Imperatori, quod Concilium Franciæ condescenderat omnibus articulis appunctuatis per Concilium regis Angliæ pro pace reformanda, super quibus litteris tam imperator quam rex lætis animis Deo gratias reddunt. Sed non fecerunt secundum scripturam eorum, immo primo male tractaverunt ambassiatores nostros, prohibentes eos, quod non exirent ex hospitiis eorum, et alia mala eis inferebant, quæ non sunt legibus aut pacis tractatibus apta. Insuper et villam de Hareflw sic circumcludunt, ut nec exire quis posset, nec intrare aliquis ad eos. Sed et portum de Portismowth circumcludunt classibus suis, ne regia classis exiret. Hæc et multa alia quæ fecerunt, lucide ostendebant omnes tractatus eorum fraudulentos esse et deceptorios, ut his truphis citius circumvenirent incautos.

Sed Dominus Deus, Qui veritatem aspicit, et liberat justos de ærumna, consolabatur nostros per dominum ducem Bedfordiæ, qui cum classe satis forti primo conflictum habuit in mari cum carucis et aliis satis terribilibus vasis, ubi mille viri et quingenti ex adversariis occisi sunt,[1] et quadringenti capti sunt. The Duke of Bedford disperses the French fleet. Deinde idem dux, cum navigio suo ad Hareflw veniens, replet eam

[1] *sunt.*] This word has been added by a later hand. It is not found in C.C.C.

A.D. 1416. alimentis, et optima consolatione obsessos lætificat. Hæc audiens dominus rex, versus Cantuariam iter arripit; laudes Deo persolvit; imperatori, qui tunc præsens erat, omnia refert. Fiunt laudes in communi quod fraus fraude cecidit, et veritas justitia liberatur. Post hæc, rex in capella novas cærimonias renovans, antiquis non destructis, devoto famulatu Deum collaudabat. Certis enim responsoriis, versiculis, et orationibus, tam de Trinitate, quam de Beata Virgine et ceteris Sanctis, quos speciali devotione veneratus est, servitium capellæ suæ devotius amplians, et ipse horum non auditor obliviosus existens, maximam devotionem in populo augebat.

A.D. 1417. The Emperor leaves England. Et post, imperator, ad sua remeans, usque ad Dovoream et Calisiam rediit, concomitante rege. Famuli autem imperatoris maximas laudes tam verbo quam scripto in recessu suo ad Angliam referentes, cedulas in vicis et plateis tali sententia repletas seminaverunt:—

"Vale et gaude, gloriosa cum triumpho!
O tu felix Anglia et benedicta!
Quia quasi angelica natura gloriosa,
Laude Jhesum adorans, es jure dicta.
Hanc tibi do laudem quam recte jure mereris." [1]

The King at Calais. Quarto igitur die Septembris, rex ad Calesiam veniens, ambassiatores Franciæ ibidem recepit, qui præmittuntur propriis ibi sumptibus vivere sicut et illi

Conference with the Duke of Burgundy. ad ambassiatores nostros fecisse memorantur. Tunc misit dux Burgundiæ nuncium regi, quod intendebat venire ad colloquium suum, sub ea conditione, quod dux Gloverniæ mitteretur obses ad urbem Sancti Omeri permansurus ibidem, quamdiu dictus dux Calesiæ permaneret: cui libenter annuit rex. Et postquam per aliquot dies tractatum pacis habuisset dux cum rege,

[1] See "Capgrave's Chronicle of England," page 314, where a curious translation of these lines is given.

ad propria rediit, et rex versus Londoniam iterum tendit, et decimo nono die Octobris tenuit Parliamentum suum Londoniæ; ubi consensu communi decretum est, quod, quia pax per tractatus et concilia inveniri non potuit, placuit pacem bello quærere. In illo Parliamento comes Dorcestriæ Thomas factus est dux[1] Exoniæ, et multa pecunia exacta est a regno pro jure ejus conquirendo. A.D. 1417.

Sed et Johannes Oldcastelle, per satellites suos, spargi fecit in vicis et plateis plurima scripta, in quibus sub hypocrisis typo, gloriam regni et augmentum prætendebat; intendens tamen per hæc corda populorum commovere, et, commotione facta, contra regem ausu temerario insurgere. Et una billa inter ceteras inventa est, in qua supplicatur regi ut omnia bona temporalia ecclesiarum assumat in manu propria, quam billam etiam præsentavit domino regi quidam Henricus nomine Greyndore. Cui et rex se respondit malle in frusta[2] ab ense cædi, quam ista faceret. Posuit tamen dictum Henricum in carceribus, quasi hæreticorum fautorem. Treachery of Sir John Oldcastle.

Mandat denique rex, post Parliamentum finitum, ut omnes naves usque ad Hampton conveniant, quoniam iterum ad Normaniam tendere festinat. Et dum hæc fierent, comes de Huntingdon, ductor navigii, apud Hogges cepit naves multas, in quibus multi captivi ducti sunt, et inter ceteros frater ducis Burbonum bastardus captus est. Rex vero, circa festum Sancti Petri ad Vincula,[3] Neustriæ partes adiit, ubi plures villas et castella sibi de jure pertinentia cepit; et in festo Translationis Sancti Cuthberti,[4] cepit villam de Caam, ubi et victoriosissimus rex Willielmus Conquestor sepelitur. The King collects his fleet at Hampton. The Earl of Huntingdon gains a naval victory at La Hogue. Successes in France.

[1] *dux.*] In the MS. C.C.C. the word "comes" is found in the text, but "dux" has been written above it in a later hand.

[2] *frusta*] C.C.C.—frustra. MS. Cotton.

[3] August 1.

[4] September 4.

A.D. 1417. The Lollards are repressed.

Et, rege in Normannia constituto, tenuit Parliamentum in Anglia,[1] vice regis, dux Bedfordiæ, ubi provisio facta est contra Scotos et Lollardos, in absentia regis insurgentes, ubi et bona nova veniunt de electione domini Papæ Martini Quinti.

Capture of Oldcastle.

Iste est annus quintus hujus gloriosi regis Henrici, in quo et ille satelles infernalis Oldcastelle captus est per clientes domini de Powes, et ad mortem adjudicatus est. Propter eos tamen, ad quorum manus præsentes litteræ pervenient, ne credant eum tam opprobriosa morte peremptum, nisi legitimis causis, quosdam errores suos posteris manifestabo. Primo affirmavit quod nullus deberet Matrem Christi venerari, sicut nec ceteros Sanctos. Item quod confessio soli Deo debet fieri, et non homini. Item quod in sacramento altaris post consecrationem remaneat panis. Possessiones civiles damnavit; sacerdotes et ecclesias quasi abominationes odivit. Nuptias quoque, quantum in se erat, destruere proponebat. In captione sua multa mala captoribus inferebat, quia fortis erat valde, ut dicunt. Sed una mulier percussit tibiam ejus scabello, et mox cecidit; et, adductus ad Londoniam, suspensus est, et incendio conflagratus. Finxerat se Heliam ad conversionem totius orbis missum, et prophetia sua impleta est, ut dicunt quidam, dum in curru sedens ad ignem ductus est, quoniam raptus est unus de curru ad Paradisum, et alter ad infernum. Dux autem Bedfordensis, et qui præsentes erant in morte sua, exhortabantur eum confessionem[2] peccatorum suorum fideliter et humiliter faceret, offerentes sibi tempus, et sacerdotem quem eligeret ex multis. Ipse autem dixit quod, si Petrus et Paulus præsentes essent, quod nollet eis confiteri; sicque ut blasphemus et

---

[1] *in Anglia.*] Added above the line in C.C.C.

[2] *confessionem*] ut confessionem. C.C.C.

fautor hæreticorum pessimus, mortis ignominiam passus est, sicut decuit: primo tractus et suspensus, deinde in partes divisus et evisceratus, ac postremo flammis excineratus est. A.D. 1417. His ignominious death.

Hæc sunt acta hujus incliti, et generosi, ac Christianissimi regis, Henrici Quinti, in primo lustro regiminis sui. Taceo hic de civitatibus et villis, oppidis et castellis innumeris, quæ[1] in Normannia ceperat, quoniam prolixum opus facerent, et longum a proposito meo diverticulum, quippe quoniam in principio sponsionis meæ hoc promiseram, facta horum virorum brevi commendatiunculo præterire.

Nuptias magnificas hujus regis et inclitæ dominæ Katerinæ, filiæ regis Francorum, pro tanto commemoro, ut habeant posteri hanc notam super his, quo anno, quo et die celebratæ sint. Nam, ut accepi, in festo Beatæ Trinitatis acta sunt hæc, anno regni sui VIII., in Troys in Chaumpeyn, ut multi affirmant. A.D. 1420. The King marries the Princess Katherine of France.

Post multas autem inclitas et miraculosas victorias, obiit dulcis memoriæ optimus rex apud Rotomagum,[2] anno regni sui IX., in festo Sanctorum Felicis et Audacti,[3] sub anno Domini M.CCCCXXII. Bene autem contigit occasus suus in festo Felicis, quoniam felix in omnibus fuit; felix in ecclesiis ampliandis, felix in divinis officiis distinctius ordinandis, felix in administratione justitiæ, ac postremo felix in omni vita sua. Et sicut Beatus Felix statuas flatu fortissimæ fidei prostravit, ita iste rex statuas hæreticorum justitiæ malleo communivit, et in cineres redegit, ne seges ecclesiæ ex A.D. 1422. Death of Hen. V.

---

[1] *quæ*] "Quos" in both MSS.

[2] *obiit . . . rex apud Rotomagum.*] Henry V. did not die at Rouen but at Bois Vincennes, within a mile and a half of Paris, which is still standing. In the margin of the MS. C.C.C., opposite this passage, are written the words "Boys Vincen . . . . "

[3] *in festo, etc.*] *i.e.*, on August 30. Henry died on August 31, according to the statement in the Red Book of the Exchequer:—"obiit ultimo die Augusti, anno regni sui decimo.

A.D. 1422. horum doctrina commacularetur, nec fidelium turba a perfidis destrueretur.

Præstet sibi Dominus pro fide sua, quam inviolatam secum sustulit, æternæ beatitudinis annulum; et pro defensione ecclesiæ militantis gloriam triumphantis; et pro regno terreno, cujus jura inviolabiliter servavit, regnum æternum cum Deo Patre et Filio et Spiritu Sancto, per infinita seculorum secula. Amen.[1]

---

[1] . . . . *seculorum. Amen.*] The work appears from the MS. C.C.C., which is evidently (as has been shewn) the Author's autograph, to have ended at this place with the reign of Henry V., the remainder of the volume having been added in later years, and compiled at different periods. The colour of the ink and the size of the writing are, of course, varied, but it is clear that the whole of the MS. was written by one person.

De Henrico Sexto, Rege Angliæ.

Capitulum Sextum.[1]

Henricus Sextus, rex Angliæ et Franciæ—qui et nunc superstes est, cujus ministeriis et me totum obtuli,—natus est sub anno Domini M.CCCC.XXII., in festo Beati Pontificis Nicholai.[2] Hic ex patre Henrico Quinto rege victoriosissimo progenitus, matre quoque Katerina,[3] Karoli regis Francorum illustrissimi filia, ortus, titulum utriusque regni, non tam ex antiquo[4] verum sed ex novo, habet. A.D. 1422. Henry VI. born, [A.D. 1421.]

Libet autem diem nativitatis ejus arridente oculo considerare, ut habeat dominus meus quasdam causas originis suæ jocundas, et conjecturas felices. Non enim sine causa contigit quosdam nobiles viros in quibusdam diebus pluris meriti congregasse quam in aliis. Unde et si die Martis Beato Thomæ pressuras quasdam et molestias inferebant tortores, felices tamen dies illæ in fine factæ sunt.

Natus est igitur præoptabilis dominus meus rex mense Decembrio, sexto die ejusdem, in festo Sancti Nicholai,[2] quo mense concepta est Beata Virgo, et natus Virginis Filius, Salvator seculorum. Non æquiparo[5] carnalem hominem Conditori et Ejus Beatissimæ Matri, sed hæc ad hoc scribo, ut qui in sancto tempore natus est vitæ

---

[1] *Capitulum Sextum.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] December 6.

[3] *Katerina.*] Added in the margin in C.C.C.

[4] *ex antiquo*] ab antiquo. C.C.C.

[5] *æquiparo.*] C.C.C.—æquipero. MS.

A.D. 1422. Henry VI. quoque sanctitatem imitetur. Consideratione ergo dignum est quod, licet mensis iste duodecimus apud nos sit, decimus tamen est apud Judæos, quoniam ii annum incipiunt in Martio, quod et nos non facimus. Ex antiqua igitur consuetudine tenet mensis iste nomen suum—"December," quasi "decimus imber," ex decade virtutem suam eructans: in quo nobis innuitur ut piissimus rex noster ideo in hoc mense natus est ut denarium Mandatorum menti imprimat,—diligat Deum, et proximum; non sumat Nomen Ejus in vanum; sanctificet Sabbatum; parentes honoret, non occidat; non mœchetur; non furetur; non falsum testimonium loquatur; non concupiscat domum vel uxorem proximi, etc.

Sexto die hujus mensis natus est, ut intelligamus, et hunc esse Sextum Henricum; per quem Deus, ut opinantur multi, aliquod magnum juxta quasdam prophetias secretiores operaturus est. Vel quia laboriosum iter est servare Mandata, quod iter in senario est inclusum, pro eo quod omnia in sex diebus condita sunt; porro, quod in festo Sancti Confessoris Nicholai ad nos venit, et hoc quoque ad rem pertinet. Unus ab infantia in numero devotorum jejunantium præcellit; alter nec voracitati indulget, nec crapula aut ebrietate gravatur. Primus ad pontificale culmen invitus est assumptus; alter in regimine positus quasi unus ex populis manet, Bonum est enim domino nostro quod principia sua Sanctorum exempla sequantur; et congruum est atque optimum quod vita sua per talia erudiatur exemplaria, quatinus populus, hæc cernens; gratiarum actiones Deo reddat debitas. Nec tædeat legentes, quod ego tantillus exhortationem faciam, ut dominus meus aut imitetur Sanctos, aut vitam suam eorum vitæ comparem, cum et Salvator noster in multis factis suis nos esse Ejus sequaces jubeat. Unde ait:—"Discite a Me, quia mitis sum et humilis corde."[1] Et alibi:—"Exemplum

[1] S. Matth. xi. 29.

dedi vobis, ut, quemadmodum Ego feci, ita et vos faciatis."[1] A.D. 1422. Henry VI.

De festivitatibus aliis quæ in hoc mense cadunt, nihil aliud opinamur, nisi quod rex noster eas summa et speciali quadam devotione honoret tanquam introitu suo in hoc mundo propinquas, ut, in exitu ab hoc mundo, magis horum de quibus agunt favore supportetur.

The author refers to his own ordination.

Audivi enim, cum nota esset Londoniæ nativitas regis nostri, vocem ecclesiarum, et strepitum campanarum, quoniam et tunc studens ibi eram, in quarto anno vel quinto ex quo ad sacerdotium promotus sum, et adhuc a memoria non rediit[2] jubilatio illa populorum. Puto enim, quod laus illa et jubilus ille pacis prænostica fuerint quam in diebus vestris, domine mi rex, magna turba prudentium superventuram æstimat. Si exempla non præcederent, talia non scriberem. Nam in Vita Sancti Dunstani legitur quod, nato Edgaro, filio Edmundi regis, cognomento Latus-Ferreum, audivit idem pontifex voces Angelorum in sublimi dicentium:—"Pax Anglorum ecclesiæ nati nunc pueri et nostri Dunstani tempore." Et quoniam ecclesia militans, in quantum potest, se triumphanti conformat, et quandoque etiam operante Sancto Spiritu secretius conformatur, puto illas voces et illas jubilationes populorum quandoque ad verum effectum perventuras, ut fiat sicut populus desiderat, et sicut devoti orant, inter duo regna unum cor, pro eo quod unum Deum, unam Fidem, unum baptisma,[3] utrique possidemus.

Hæc quidem de nativitate regis nostri dicta sufficiant; cui hæc scribo, ut, si multa sint quæ Deus fecit pro eo, ipse quoque de multis et magnis magis debitorem se esse cognoscat.

---

[1] S. John xiii. 15.

[2] *rediit*] recedit. C.C.C.

[3] Eph. vi. 5.

A.D. 1430. The King is crowned at Westminster,

Jam ad ulteriorem ætatem suam progrediens, ea scribo quæ sola relatione didici. Informatione quoque multorum accepi, regem nostrum inclitum in anno octavo ætatis suæ coronam cepisse hujus regni excellentissimi, apud Westmonasterium, prope Londonias, in festo Beati Confessoris, et dulcissimi Consolatoris, Leonardi.[1] Vere dies opportunus, quoniam alter vinculatos solet absolvere, alter autem, plenus pietate, non vult libenter suos vinculare.

A.D. 1431. and at Paris.

Porro in anno sequente iter versus Franciam arripiens, etiam ibidem Parisius diadema decoris assumpsit, in ea Dominica qua solet ecclesia pro introitu Missæ hoc Officium cantare:—"Omnia quæ nobis fecisti, in vero judicio fecisti," et cetera.[2]

O Deus, quomodo possent hæc initia bona ad malum tendere finem, nisi peccata nostra sint in causa! Nam consideratis tempore, itinere, paucitate populi, prænosticorum quoque aptitudine, omnia ad felicem ordinem reducuntur. In itinere ipse nulli nocuit, nullus sibi molestus fuit: cum paucis transiens, contra opinionem multorum, mirabiliter evasit. Clipeo Dei protectus, sub umbra alarum portatus, non quasi fugitivus Ierosolimorum, sed quasi domesticus Apostolorum, sub alis Beatæ Gallinæ, cui Se Christus comparat, pausavit. Et quomodo sub Moyseo carmine canitur, quod unus fugavit mille, et duo decem millia,[3] sic regi nostro concessum est per paucos populos multa penetrare pericula, et cum paucis multorum prosternere mentes.

De duplici ista unctione multi multa sentiunt; ego autem opinionem meam non celabo. Lego enim David regem ter fuisse inunctum; primo a Samuele, in domo patris sui, ut patet Primo Regum XVI.;[4] deinde in Ebron, super Tribum Juda, ut patet Secundo

[1] November 6.

[2] *Omnia quæ nobis fecisti, etc.*] The introit for the twentieth Sunday after Pentecost, *i.e.* October 14 in the year 1431.

[3] Deuteron. xxxii. 30.

[4] 1 Samuel xvi. 13.

Regum, II.;[1] tertio super totum Israel, ut patet ibidem, capitulo V.[2] Has tres unctiones David ad regem nostrum sic applicandas puto, ut primam ad unctionem baptismi, secundam ad unctionem hujus regni, tertiam ad incliti regni Franciæ sublimationem, referam. Et prima quidem in domo patris sui celebrata est; quia cum mundo nascimur, antequam renascimur, filii iræ sumus ad illum patrem pertinentes, et ad illam domum, de quibus in Psalmo xliii.[3] canitur:—"Obliviscere," inquit, "populum tuum, et domum patris tui." Secunda super Judam, quasi minori numero. Tertia super totum Israel, tanquam majori;—congrua quidem similitudine hæc duo regna, Angliam et Franciam, præfigurans.[4] A.D. 1431. Henry VI.

Hanc coronationem regis nostri multi malignæ mentis oblique interpretantes, hanc verborum murmurationem in populo seminabant dicentes:—"Væ tibi, terra, cujus rex puer est, et cujus principes mane comedunt." Eccl. 10.[5] Quod dictum Salamonis ego arbitror trahendum non ad numerum annorum, sed ad immaturitatem morum. Unde et Quarto Regum, XI., dicitur quod Joas absconditus est in Templo cum nutrice,[6] et, post septem annos absconsionis suæ, Summus Sacerdos Joiada tulit eum, et unxit in regem, sicut æstimatur, ante decimum annum ætatis. Et ibidem capitulo XXII. dicitur quod Josias tantum octo annorum erat cum regnare cœpisset.[7] De Beato quoque Edwardo martyre, necnon et de Beato Kenelmo, qui suo sanguine laureatus est, legitur quod valde juvenes regni gubernacula susceperunt. Quid sibi volunt omnia hæc nisi quia "Domini est reg-

[1] 2 Samuel ii. 4.
[2] 2 Samuel v. 3.
[3] Psalm xlv. 10.
[4] *præfigurans*] præfigurat. C.C.C.
[5] Ecclesiastes x. 16.
[6] 2 Kings xi. 2—13.
[7] 2 Kings xxii. 1.

A.D. 1431. Henry VI. num, et Ipse dominabitur gentium?"[1] Cujus et potestas est sub innocente juvene tam pacifice populos judicare, quam sub rigore seniorum. Glossa[2] autem super hunc locum, et Doctor de Lira,[3] favere videntur huic prætactæ expositioni, scilicet quod non ad annorum numerum devolvetur sermo iste, sed ad morum stabilitatem. Unde et primus dicit:—"'Væ tibi terra, cujus rex puer est,' id est, diabolus, qui semper novitate gaudet." Et alter exponit sic:—"'Væ tibi, terra, cujus rex puer est'[4]—moribus et sensu quia ex hoc subditi insolescunt."

Auferat Dominus a regno nostro hos pessimos susurrones, qui libenter mala prophetant; quoniam ego in Domino confido, ante diem mortis meæ videre fines prosperos, dies quoque felices. Habeat amodo dominus meus rex fiduciam quod Qui cœpit opus bonum perficiet.[5] Libenter audiat causas regni, et, justitia mediante, recte judicet. Sic enim de Beato Lodewyco, de cujus stirpe rex noster descendit, legitur:—"Pauperum," inquit, "causas et querulationes ad minus bis in hebdomada in loco patente se ponens personaliter audivit, et justitia mediante, et plerumque misericordia, eos et negotia Fidei per prælatos seu inquisitores ad se delata faciebat celeriter expediri." Sanctum enim, et pium, ac congruum est regiæ majestati, ut nihil jubeat nisi honestum, nihil judicet nisi justum, nihil consulat nisi æquum; et ut ipse in seipso prius componat ea quæ aliis mandare proponit.

---

[1] Psalm xxii. 28.

[2] See Eccl. x. 16.—"Biblia Latina cum Glossa Ordinaria Wallerfridi Strabonis et interlineari Laudunensis. Basle. 1486;" from which the quotation given in the text a few lines lower down is made.

[3] *Doctor de Lira.*] See vol. 11 of "Expositiones Librorum Testamenti Veteris ac Novi; fol. Romæ, 1471."

[4] *puer est*] est puer.—Nic. de Lyra.

[5] Philippians, i. 6.

Unde et verba Magni Theodosii a quodam egregio versificatore sic inveni excerpta :— A.D. 1431. 22 Henry VI.

"In commune jubes si quid censesve tuendum,[1]
Primus jussa sibi,[2] tunc observantior æqui
Fit populus, nec ferre negat cum viderit ipsum
Auctorem parere sibi ; componitur orbis
Regis ad exemplum, nec sic inflectere sensus
Humanos edicta valent, quam vita regentis."

Utinam ad exemplum regis nostri subditi sui inclinarentur, quanta reverentia Crucis signum adorat, cum sibi sacerdotes sui occurrunt. Scio enim quam plurimos robustioris vitæ viros, qui Crucem in non magna veneratione habuerant, exemplo regis nostri devotissimi inclinatos ad majorem fidei fervorem et Christi nostri Signi glorifici amplexum fidelissimum. Sit hoc summe placabile domino nostro, quod ad exemplum suum bonum subditi reformentur. Dicitur etiam de eo, et magna[3] experientia hoc idem probat, quod ecclesiam, aut viros ecclesiasticos, nullo modo molestari vult, Magnum Constantinum sequax optimus in hoc imitans ; quoniam et in veneratione signi Sanctæ Crucis, et in pia tractatione personarum ecclesiasticarum, summus effulsit, de quibus duobus ex exemplaribus historiarum antiquarum probationes extraximus. Cum enim dimicaturus contra Maxentium tyrannum esset, et anxius multa cogitaret, vidit per soporem, ad Orientis partem in cœlo, signum Crucis igneo fulgore rutilare. Cumque tanto visu fuisset perterritus, astare sibi vidit angelos dicentes,—"Constantine, contuita quod est, in Hoc vince." Tunc vero lætus, et de victoria jam securus, signum Crucis, quod in cœlo viderat, in sua fronte Panegyric on the King.

[1] *tuendum.*] tenendum. C.C.C.

[2] *sibi.*] subi. C.C.C.

[3] *magna*] magna etiam. C.C.C.—The latter word is written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1431. Henry VI. designat. Statimque ubi imagines ad honorem triumphantis Senatus erexit, vexillum Dominicæ Crucis in dextera jubet depingi, et subter describi quia in hoc Signo singulari urbem Romanam pristinæ libertati restituit. Cœlitus enim invitatus ad fidem, non mihi videtur illo inferior, cui similiter de Cœlo dictum est,—"Saule, Saule, quid Me persequeris?"[1] "Ego sum Jhesus Nazarenus,"[2] nisi quia hic non adhuc persequens sed jam consequens invitatur. Et exhinc, Signum quod sibi in cœlo fuerat demonstratum, in militaria vexilla transformat. Et hæc quidem de Crucis veneratione.

Ceterum de reverentia ejus ad sacerdotes, sequentia ex libro Ecclesiasticæ Historiæ excerpsi, ubi de præsentia ejus, et residentia in Concilio Nicæno sic loquitur:—"In eo autem Concilio admirabile factum principis non puto reticendum. Cum enim ex omnibus locis episcopi convenissent, et, ut fieri solet, diversis causis inter se jurgia detulissent, interpellabatur frequenter Augustus a singulis, offerrebantur libelli, culpæ proferrebantur, et magis ad hæc, quam ad id pro quo veniebant, animos dabant. At ille diem certum statuit, quo querimonias eorum finiret, receptis a singulis libellis; quos simul omnes in sinu suo continens, ait ad episcopos. 'Deus vos constituit sacerdotes, et potestatem dedit de nobis judicandi. Vos enim a Deo dati estis Dii, et conveniens non est, ut homo judicet Deos, sed Ille solus, de quo scriptum est:—"Deus stetit in synagoga Deorum, in medio autem Deos dijudicans."[3] Et ideo, iis omissis, illa quæ ad fidem Dei pertinent absque ulla animorum contentione distinguite.' Et his dictis, omnes querimoniarum libellos jussit uri, ne innotesceret ulli hominum simulatio sacerdotum." Hæc sunt memorialia pii principis Constantini, futuris seculis imitanda.

[1] Acts ix. 4.
[2] Acts ix. 5.
[3] Psalm lxxxii. 1.

Hic etiam devotissimus rex Henricus in XIX. anno regni sui, duo solemnia fundavit Collegia, et magnas expensas magnamque solicitudinem circa eorum erectionem impendit. In positione quoque primorum lapidum ipse præsentia sua opus decoravit, et summa, ut vidimus, devotione hanc fundationem suam Summo Deo obtulit. Primum est apud Etone prope Wyndesoris, in honore Beatæ Mariæ Virginis jam erectum. Alterum apud Cantabrigiam, in honore Sancti Nicholai Pontificis stabilitum: de cujus fundatione et regis præsentia in primi lapidis positione, quidam egregius versificator tales composuit versus:— A.D. 1441. Henry VI. Foundation of Eton College, and King's College, Cambridge.

"Luce tua, qui natus erat, Nicholae sacer, rex
Henricus Sextus hoc stabilivit opus.
Unctum qui lapidem postquam ponebat in Eton,
Hunc[1] fixit, clerum commemorando suum.
M. Domini C quater quadraginta monos patet annus,
Passio cum Domini concelebrata fuit.
Annus erat decimus nonus regis, sed Aprilis,
Hic flectente genu rege, secunda dies.
Confessor Nicholae Dei, cum Virgine sumpta
Cœlis, da regi gaudia summa Poli."

His autem Collegiis duos præfecit valentes Præpositos, quorum unum novi, Magistrum Willielmum Milligton. Ipse enim Cantabriggensi Collegio præsidens, in scholasticis inquisitionibus et profunda litteratura ac maturis moribus multos antecessores suos præcellit. Alter autem dictus Magister Willielmus Waynflete, non multum priori dissimilis, carus, ut putatur, domino regi habetur, non tam propter scientiam salutarem, quam vitam cœlibem. William Millington appointed to King's College, and Wm. of Waynflete to Eton.

---

1 *Hunc.*] In the margin is inserted as a gloss the word "lapidem."

A.D. 1441. Henry VI.

Non legimus reges qui cultum divinum ampliaverant[1] aut ab adversariis devictos, aut fama deturpatos; quoniam dignum erat ut qui se Domino subdiderant, colla suorum subderent populorum. Testis hujus rei unus inter ceteros est Edgarus, post divisionem hujus regni primus monarcha.[2] Hic quadraginta monasteriorum, ut fertur, fuit fundator, e quibus Glastonia,—ubi et quiescit,—Habingdonia, Burgus Sancti Petri, et Thorney principaliora sunt. Videte fundatorem sanctōrum locorum, ad quantam famam, sit sublimatus. Legitur enim de eo, quod in quodam fluvio juxta urbem Legionum, quæ nunc Cestria dicitur, in quadam scapha ipse ultimo sedens et clavum gubernaculi manu tenens, sex vel octo regulis ad remos locatis, subvectus sit. Qui dum tali pompa remigando ad palātium suum revenisset, fertur suis dixisse optimatibus, tunc demum quemquam successorum suorum gloriari se posse regem Angliæ fore, si tali pompa tot sibi obsequentibus regibus potiretur. Nec mirum, si tanto dominatu floruit, quoniam non solum ad custodiam maris ipse scaphas mittere solebat, verum sed et præsentia sua hanc custodiam omni anno decoravit. Collectis enim quadringentis navibus, omni anno cito post Pascha, centum ad quamlibet partem Angliæ destinavit, sicque æstate insulam circumnavigavit; hieme vero judicia in provincia exercuit.

The Author deplores the decline of the English navy.

Quid nobis prosunt exempla horum illustrium virorum legere, et non imitari? Opinio enim multorum est, quod si mare navigio nostro servaretur, multa bona inde provenirent, mercatoribus salvum daret conductum, piscatoribus securum accessum, regni habitatoribus pacificam pausationem, ipsi quoque regi nostro magnum

---

ampliaverant] ampliaverunt. C.C.C.

[2] *monarcha*] monarchus. C.C.C.

gloriæ cumulum. Cachinnant[1] de nobis inimici, et di- A.D. 1441.
cunt:—"Tollite navem de pretiosa moneta vestra, et imprimite ovem, vecordiam vestram in hoc arguentes," quoniam qui solebamus victores esse omnium populorum ab omnibus jam populis vincimur. Dictum est ab antiquis, quod murus Angliæ mare sit; et, cum inimici nostri supra murum sint, quid putas facient accolis improvisis? Quoniam hoc negotium jam per multos annos neglectum est, idcirco hoc contigit, quod jam naves paucæ sunt, nautæ quoque rari, et ii ineruditi, quoniam non exercitati. Auferat Dominus opprobrium nostrum, et suscitet spiritum fortitudinis in gente nostra! Falsas et fictas amicitias aliarum nationum denudat, ne subito veniant super nos dum non timemus.

Porro in anno XXIII.[2] regni sui, celebratæ sunt A.D. 1444. The King marries Margaret of Anjou.
solemnes nuptiæ inter ipsum et dominam Margaretam, filiam regis Ciciliæ, benedictionem præbente venerabili Magistro Willielmo Eschw, Episcopo Saresberiæ, Quas nuptias reputat omnis populus fore Deo gratas et regno, pro eo quod pax et abundantia frugum cum ipsis adventarent.[3] Ego autem precor Cœlestem Regem ut Ipse dextra Sua sic eas protegat, ut nunquam amor eorum dissolvatur, ut fructus ventris eis concedatur talis, de quo ait Psalmista:—"Uxor tua," inquit, "sicut vitis abundans in lateribus domus tuæ. Filii tui sicut novellæ olivarum in circuitu mensæ tuæ. Ecce sic benedicetur homo, qui timet Dominum."[4]

Dignum autem duxi in præsenti loco aliquas de bono Considerations on marriage.
conjugii inserere notulas, ad laudem sacramenti, maxime propter eos qui ita virginitatem laudant, ut quasi nuptiarum contubernium damnare videantur. Quod autem res bona sit conjugium, non modo ex eo probatur,

---

[1] *Cachinnant.*] C.C.C. The MS. Cotton has "Cachinunt."

[2] *Porro in anno XXIII., etc.*] In the margin, opposite this passage, are written, in the MS. C.C.C., the following words, in a different hand from the text:—"Compilator adulavit."

[3] *adventarent*] adventarunt. C.C.C.

[4] Ps. cxxviii. 3, 4.

A.D. 1444. Henry VI. quod Dominus conjugium legitur instituisse inter primos parentes,[1] sed etiam quod in Chana Galileæ, in nuptiis interfuit Christus,[2] easque vinculo[3] commendavit, aqua in vinum conversa: Qui postea virum etiam uxorem amittere prohibuit, nisi causa fornicationis.[4] Cum igitur conjugium sacramentum sit, et sacræ rei signum, scilicet conjunctionis Christi et ecclesiæ, sicut apostolus ait ad Ephesios V., recitans illud Gen. ii.:— "Scriptum est," inquit, "'Relinquet homo patrem et matrem, et adhærebit uxori suæ, et erunt duo in carne una.' Hoc enim sacramentum magnum est. Ego autem dico in Christo et in Ecclesia.[5] Non mirum si honorabile sit hujusmodi contubernium, quod tanto mysterio applicatur. Sicut enim inter conjuges conjunctio est secundum consensum animorum, et secundum permixtionem corporum, sic ecclesia Christo copulatur voluntate et natura, quia id vult cum eo, et Ipse formam assumpsit de natura hominis. Copulata est enim sponsa sponso spiritualiter et corporaliter, id est, caritate ac naturæ conformitate. Hujus autem utriusque copulæ figura est in conjugio. Consensus enim conjugum copulam spiritualem Christi et ecclesiæ, quæ fit per caritatem, designat. Commixtio vero sexuum illam significat, quæ fit per naturæ conformitatem. Hæc sunt generales commendationes veterum, quas in sublimationem conjugii depromserunt. Ego autem, ad singularia descendens, opto ut dominus meus in conjunctione illa sancta quam nunc præoccupavit, permaneat, et ipsa bona conjugii, ab Augustino[6] assig-

[1] Gen. i. 28.

[2] S. John ii. 1, 2.

[3] *vinculo.*] The word "miraculo" has been here inserted in a later hand in C.C.C.

[4] S. Matth. v. 32.

[5] Ephes. v. 31, 32.

[6] See S. Augustine Contra Julianum Pelagianum, lib. V. cap. 12. "Ego autem . . . præter fidem quam sibi debent conjuges, ne fiant adulteria; et prolem, . . . adverti etiam tertium bonum quod esse in conjuibus debet, maxime pertinentibus ad populum Dei, quod mihi visum est esse aliquod Sacramentum, ne divortium fiat."

nata, fideliter possideat;—fidem, ne conjugale rumpat vinculum; prolem, ut et amanter suscipiatur, ac religiose educatur; sacramentum, ut hoc conjugium nunquam separetur. Hæc enim bona sunt conjugii. Sit conjugium hoc ut olim Tobiæ et Saræ, de quo dicitur, quod cum timore Domini nuptiarum convivium celebrabant!—Tobiæ ix.[1] Sit causa pacis populorum, sicut ipsis Judæis concessa est pax in conjugio Hester!—Hest. 2.[2] Sit tantæ et tam sanctæ dispositionis, ut in fine de conjunctis digne verificetur:—"Beati qui ad cœnam nuptiarum Agni vocati sunt!"—Apoc. xix.[3] A.D. 1444. Henry VI.

Hic rex devotissimus in XXIIII. anno regni[4] sui, in illa solemni peregrinatione qua Sanctorum memorias visitavit, locum Fratrum Heremitarum Sancti Augustini in villa de Lenne in suum accepit favorem, promittens sacerdotibus suis ibidem manentibus, vivo vocis oraculo, quod amodo locus ille sibi et successoribus suis de corpore suo legitime procreandis immediate pertineret. Ipse quoque et successores sui, ut præmittitur, fundator sive fundatores non solum nomine essent, sed rei veritate. Acta sunt autem hæc in Ad Vincula Sancti Petri,[5] sub anno Domini M.CCCCXLVI.; regni vero incliti domini nostri, ut præmissum est, anno XXIIII. A.D. 1446. The King visits the Austin Friary at Lynn.

Et quoniam multi bilingues,[6] et mendaciis pleni, post recessum regis dixerunt, ut audivi, quoniam locus habuit fundatorem ab ipsis primordiis suis, cujus tamen nomen nesciunt insinuare, idciro scriptor præsentis negotii, qui et dominum regem in hac materia informavit, videns famam suam in parte læsam, eo quod domino regi informationem mendosam præsentaverit,

---

[1] Tobit viii. 16.
[2] Esther ii. 18.
[3] Rev. xix. 9.
[4] *in XXIIII. anno regni.*] In the margin opposite these words, in the MS. C.C.C. is written,—"Data Compilatoris."
[5] August 1.
[6] *bilingues.*] C.C.C.—"biligues" in MS. Cotton.

A.D. 1446. Henry VI. ut aiunt, veritatem hujus rei ex antiquis cartis[1] et sigillis hic lucide manifestat:—

Account of its foundation and growth. Sciendum ergo est, quod dicti Fratres Heremitæ Sancti Augustini intraverunt primo villam de Lenne ibidem commoraturi, anno regni regis Edwardi Primi post conquestum XXII. Hoc autem invenitur probabile ex ipsa licentia regis, qui scripsit[2] se filium Henrici regis, et hunc numerum annorum regni sui in carta sua consignat, cuidam bonæ conversationis viduæ, quæ dicta est Margareta Suthmere.[3] Terra[4] autem ab eadem primo fratribus ipsis concessa habuit in longitudine centum pedes, et XXIIII. in latitudine. Sic locus noster, in angusto inceptus, per parcellas multas concrevit, sicut in diversis cartis regiis declaratur. Nam aliam cartam habemus, Humfrido de Wykyn[5] concessam, de terra sua; et alteram Roberto de Wykyn,[6] pro messuagio suo. Item aliam Thomæ de Lexham,[7] pro suo. Item aliam largioris gratiæ quibusda mde Lenne,[8] pro quinque messuagiis.

---

[1] *ex antiquis cartis, etc.*] A full account of these ancient charters, with all the necessary references, will be found in Appendix V. to the Introduction to Capgrave's "Chronicle of England," p. 367.

[2] *scripsit*] scribit. C.C.C.

[3] *Margareta Suthmere.*] Escæt. Norf. 22 Ed. I. n. 102. pro Mess. in Lenne, ex dono Marg. de Suthmere. Pat. 23 Ed. I. 12.

[4] *Terra.*] Terram in both MSS.

[5] *Humfrido de Wykyn.*] See Calendar. Inquis. ad quod damnum, (Ed. 1803), 3 Ed. III. num. 36, page 290,—"Humfredus de Wykene pro Priore de Lenne Episcopi.

"De una placea terræ ibidem, manso Fratrum Sancti Augustini contigua, continente 154 pedes in longitudine et 48 in latitudine."

[6] *Roberto de Wykyn.*] See Calendar. Inquis. ad quod damnum, 12 Ed.III. Num. 4, page 303.

"Robertus de Wykyn.

"Dedit Priori de Lenn Episcopi unum messuagium cum pertinentibus ad elargationem mansi sui."

[7] *Thomæ de Lexham.*] See Calend. Inquis. post mortem. i. 200.

"Thomas de Lexham pro Priore Sancti Augustini de Lenn. Lenn unum messuagium cum pertinentibus."

[8] *quibusdam de Lenne.*] Thomas Drew; William Bittering; John de Conteshale; John Drew; Robert de Cokesford and Agnes his wife; Richard de Honton, and Alice his wife; Alice, relict of Richard Cosyn, and William Pilton, the executors of Richard Cosyn. See Capgrave's Chronicle of England, p. 369. Note (1).

Videte, suavissime domine, locellum vestrum ex multis parcellis adunatum; et cordi vestro imprimite triginta ibi esse sacerdotes, præter diaconos, subdiaconos, et minoris ordinis plantulas juveniles numero quasi sexdecim; et cogitate quoniam hi specialem memoriam vestri habent. Si autem aliqua specialiora cupitis, jubeat magnanimitas vestra, et servi vestri obtemperabunt. A.D. 1446. Henry VI.

Valeat in ævum vestra regalis magnitudo, ad honorem Dei, ecclesiæ fulcimentum, et regni [1] solidamen. [2]

---

[1] *regni solidamen*] regni concordiam. C.C.C.

[2] *solidamen.*] A leaf of the vellum is here left bare, as if the writer had intended to have continued the history of the reign of Henry VI. He appears, however, to have altered his mind, as he has written at the bottom of the leaf, for the direction of the Scribe, the following words:—"Make no space, but writh forth—INVOCATO." This last word, it will be observed, is the first word of the "Tertia Pars."

TERTIA PARS.

Introductory.

Invocato igitur Sancti Spiritus auxilio, Tertiam hujus Libri Partem aggredior, et hujus Nominis illustres viros toto orbe dispersos, diversorum graduum et dignitatum, ad notitiam regalem reduco; hoc solum expostulans, ut oculum innatæ clementiæ suæ a me non avertat, etsi ego præsumptor tantillus supra vires meas opus assumpsi, quod non condignis verborum flosculis velavi. Nam et fides et animus magis magisque operantur, quam verba.

Sunt autem subsequentes viri illustres numero ut nunc in hac Parte duodecim. Spero enim vita comi[1] plures me inventurum, et quosdam qui nunc vivunt etiam operi huic adunaturum, ad laudem et magnificentiam regiam, qui, nominis gloriosi titulo laureatus, ejusdem nominis multos probos, immo probatissimos viros, consona interpretatione tenet.

[1] *comi*] comite, MSS.

De Henrico Rege Dacorum.

Capitulum Primum.

Henricus, rex Dacorum, regnavit circa annum Domini M.CC.;[1] vir plenus fide, et omni justitia in populo suo pollens, adeo ut ad martyrii agonem percipiendum dignus effectus sit. A.D. 1241. Eric VI. King of Denmark.

Quo autem ordine, vel quibus personis interemptus sit, brevi quidem verborum decursu piis auribus describo.

Fuerat circa annum Domini nongentesimum dux quidam in regno Boëmorum, nomine Spigneus.[2] Hic quidem ad prædicationem quorumdam Catholicorum ad fidem convertitur; juste ac religiose populo suo præsidens. Post quem Wencilaus, filius ejus, justitia et sanctitate præclarus, successit. Cui frater ejus Borelaus, piis et sanctis ejus actibus invidens, inique, ut Cayn, adversabatur, insidias parans; et, ad principatum aspirans, injuste eum occidit. In cujus sanguinis ultione Octo imperator, Boëmiam bello per XIV. annos vexans, tandem ipsum Borelaum devicit; non enim justitia Dei aliter æqua lance procederet, nisi homi- Account of his death.

---

[1] M.CC.] Capgrave says "circa." Eric VI. succeeded Waldemar the Victorious on the throne of Denmark, in the year 1241.

[2] Spitigneus I.

A.D. 1241. Eric VI. King of Denmark.

cida deponeretur. "Nescit enim ipsa justitia Dei," ut ait Crysostomus, "patrocinium dare criminosis."[1] Et quoniam nullus ad tam gloriosum finem martyrii dignus est nisi in quo bona vita præcessit,—ut ait Augustinus,[2] —ideo hujus viri Wencilai, immo Sancti Martyris, vitam, antequam ad dicti Henrici agonem perveniam, satis necessariis causis describendam puto.

Wenceslas.

Licet enim esset princeps, et magnarum divitiarum possessor, tamen tantæ humilitatis atque devotionis fuit, quod cum uno servo, clam de nocte consurgens, ad silvam propriam ibat, et, propriis humeris ligna deferens, ante fores viduarum et pauperum clam deponebat, eorum inopiam propriis laboribus, propter Christum, relevans, cum, et sine tanto labore, copiosissime eos poterat relevare. Colligebat etiam spicas de nocte in agro suo, et clam virgas excutiens, et manu propria hostias faciens, distribuit per ecclesias.

He appears in a vision to King Henry.

Hic ergo Beatus Martyr, post trecentos annos passionis suæ, regi Dacorum, Henrico, quiescenti per visum apparuit, et quod suo genere mortis mori deberet revelavit. Digne quidem dux regem, congruentius autem martyr martyrem, ad Cœlorum regna evocavit. Admonuit etiam regem in somnis ut is sibi apparens Wencilaus diceretur quondam Boëmorum dux, et ob invidiam a fratre occisus. Addidit quoque ut locum sepulturæ ejus digno perquireret studio; et, translato corpore ejus, basilicam erigeret, ubi ad honorem Domini divina celebrarentur.

---

[1] "*Nescit . . . . criminosis.*"] This quotation is made from the forty-second of the fifty-four Latin Homilies usually incorporated with S. Chrysostom's works, but probably not written by him. The words have been slightly altered by the Chronicler; they are as follows in the original:—"Quia nescit justitia Dei patrocinium dare criminibus." St. Chrysostom's works, (Ed. 1588,) col. 885. A.

[2] *ut ait Augustinus.*] "Qui enim Sanctos Martyres, in quantum potuerit, imitari noluerit, ad eorum beatitudinem non poterit pervenire." D. August. Opera., vol. X., Sermo XLVII., col. 1267., B., (Ed. 1569.)

Rex autem Henricus, a somno consurgens, stupefactus de visione, principes atque pontifices convocans, interrogat de Sancto Wencilao,—de quo nunquam ante mentionem audiverat,—cujus regionis, cujus status, existeret; vel quo loco conditus est post agonem. Et certificatus a quibusdam de conciliariis quod princeps fuisset Boëmiæ is quem quæreret, longoque intervallo temporum ante dies illos passionis agone trucidatus, credidit visioni prætactæ, et eam tanquam de Cœlo datam accepit; misitque solemnes nuncios pro reliquiis dicti Sancti, quas, magno desiderio adeptus,[1] juxta se collocavit, fabricans super eas nobile monasterium, quod Rivalla dicitur, Ordinis Cisterciensium; magnarumque possessionum copiositate basilicam replens. A.D. 1241. Eric VI., King of Denmark.

Verum est autem quod Dominus in Evangelio aiebat:—"Qui recepit justum in nomine justi mercedem justi accipiet."[2] Namque quoniam rex iste Henricus justum ducem Wencilaum, immo Sanctum Dei Martyrem, ita veneratus est ut domum suo honori congruam ædificaret in terris; a justo Judice et hoc quoque meriti est adeptus, ut ad palmam martyrii felix rex felicem ducem sequeretur. Non longo autem intervallo temporum recurrente, rex iste, piis actibus repletus, ab iniquo fratre suo nomine Abel interemptus est. A.D. 1250. The death of Eric VI.

O Abel, tanto nomini ingratissimus! quid agis et contra nomen tuum, et contra justitiæ tramitem? Primus enim homo nominis tui non solum vitam suam pudicitia[3] et sanctitate, sed et martyrio consecravit. Et tu, vilissime hominum, homicida et conspirator, non solum hominem occidisti, sed et fratrem, sed et dominum. Nomini sanctissimo infamiam procurasti, famosum nomen deformasti, et, posteriori seculo pessimum exemplum relinquens, leges offendisti. Utinam glorioso

---

[1] *quas . . . . adeptus*] quos . . . . adeptos. MSS.

[2] S. Matth. x. 41.

[3] *pudicitia.*] C.C.C.—Written "pudicia," by mistake in the MS. Cotton.

A.D. 1250. Eric VI., King of Denmark.

certamine fratris tui veniam consequaris, qui, non solum dum passus est, verum et in gloria coronatus, pro persecutoribus exorat.

Hæc sunt beati Regis Henrici gesta quæ ad nostra tempora pervenire potuerunt. Sunt qui dicunt eum post mortem lucidis coruscare miraculis, et omnibus morbis remedia præstare, operante Domino nostro Jesu Christo, Cui sit honor et gloria in secula seculorum. Amen.

De Henrico Rege Franciæ.

Capitulum Secundum.

Henricus, rex Franciæ, filius venerabilis viri Hugonis Capeth, regnavit in Francia circa annum Domini Millesimum tricesimum: vir magnarum virtutum, cui et semper jocundum fuit ecclesias venerari; servos Domini, quos castos et pudicos noverat, novo semper benevolentiæ modo sustentare. A.D. 1031 Hen. I. of France.

Hic Willelmum, ducem Normannorum, et postea regem Angliæ, conquestorem, dum puer esset, enutrivit; cui et subsidium præstitit, non solum ad terram nativam adquirendam, verum, ad regnum Angliæ, quod sibi jure hereditario competebat, obtinendum. He assists William Duke of Normandy.

Yvo[1] autem Carnotensis dicit[2] Hugonem Capeth genuisse Robertum, et Robertum hunc Henricum. Henricus ergo iste, secundum eum, regnavit circa annum Domini M.XXXI., et regnavit annis XXVII.

---

[1] *Yvo . . . . commisit.*] In MS. C.C.C. the whole of this passage is written in the margin, as an addition made at a later time, but by the same hand as the text.

[2] *dicit, etc.*] "Robertus, filius Hugonis, Rex Francorum XXX., annis XXXV. . . . .

"Henricus, filius Roberti, Rex Francorum XXXI., regnavit annis XXXII." See fol. 259, *b.* of "Ivonis Ep. Carnotensis Chronicon de Regibus Francorum." (Paris 1585.) It will be observed that Capgrave says that Henry's reign lasted twenty-seven years; while Ivo, whom he quotes, says that it lasted thirty-two years. He died in the year 1060, in the thirtieth year of his reign. See, however, the foot note [1] at page 148.

A.D. 1056. He resigns his crown to his son Philip.

Hic, cum tot annis regnasset, et devotioni ac piis operibus deditus esset, ut majorem vacationem ad ea quæ animo conceperat haberet, filium suum, de consensu præsulum et procerum regni, fecit inungi, et

A.D. 1058. Baldwin, Count of Flanders, is made regent.

coronari in regem Remis, per Gervasium, Archiepiscopum Remensem, anno Domini M.LVI.,[1] et secundo sequente anno Baldwyno, Comiti Flandriæ, Philippum adhuc puerum, et regimen regni commisit.

Genealogy of the Kings of France from Antenor, written by Henry I.

Hic, inter cetera memorialia quæ egit, catalogum regum Franciæ, sive genealogiam,[2] congregavit, a primo inhabitatore gentis suæ usque ad id tempus[3] quo ipse regnavit; cujus exemplar, ad perpetuam famam suam, hic inferendum[4] decrevi.

Primus enim inhabitator hujus terræ fuit Antenor, a genere Trojanorum, qui, de excidio veniens, constituit civitatem in finibus Panoniæ, nomine Sicambriam: qui, nobilissima bella exercens, post se duces reliquit non mediocriter nobiles.

Et, mortuo Antenore, Trojano optimo, convenerunt duces eligentes sibi Principem, qui scismate divisi, duos nominaverunt,—Tergotum et Franconem. Ab isto Francone putant quidam provinciam Franciæ sumpsisse cognomen. Mortuo Francone, electus est dux Marconurus;[5] qui et genuit Pharamundum, primum regem Francorum. Pharamundus genuit Clodoveum Crinitum, a quo reges Francorum Criniti vocati sunt. Clodoveo vero decedente, Moroveus, cognatus ejus,

---

[1] *anno Domini M.LVI.*] This date is incorrect, but it is given in both MSS. Philip I. was crowned May 25, 1059. Some authorities give as his regnal year the year of his father's death, 1060; others the year 1061, in which he assumed the government of his kingdom; while others date the commencement of his reign from the death of Baldwin, the regent, in the year 1067.

[2] *genealogiam*] "genelogiam" in the MSS.

[3] *tempus*] temporis. C.C.C.

[4] *inferendum*] inserendum. C.C.C.

[5] *Marconurus*] Marcomirus. C.C.C.

regnavit, a quo reges Franciæ etiam ad tempus Morovingi vocabantur. Moroveus genuit Childericum. Chidericus Clodoveum, quem Sanctus Remigius baptizabat. Clodoveus genuit Clotarium. Clotarius genuit Chilpericum. Chilpericus genuit Clotarium Secundum. Clotharius autem genuit Dagobertum famosissimum. Dagobertus genuit Clodovium.[1] Clodovius autem genuit ex Batilde, Regina sancta, tres filios, Clotarium, Childericum, atque Theodoricum. Theodoricus autem genuit Clotarium, hujus prosapiæ ultimum regem. Genealogy of the Kings of France.

Post quem regnavit Hildericus, qui postea, mundum fugiens, reliquit regnum, et tonsus atque in monasterio trusus est, Pipino rege effecto.

Ex alterius autem prosapia generationis, ex filia Clotarii regis genuit Ausbertus Arnoldum. Arnoldus genuit Sanctum Arnulphum, post Metensem Episcopum, qui antequam episcopatum acciperet, genuit Anchisem. Anchises autem genuit Pipinum regem. Pipinus genuit Karolum Magnum. Karolus autem genuit Lodewycum imperatorem; Lodewycus genuit Karolum Calvum imperatorem: Karolus Calvus genuit Lodewycum, patrem Karoli Simplicis. Karolus Simplex Lodewycum. Lodewycus Lotharium. Lotharius Lodewycum, hujus prosapiæ ultimum regem.

Lodewyco itaque defuncto, Francorum proceres statuerunt super se Hugonem Capeth ducem, qui fuit filius Hugonis[2] Magni ducis. Hugo vero dictus Capeth genuit tres filios,—Hugonem dulcissimum regem, qui obiit sine herede; et hunc Henricum amantissimum, de quo nunc agitur; et Robertum, postea Burgundiæ ducem. Henricus vero supradictus genuit Philippum regem, qui, postea mundum relinquens, monachus effectus est. Genuit et Hugonem, qui in Commotione magna Ierosolomitana inter ceteros nobiles primus affulsit; ubi et

[1] *Clodovium*] Clodoveum. C.C.C. | [2] *Hugonis.*] Hugoni. MSS.

Genealogy of the Kings of France.

glorioso certamine, inter bella quæ cum inimicis Crucis Christi iniit, morte succubuit.

Hæc est genealogia regum et ducum Francorum usque ad hunc regem deducta; cujus actus memoriales alios non vidi.

De Henrico, filio Regis Ricardi[1] Romanorum et Imperatoris Almaniæ.

Capitulum Tertium.

Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans. fl. circa A.D. 1264.

Henricus igitur, filius Ricardi regis Romanorum, vir magnæ fortitudinis et probitatis fuit. Nam et sicut ejus gesta manifestant, cum Edwardo Primo post Conquestum, dum adhuc princeps esset, multos labores et sudores pertulit in diversis mundi partibus, semper egregie agens.

Congruum est autem ejus parentelam describere, ut sciamus ex qua prosapia vir iste descenderat, et quanta propinquitate huic genti nostræ colligatus est. Pater ejus, Ricardus, frater fuit Henrici Tertii, regis Anglorum, et filius Johannis regis ejusdem gentis. Dictus enim rex Romanorum et dictus Henricus Anglorum fratres uterini fuerunt.

Ricardus igitur, ex dono patris, dux Cornubiæ fuit, et postea probitate sua, mundo innotescente, electus est in imperatorem Romanum, circa annum Domini MCCLVII., die Dominica ante Annunciationem;[2] et eodem anno, apud Aquisgranum, in die Ascensionis[3] est coronatus. Hic duxit filiam comitis Provinciæ, nomine Cinciam, mulierem, ut aiunt, miræ pulchritudinis et formositatis, ex qua suscepit hunc inclitum filium, bello et armis strenuum.

---

[1] *Ricardi.*] Ricardi Regis. C.C.C.

[2] March 18th.

[3] Ascension Day fell on May 17th in the year 1257.

A.D. 1264. Qui, cum ad annos venisset nubiles, duxit filiam nobilis viri Gastonis de Bierna, cui præ ceteris Aquitaniæ magnatibus, quæ vulgari nomine Vasconia dicitur, in divitiis et potentia, necnon et terrarum magnitudine et latitudine, nullus poterat æquiparari.

He assists Prince Edward against Simon de Montfort. Battle of Lewes.

Hic Henricus in omni conflictu quo princeps ille Edwardus, Henrici regis filius, intererat, comes extitit[1] individuus. Nam et in bello de Lews, quando[2] barones contra eundem regem Henricum insurrexerunt, cum eo inventus est. Sed et in bellis et periculis, quibus idem princeps se immiscuerat, dum pro jure patris sui et suo in Vasconia permanserat, ab eo non recessit. Meminerat, ut credo, illud Sapientis elogii, ubi dicitur:[3]—"Frater qui adjuvatur a fratre, tanquam civitas firma, et judicia velut[4] vectes urbium."[5]—Vult dicere quod colligatio duorum duplex confert solamen; unum ex parte fortitudinis, aliud ex parte consilii. Nam fortitudo quidem magis videtur roborata in combinatione ubi sapienter et provide procedant,[6] quam in unius solitudine. Sed et consilium duorum magis ad secreta investiganda, et veritatem perscrutandam, aptum est, quam unius: ideo Sapiens fortitudinem virorum sic amantium civitati firmæ, et concilium eorum vectibus consolidatis non incongrue comparavit.

A.D. 1269. He accompanies Prince Edward on the Crusade.

Postquam ergo hi venerabiles viri in justo titulo regni labores eorum felici termino consummaverant, tunc, inito consilio, ad Saracenorum partes se diverterunt, æstimantes obsequium se præstare Deo, si inimicos Crucis a Fidelium finibus expellerent. Quod et fecerunt. Nam primo cum rege Cipri morati sunt, ubi marina pericula experti, in bellis animosiores de cetero sunt effecti. Deinde per certas provincias

---

[1] *extitit*] C.C.C.—extititit. MS. Cotton.

[2] *quando*] quum. C C.C

[3] Proverbs xviii. 19.

[4] *vĕlut*] quasi. C.C.C.

[5] *urbium*] C.C.C. This word is written "verbium" in the MS. Cotton.

[6] *procedant*] procedunt. C.C.C.

transiens iste Henricus,—nam et Princeps Edwardus certis ex causis ad Angliam reversus est,—multa notabilia opera exercuit, ad laudem quidem Dei, honorem patriæ, et populi liberationem. Testatur enim magnus Augustinus in multis opusculis, eos qui licita bella inferunt, et ob justissimas causas, summe placere Deo. Unde et in epistola ad Bonefacium comitem super hac re ita scribit:—"Noli[1] æstimare[2] neminem Deo placere posse qui armis[3] bellicis ministrat. In his erat sanctus David, cui Deus[4] tam magnum perhibuit testimonium. In his etiam illius temporis plurimi justi.[5] In his erat sanctus ille[6] centurio qui Domino dixit:—'Non sum dignus ut intres sub tectum meum.'[7] Hoc ergo primum cogita, quando armaris ad pugnam, quia virtus tua, etiam illa[8] corporalis, donum Dei est. Sic enim cogitabis de dono Dei non facere contra Dominum."[9] Hæc est exhortatio Beati Augustini ad bellantes, ut justo titulo, justa causa, et justo animo pugnent. A.D. 1269.

Nam quod et[10] justo animo pugnaverit vir iste patet, quoniam, cum post multos annos contra Saracenos et fidei inimicos dimicasset, tandem in fine vitæ suæ, ad Viterbiam veniens, pro pace ecclesiæ non mediocriter laborabat. Erat enim tunc schisma in ecclesia, propter quod proceres totius orbis illuc con-

---

[1] *Noli æstimare . . . . Dominum.*] See "D. Augustini Opera," vol. ii., col. 837. C., Basle, 1569, with which this quotation has been collated.

[2] *æstimare.*] In both MSS.—existimare. Pr. Ed.

[3] *armis.*] In both MSS.—in armis. Pr. Ed.

[4] *Deus.*] In both MSS.—Dominus. Pr. Ed.

[5] *illius . . . . justi.*] In both MSS.—plurimi illius temporis justi is the order of the words in the Pr. Ed.

[6] *sanctus ille.*] In both MSS.—et ille. Pr. Ed.

[7] S. Luke vii. 6. The remainder of the verse is given in the printed edition, and also some other examples, *e.g.*, Cornelius, and the Soldiers who came to S. John Baptist, which have been omitted by Capgrave.

[8] *illa.*] In both MSS.—ipsa. Pr. Ed.

[9] *Dominum.*] In both MSS.—Deum. Pr. Ed.

[10] *et.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1270. fluxerunt, ut tunicam Domini inconsutilem ab omni scissura schismatis servarent.

Contigit autem tunc Simonem de Monte-Forti, et Gwydonem, fratrem ejus, huic interesse Concilio, qui ab annis multis odio habuerant hunc principem benignum, et patrem ejus, ac avunculum ejus regem. Pro qua causa, et publicis opprobriis, ipsum, licet falso, calumniabantur, dicentes eum patrem eorum occidisse, dum rumor et rebellio baronum ebulliret in Anglia contra regem. Ipse autem Henricus excusationes pacis proferebat, rogans ut ista ad alias dies tractanda expectarentur; magis congruum existimans si inter cognatos et notos tractarentur, quam inter eos ad quorum notitiam nuda veritas provenire non posset. E contra, ipsi filii iniquitatis, locum sibi patulum videntes, et tempus opportunum, in uno solemni festo, post Missarum solemnia, dum idem Henricus, aliis egressis, orationi et devotioni deditus esset, et causam ecclesiæ sedulis precibus Domino[1] commendasset, irruentes in eum pessime homicidæ trucidaverunt, et corpus ejus in loco sancto vulneribus impletum reliquerunt. Super quo commoti cardinales ipsos homicidas excommunicationis vinculo ligaverunt, qui postea, multis infortuniis vexati, condignas[2] sustinuere pœnas suæ transgressionis.

A.D. 1271. He is slain at Viterbo by Guy and Simon de Montfort.

O vere beatum virum dixerim, qui in bona et sancta obiit causa. Si enim, ut apud Augustinum[3] habetur, causa facit martyrem, cur non iste dicendus sit martyr, ignoro. Causa ecclesiæ erat in quo laborabat; locus sanctus erat in quo occubuit; falsa calumnia sibi imponebatur; et hæc omnia patienter sustinuit. Videant qui hæc legunt quid super hoc

---

[1] *Domino.*] C.C.C. — Dominio. MS. Cotton.

[2] *condignas*] dignas. C.C.C.

[3] See vol. ii. col. 646 g, of "S. Augustini Opera," Paris, 1679.

sentiunt; ego nil aliud sentio nisi quod reputo eum beatum et sanctum. A.D. 1271.

Corpus ejus post ruinam ea lege conditum est ac seratum qua condiuntur corpora de longe translatura.[1] Nam acta sunt hæc sub anno Domini M.CC.LXXI., tertio idus Maii,[2] et delatum est corpus ad Londoniam eodem anno. Corde quoque ejus, apud Westmonasterium, prope scrinium reliquiarum Beati Edwardi nobiliter collocato, corpus ejus usque Hayles honorifice deportatum est atque reconditum; ubi expectat Resurrectionis gloriam, quam in fine seculi speramus venturam. His burial.

---

[1] *translatura.*] Thus in both MSS. | [2] May 13.

De Henrico, Comite Campaniæ, postea Rege Ierosolymorum.

Capitulum Quartum.

A.D. 1180. Henry II., Count of Champagne.

Henricus, comes Campaniæ, etiam titulo quodam ad gentem nostram pertinet, eo nobis gratior, quod tanti viri vel in terra nostra nati sunt, vel ad nationem nostram consanguinitatis jure pertinent, qui optimis moribus floruerunt. Tritum proverbium est apud multos,—"Non locum sanctificare hominem, sed hominem locum." Sic et terram nostram optimæ famæ reddunt ii qui in ea famose militaverunt; vel qui, alibi florentes, huic regno quadam sanguinis propinquitate pertinebant.

Ut cetera taceamus quæ de isto rege quasi dubia audivimus, hoc solum nobis sub brevitate notandum est, quod natus est ex Maria, ducissa Campaniæ, quæ fuit soror Philippi, regis Francorum, ex parte patris, et soror Ricardi, regis Angliæ, ex parte matris; ut sic bonus dux tam Francorum quam Anglorum comitiva stipatus minus timeret insidias sibi fraudulenter intemptatas.

A.D. 1190. He accompanies Richard I. to the Crusade.

Hic in magna Commotione Ierosolimitana, inter regem Angliæ et Franciæ medius existens, eorum lites sæpius pacificavit; tanquam[1] amator pacis, nunquam pacis fœdera violavit.

---

[1] *tanquam.*] et tanquam C.C.C.

O jocundum tempus, quum Principes mundi sic adunati loca Passionis Dominicæ tam avido animo perquirebant. Sed, postea[1] dicti reges Loca Sancta deseruerant,—nam et rex Franciæ in terram suam reversus est, et rex Angliæ, Ricardus, a duce Austriæ carcere mancipatus est contra omnes leges, quippe qui peregrinus fuerat, et solum propter Christum militaverat,—post hæc omnia dictus Henricus dux in terra illa expectans, multas civitates cepit et munitiones. A.D. 1190.

Et post multa pericula bellorum et viarum, ac discrimina infirmitatum et penuriæ, subjecta est Christianis ipsa sancta Civitas Ierusalem. Ubi congregati Milites Templi et Hospitalarii unanimi animo tanquam excellentissimum Principem elegerunt hunc virum in regem Ierosolimorum, et filia regis ejusdem nuper mortui[2] relicta utrosque omni solemnitate inthronizaverunt; ubi multis annis contra Saracenos dimicans semper victor extitit, præbente Illo fortitudinem pro Quo dimicavit. A.D. 1192. He is chosen King of Jerusalem.

Memini autem me legisse in quibusdam antiquioribus Chronicis, quæ de sanctis Patribus mentionem faciunt circa loca illa manentibus, quod rex iste plures eorum, dum senes et debiles sive infirmi essent, ad palatium suum duci fecerat et foveri, quod et propriis manibus sæpius eum fecisse memorant. His good deeds.

Et quoniam[2] de Militibus Templi fit hic mentio, placet, ad solatium legentium, aliquid de eorum Ordine inserere, quatenus et fortissimi juvenes forsan quandoque animentur ad eorum Ordinem observandum. Legimus enim quod anno Domino M.CXXVIII., tempore Honorii Papæ Secundi, et Stephani, Patriarchæ Ierosolomitanæ, Ordo Militiæ Templi sedem sui Ordinis apud Ierusalem statuerunt. Inceptus vero est Ordo Some account of the Knights Templars.

---

[1] *postea*] postquam. C.C.C.

[2] *mortui.*] The MS. C.C.C. here adds the words "ei copulata."

[3] *Et quoniam . . . . licitum . . .*] In MS. C.C.C. this passage is written in the margin and along the bottom of the page, having evidently been added at a later period.

A.D. 1192. iste a principio sub anno Domini [M.][1] CXXII. per Hugonem de Paganis et Gaufridum de Sancto Adzemario, viros venerabiles, et quosdam usque ad numerum nonarium, qui fuerunt primi institutores; qui se postmodum astrinxerunt voto solemni ac professione, in manu Patriarchæ prædicti, ut peregrinos Christianos ad Sepulchrum Domini venientes defenderent a latronibus, et stratas publicas custodirent, more Canonicorum Regularium, in obedientia, castitate, et sine proprio, militantes Æterno ac Summo Regi, Domino Jesu Christo. Datusque est eis[2] primo albus[3] habitus sine Cruce: et data fuit eis regula, quam Sanctus Bernardus conscripsit rogatu illorum Militum. Et postea in Concilio Generali, tempore Eugenii Papæ, tres Cruces rubeas vestimentis exterius affixerunt, et vexillum Bausanum assumpserunt: vestes quidem albas, in signum munditiæ, deferentes; per Cruces autem rubeas, Martyrium designantes, eo quod sanguinem proprium, secundum instituta regulæ, pro defensione Terræ Sanctæ effundere sunt professi, et inimicos Crucis Christi viriliter expugnare, et ad mandatum ejus qui præest, non impetuose, neque inordinate, sed prudenter, ad bella procedere; nec sit eis licitum terga fugiendo dare, vel sine mandato reverti.[4]

Hæc autem de Militibus interseruimus, quoniam rex iste inter eos residens, princeps eorum erat. Et hæc sunt quæ de gestis hujus viri ad nostra tempora pervenerunt.

---

[1] M.] omitted in both MSS.

[2] *Datusque est eis, etc.*] Thus in the Cotton MS.—These words were originally written by Capgrave in the MS. C.C.C. "Datusque habitus," etc. The words "est eis primo" have been added in the margin at a later period, and probably upon the revision of the text, in the latter MS.

[3] *albus.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *terga . . . . reverti.*] This line, the last of the passage, not originally written in the text of the MS. C.C.C., but added in the margin at the bottom of the page, at a later period, has been cut off by the binder.

De Henrico, Germano Lodewici Regis Franciæ.

Capitulum V. Quintum.

Henricus iste, germanus Lodewici, regis Franciæ, ad dicationem[1] Beati Bernardi totaliter ad Deum conversus, mundi gloriam, amicos, et sodales relinquens, sed et excellentissimum principatum, ad quem sanguinis jure succreverat, hæc omnia, veluti stercora, reputans, instigante se Bono Spiritu, monachatur, et apud Clarevallem cum bono magistro disciplinatus discipulus mansit. A.D. 1122. Henry, Archbishop of Sens.

Habuit et tunc Ecclesia Gallicana multos preclaros viros apud se fulgentes, Milonem Morinensem, et Alvisum Attrebatensem, Godefridum Ligonensem, Hugonem Anticiodorensem, Joselinum Suessionensem, Giffridum Carnotensem, Albericum Buturicensem, et Bernardum Clarevallensem. Hi omnes, in firmamento ecclesiæ simul exorti, universo mundo fidei et doctrinæ sparserunt lucem. Sed et specialitate quadam fulgoris Bernardus præfulgens lucidas stellas sub se produxit; e quibus unus in Apostolatum electus est, cui nomen Eugenius, cui et idem Sanctus librum grandis sententiæ et luculenti[2] sermonis conscripsit, quem et "De Consideratione"[3] nuncupari voluit. Alter quoque, Henricus scilicet, primo ad Episcopatum Belvacensem, deinde ad Senonensem assumptus est, cui et Bernardus, ut quidam autumant, illam solemnem misit epistolam,

---

[1] *dicationem*] prædicationem. C.C.C.

[2] *luculenti*] luculentis. MSS.

[3] "*De Consideratione.*"] "Divi Bernardi 'De Consideratione' ad Eugenium Pontificem Maximum." See col. 1118, E., of S. Bernard's works; (Ed. 1586).

A.D. 1122. quæ intitulatur,—"Ad Henricum Senonensem."[1] Incipit autem epistola sic:—"Domino et Venerabili Henrico Senonensium Archiepiscopo," *et cetera.*

Hic oritur murmur apud mundanos, cum vident hominem aptum scientia, et moribus satis ornatum, mundum relinquere, et sub jugo Domini suavi quiescere. Dicunt enim eos necessarios mundo, et magis Deo placere cum bene vivunt; alios quoque ad bonæ vitæ semitas aut ducunt, aut compellunt, quam cum soli Deo vacant. Super qua re diversi diversa sentiunt, et pro parte sua quisque rationes probabiles indunt.

Opinionem tamen meam non celabo. Si sit unus princeps qui tam necessarius esset ad populum, quod, eo absente, populus periclitaretur, puto quod non bene ageret si labores omittat, et otio ac sancto studio intendat. Exemplum hujus rei tenet Beatus Martinus, qui, inter labores et molestias officii sui positus, Cœlum concupivit; propter Dominum tamen et profectum filiorum mori noluit; unde addixit:—"Domine, si adhuc populo Tuo sum necessarius, non recuso subire pro eis laborem: fiat voluntas Tua!"

Sic et princeps iste, videns alios suæ gentis et sui generis regno habiles, vidit quoque debilitatem in se ad hujusmodi regimen, et pertimuit, elegitque magis habitare in Domo Domini tanquam servulus, quam præesse ut dominus; sicque paulatim de virtute in virtutem crescens, carnis[2] vitam suam beato fine concludens, edormuit in Domino.

---

[1] See S. Bernard's Epistles (Ed. 1586).

[2] *carnis*] tandem carnis. C.C.C.

De Henrico Duce Lancastriæ.

Capitulum Sextum.

Henricus, dux Lancastriæ, ab ineunte ætate bonis moribus pollens, semper Dominum præ oculum habens, in Cujus timore juvenis nutriebatur, nunquam ab Ejus mandatis recessit; vir, ut putabatur, totus sobrius; verba ejus composita et ornata nullam speciem adulationis aut mendacii admittebant. A.D. 1351, Henry, Duke of Lancaster.

Operibus bellicosis sic intentus, et in his ita circumspectus erat, ut "Pater Militum" diceretur. Dum juvenis esset, et amor laboris sibi suavis putaretur, omnes frontes guerrarum Paganorum, Turcorum, sive Saracenorum avide quæsivit.[1] Unde primo apud Pruciam, deinde apud Rodis, tunc apud Ciprum, et plura Orientis loca, deinde Garnadiam et Hispanorum partes transiens, eos qui Crucem Christi ac Ipsum Christum in contemptu habent, aut fugavit aut occidit. In quibus bellis tantæ famæ et nobilitatis erat quod alii mundi juvenes, Franciæ et Alemanniæ ducum et dominorum filii, sub ejus alis et ejus vexillo solebant militare. Propter enim frequentiam armorum pater juvenum informandorum præcipuus tenebatur. His warlike exploits.

In ætate virili de comite Derby dux effectus est Lancastriæ. He is made Duke.

In cismontanis partibus, et præcipue in guerris inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ commotis, strenuissimus militum reputatus est. Nam nunc sub alis et phalangis regis sui, nunc ab illo segregatus, ubicumque ardua His courage.

---

[1] *avide quæsivit*] quæsivit avide. C.C.C.

A.D. 1351. profundaque guerrarum pericula ingruere sentiebat, ad illas patrias militando aciem divertebat. Socios secum in armis, ut plurimum, nobiles comites habebat,—comitem Northamptoniæ, comitem Suthfolchiæ, comitem Salesbury, et comitem Staffordiæ. Quando rex Angliæ otiosus erat ab omni eventu bellicoso, iste tamen non minus semper ducentos milites audacissimos ad stipendia retinuit, inter quos erant nominatissimi, Thomas Uffordiæ filius comitis Suthfolchiæ; Thomas Engayn, et Thomas Banester.[1]

His successes in France.

Iste dux fortissimus reges Francorum sæpius terruit, duces devicit, milites fugavit, ac multos conflictus bellicos exercens, provincias multas conquisivit, oppida calcavit, villas et castra suo vigore subegit, rebellesque combussit. Coram rege Franciæ ducem de Brymeswik de fraude et proditione accusavit, et in civitate Parisius eum duello aggressus feliciter devicit. Britanniam Minorem vero, domino suo Johanni de Monte-Forti rebellem, non sine[2] grandi periculo devicit, et eam dicto duci restituit. Karolum autem de Bloys, qui terram illam hostiliter invaserat, captum captivum secum duxit, cum multis aliis captivis, ad Angliam.

De quo sic scripsit Bridlyton in versibus suis somnialibus:—

"En[3] Longum-Castrum rutilans armis velut astrum,[4]
Læsis emplastrum veniet, findens[5] quasi rastrum:
Unabit[6] staurum, confortabit bene taurum."[7]

He receives the command of the

Vir quoque iste in magno illo passagio quod factum est in Francia, tempore Edwardi, belli ductor erat, et

---

[1] *Banester*] Banaster. C.C.C.

[2] *sine.*] C.C.C.—sue is written by mistake in the MS. Cotton.

[3] *En.*] In both MSS.—Nam. MS. Digby.

[4] *astrum*] C.C.C. and MS. Digby.—The MS. Cotton has "austrum."

[5] *findens.*] In both MSS.—cedens. MS. Digby.

[6] *Unabit.*] In the MS. Digby, is written the word "ditabit" in the margin.

[7] "*En longum . . . taurum.*"] See the Carmen Vaticinale of John Bridlyngton, MS. Bodley, Digby, 168, fol. 7 b, line 7, with which these lines have been collated.

ad ejus nutum rex cuncta commiserat. Unde et idem Bridlyngton loquens de rege Edwardo, principe Edwardo, et dicto Henrico ait:— A.D. 1352 army in France.

"Hi tres consortes sunt armis undique fortes."[1]

Alias legitur eum missum fuisse ad Papam, pro tractatu pacis inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ. Socii autem itineris erant comes Arundeliæ, Willielmus Bateman, Episcopus Norwicensis, et Magister Michael Narborw, postea Episcopus Londoniarum. Supereminenter autem vir iste Papæ et Cardinalibus placens quasi reportavit quod voluit. A.D. 1353 He is sent to the Pope to treat for peace between England and France.

Quoniam justus erat in omnibus, nihil contra justitiam petiit; et quoniam hoc quod justum est non debet apud tantam sanctitatem restringi, ideo diximus eum quod voluit impetrasse. In fine vero dierum suorum, cum ab armis cessaverat, Christo soli suam militiam dedicans, monasteria multa fundavit, ecclesias multas erexit, hospitalia constituit, et plura opera pietatis exercens, quasi Thobias[2] effulsit. Orationibus supra modum occupatus, nunquam videbantur labia illa a colloquiis divinis et sancta exercitatione tacere. Abstinentiam habuit sibi tanquam carissimam. Sciebat enim gulam matrem esse vitiorum, novercamque virtutum; ideo ne officinis ejus præoccuparetur, melius putabat sibi illud Augustini, —"Minus egere quam habere."[3] Eleemosynas sine cessatione dabat. Non potuit oculus suus pauperem respicere, et inanem præterire. Causas pauperum et viduarum personaliter audiebat, et eas secundum Deum et rectam conscientiam tractabat. Sub ornatu satis splendido, et secundum morem hujus regni, glorioso, cilicio clam indutus, carnem prorsus spiritui servire coëgit. Librum devotum tempore suæ infirmitatis composuit, cujus titulus est, "Mercy, Gramercy;" in Enumeration of his virtues.

---

[1] "*Hi tres . . . . fortes.*"] See MS. Digby, fol. 9 b, line 34.

[2] Tobit xiv. 2.

[3] *quam*] quam plus C.C.C.

A.D. 1353. quo, quasi in quodam confessionis opusculo, omnia sua facta ad memoriam reducebat, de male gestis veniam a Deo petens; et hoc ad illam partem libri pertinet quæ "de Misericordia" intitulatur. At in alia parte quæ de Gratiarum actione condita est, de omnibus prosperis sibi a Deo impensis, gratias agit.

A.D. 1361. He dies at Leicester. Post longam vitam optima dissolutione discessit apud Leycestriam, tertio decimo die mensis Martii, anno Domini M.CCCLXI., sepultusque[1] in novo monasterio, quod ipse fundavit. In annualibus[2] capellæ de Walsingham continetur quod Henricus iste dedit urnam illam cum aliis[3] Beatæ Virgini, in qua expendit[4] quasi CCCC. marcas. Et ibidem etiam scribitur quod pater hujus Henrici, qui fuit comes Lancastriæ, et non dux, obtulit Beatæ Virgini salutationem angelicam, cum lapidibus pretiosis, secundum æstimationem quorundam ad valorem etiam CCCC. marcarum.

A.D. 1359. John of Gaunt marries Blanche, daughter of Henry. Hic post se duas generosas reliquit filias: unam duxit Willielmus dux Hollondiæ et Selondiæ; alteram Johannes de Gandavo, tunc comes Richemundiæ. Et per hanc præclaram dominam postmodum idem Johannes dux Lancastriæ effectus est. De nuptiis ejus taceo; factæ enim sunt apud Redyngges, et celebratæ sub anno Domini M.CCCLIX., præstante benedictionem domino Roberto Episcopo Saresberiæ, et in honore novæ Dianæ hastiludia per dies aliquot continuata sunt, primo apud Redingges, deinde apud Londoniam.

Ex ista domina Blancha et dicto duce descendit invictissimus rex Henricus Quartus; cujus anima in sinu Abrahæ permaneat cum proavis suis in æternum. Amen.

---

[1] *sepultusque*] sepultusque est. C.C.C.

[2] *In annualibus.*] The passage which here commences, and ends with the words "Hic post se," is written in the margin at the bottom of the page in the MS. C.C.C., at a later period, but by the same hand.

[3] *aliis*] libis. C.C.C.

[4] *expendit*] expendidit. MSS.

De Henrico Bown, Comite Herfordiæ.

Capitulum Septimum.

Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, A.D. 1199.

Henricus autem bonæ memoriæ, strenuus miles in armis, et fortis fuisse in fide refertur. Super omnia autem Locorum[1] Sanctorum peregrinationes diligens, pius scrutator sanctarum reliquiarum fuit. Hic non solum naturali prosapia, verum sed ex beneplacito regis, factus est comes Herfordiæ. Nam et circa annum Domini M.CCXX.,[2] sub Henrico Tertio, rege Angliæ, et Honorio Tertio Romæ floruit. Recte quidem sibi ternarius competebat, quia, ut audivimus, sæpe pro fide et pace ecclesiæ se scutum obtulit.

He opposes the encroachments of King John.

Nam et tempore Johannis, regis Anglorum, contra insolentias ejusdem regis se opponens, filius mortis fuisset, si dextera Domini, sub Cujus protectione justi obumbrantur, defensus non fuisset. Et quando Interdictum Generale super hanc terram nostram tot annis invaluit, ipse quoque multis singultibus Deum exorabat ut non sineret eum ex hac luce migrare, quousque pax ecclesiæ redderetur. Habuit vir justus quod petiit. Unde et, apertis ecclesiis, in tantum gaudium erumpebat, quod votum fecit se, cum tempus opportu-

---

[1] *Locorum.*] C.C.C.—The MS. Cotton has "Loco."

[2] *Circa annum Domini* M.CCXX. . . . . *floruit.*] Henry de Bohun, son and heir of Humphrey de Bohun, descended from Milo de Gloucester, who was created Earl of Hereford in 1140, was created Earl of Hereford in the year 1199. He died in the year 1220.

A.D. 1199. num venisset, visitaturum Sancta Loca, Sepulchrum scilicet Dominicum, et alias in civitate Ierosolimorum memorias[1] sanctas.

His pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

Nil amplius super eo legimus, nisi quod post hæc, assumpto secum Sayero de Quyncyne, comite[2] Wyntoniæ, Ierosolimam transiit nunquam reversurus. Annuente enim misericordissimo Domino, de Ierusalem terreno ad cœlestem assumptus est, ubi visio sempiterna, ubi pascua, secundum Salvatoris vocem, sive quis ingrediatur, sive egrediatur, saluberrima[3] invenietur. Hanc benedictam patriam peregrini nostri adepti, pro nobis, quos post se derelinquerunt, solicite orantes, ante conspectum Agni orant dicentes:—"Benigne fac in bona voluntate Tua, Domine, ut ædificentur muri Ierusalem."[4]

---

[1] *memorias.*] C.C.C.—The MS. Cotton has "materias."

[2] *comite*] Written "comitem" by mistake in the MSS.

[3] S. John x. 9.

[4] Psalm li. 18.

De Henrico de Bellomonte.

Capitulum Octavum.

Henry de Beaumont, A.D. 1309.*

Henricus iste, juxta nominis sui proprietatem, vir fervidus fuisse fertur, et cito commotus. In promisso tamen nullus fidelior, in consilio nullus secretior, et ubi periculum imminebat, nullus constantior. Sub rege Edwardo Tertio militans, innumeros labores passus, nunquam visus est aliter, quam strenuus miles ageret, agere. Nec ira commotus injuriam fecit, nec amore allectus contra veritatem ausus suos progredi voluit.

A.D. 1332. He assists Edward Baliol in his attempt to gain the crown of Scotland.

Sub hoc tempore quo ipse robore juventutis effloruit, scilicet sub anno Domini M.CCCXXXII., venit quidam dominus Edwardus de Baylol ad regem Edwardum in in Anglia, asserens se in regno Scotiæ jus habere hereditarium. Cui Henricus iste de Bellomonte, comes Atheliæ, et dominus Ricardus Talboth, et multi alii nobiles adhæserunt, asserentes etiam se jus habere ad terras et possessiones in dicto regno, vel ratione juris hereditarii, vel ratione uxorum suarum. Hi omnes igitur uno animo ad regem Edwardum properant, exponentes jus suum, petieruntque a dominatione sua ut concederet eis gratiose ut per terram Angliæ possent ingredi terram Scotiæ, ad hereditatem suam, sive hereditates, recuperandas. Sed dominus rex ipsos ab hac re compescuit, aiens non esse regiæ majestati congruum ut fratrem suum regem Scotiæ per se, sive per suos sustineret vexandum. Nam et rex Scotiæ,

* A.D. 1309.] In this year he was summoned to Parliament as a Baron;

A.D. 1332. David de Brus, sororem regis Edwardi acceperat in consortem. Permisit tamen idem rex eos per mare Scotiam intrare; et, speciali contemplatione quam erga dictum Henricum habuit, eos a jure suo impedire noluit.

The battle at Dunfermline.

Unde et hi tres simul adunati mare intrant, et juxta abbatiam de Dumfermelyn ripas terræ illius intrare contendunt. Scoti autem, hæc advertentes, ripas præoccupant, viriliter obsistunt; quod cernens

Bravery of Henry de Beaumont.

dictus Henricus, illis, cum paucis peditibus ripam arripiens, ceteris sequentibus, præbuit audaciam, ita ut cunctus populus terram illam, Scotis fugatis, ascenderet. Expectantes igitur ibidem per aliquot dies, venerunt contra eos in pugnam, ut æstimabatur, quasi XL. millia virorum, quos nostri, Deo protegente, et justa concomitante causa, aut fugaverunt aut occiderunt. Erat autem numerus nostrorum vix duo millia. Si cui incredibile videatur, a tam paucis tam multos trucidatos et fugatos, legat illud Deutronomii,[1] quomodo persequebatur unus mille, et duo fugarent decem milia; et non mirabitur quomodo paucis, quibus propitius est Deus et amica veritas, subjecti sint multi. Denique et in hac pugna, sicut idem Henricus referre solebat, plures a Scotis interfecti sunt quam ab Anglis. Irruentes enim unusquisque in alterum, opprimebat quilibet vicinum, et super alio jacente secundus jacebat,

The Scots are defeated.

tertiusque lapsus est, prementibusque et ad spectaculum festinantibus iis qui retro fuerant, totus exercitus corruit.

Hæc sunt quæ de hujus Henrici gestis utrimque[2] invenire potui. Ceterum utrum hereditatem suam tunc acquisierint in parte, sive in toto hi venerabiles viri, mihi adhuc incognitum est; sed nec ad hoc opus multum [pertinere] noscitur, quippe cum memoriam Henricorum Illustrium solam commemorandam suscepi,

[1] Deuteron. xxxii. 30.

[2] *utrimque*] utruinque, MSS.

et maxime horum de Bellomonte nomina conscribenda delectaret, cum servus eorum existam, et speciali affectione huic generationi alligatus sim. In obsidione etiam Berwyk legi hunc virum solicitudine magna sibi nomen assumpsisse, et nunc in aqua, nunc in terra fortiter dimicasse. A.D. 1333. Henry at the siege of Berwick.

Dicitur[1] etiam de isto viro magnifico quod, ex regali prosapia Francorum ortus, et ex stirpe Sancti Lodewici regis, tanquam unus de junioribus filiis a regali hereditate propter multos antiquiores longinquus, terram Franciæ reliquisse, et quæsisse sibi gloriam per exercitium armorum et eventus bellicosos. Et primo quidem in Italia, in bellis ecclesiæ notabiliter progrediens, deinde in bellis Scotiæ sub Edwardo Tertio specialiter ab ipso vocatus, viriliter dimicans, egregie egisse memoratur. His marriage.

Tandem mediante rege, quandam dominam et heredem magnam duxit, in comitatu Lincolniæ, cujus principale dominium, ut puto, incolæ dicunt esse Folkingham. Sic in hac terra stabilitus[2] generosam post se reliquit propaginem.

Sepultus est autem in una abbatia Ordinis Cisterciensis, quæ vocatur Vallis Dei.

---

[1] *Dicitur . . . . . Vallis Dei.*] This life of Henry de Beaumont originally ended with the word "dimicasse," all that follows having been added in the MS. C.C.C. in the margin at the bottom of the page, in a different ink, and at a later period, but in the same hand.

[2] *stabilitus.*] C.C.C.—The word is mis-spelt "stabitus" in the MS. Cotton.

De Henrico le Spenser, Episcopo Norwicensi.

Capitulum Nonum.

A.D. 1370. Henry le Despenser made Bishop of Norwich.

Henricus igitur iste de genere Dispensatorum ortus est, miles in omnibus strenuus, et qui in robore juventutis sola bella sitire visus est. Quoniam autem tunc Anglia summa pace gaudebat, ad Romam festinans, ibi pro Apostolico jure reluctans, rebelles ecclesiæ vi et vindicta oppressit. Multis igitur annis in hac militia perseverans, vacante Ecclesia Norwicensi, Papa huic viro illam contulit, specialissimis litteris eum regi commendans.

His popularity.

Adepto igitur Pontificali gradu, multis annis populum suum pace gubernans, omnium subditorum corda retinuit. Largus erat in dandis, lætus in consolandis ; et, pauperum omnium optimus pater effectus, eorum vota in amorem suum retorsit. In rumore populi, quando ribaldi per totam Angliam debacchati sunt, ipse non mediocriter se habebat. Dominis, Militibus et aliis Nobilibus se propter timorem abscondentibus, ipse palam processit.

A.D. 1381. He quells the sedition of Litster and others.

Audierat, enim, dum cum rege esset circa partes Londoniarum, quosdam infimæ fortunæ homines in grege suo insurrexisse, et sibi titulos dominationis assumpsisse ; qui et equitabant cum turba multa, quærentes magnates ut occiderentur. Quorum principaliores erant hi,—Jek Lister, et alii tres, Sceth, Trunch, et Cubith. Condolens igitur pius Pastor gregem suum tot luporum morsibus laceratum, Londonias deserens, venit, sicut decuit, in adjutorium populo suo. Et primo apud Cantabriggeam quosdam de hac scelerata turba inveniens, alios trucidavit, alios incarceravit, alios vero ad propria remisit, recepto prius juramento quod de cetero ad talia non exirent. Deinde cum venisset apud

Hiklyngham, ubi unum molendinum viam strictiorem reddit inter Cantabriggeam et Thetfordiam, obviam habuit domino Thomæ Morle et alteri militi dicto Brews. Illi autem præsentaverunt sibi ibidem tres dictos malefactores, Sceth, Trunch, et Cubith. Non enim audebant sine speciali jussione regis morti eos tradere. Sed iste optimus vir, zelum Phinees habens in pectore, populique periculum considerans, duxit eos secum apud Wymundham, ubi confessos fecit decollari. In dicto enim loco plures malefactores extiterunt, qui, metu mortis territi ulterius insurgere non sunt ausi.[1] A.D. He puts the rebels to death at Wymondham.

Veniensque bonus Pastor ad principaliorem civitatem suæ Diœcesis, scilicet Norwycum, vidit domorum et locorum scissuram per dictum populum furiosum, dum sic agitarentur, factam, et condoluit. Nam in absentia sua unus principalis capitaneus eorum, nomine Jekke Lister, adjuncto sibi multo populo, invitis civibus civitatem intrans, multa horrenda fecit, specialiter in dilapidatione domorum et locorum, in quibus aliqui nobiles vel legis vel regis familiares habitabant. Sedition at Norwich, headed by John Litster:

Consimili modo fecit, adjuncta sibi turba, unus ribaldus de Cantia, dictus Wat Tyler, in civitate Londoniarum. Sed Henricus iste episcopus et pastor bonus, qui videns lupum non aufugit, sed posuit se discrimini, sciscitatus est a civibus ubi caput totius mali et totius hujus infamiæ inveniretur. At illi dixerunt eum circa Walsham-market, et circa Gymyngham circumvagare; ubi maximas vires rusticorum et ribaldorum habebat. Tunc demum jubet Episcopus domesticos suos ad partes illas se transferre, cum quibus et ipse semper primus fuit. Dixit enim his qui secum In London by Wat Tyler.

[1] *ausi.*] In the margin at the bottom of the page is written in another hand the following passage, but the first word, and the reference to the part of the text to which the note belongs, have been erased:— ". . . . Bedewita, quam nunc pratum Beati Edwardi vocant, venientes, Johannem Candishe, et monasterii Priorem occiderunt; post, tamen, hujus Spenseri opera capti, pœnas luerunt."

A.D. 1381. erant Episcopus: — "Melius est ut unus malus et sceleratus moriatur quam tota gens pereat, quæ, licentia ab eo obtenta, latrocinatur et furescit, occidendo eos qui criminis conscii non sunt." Et hæc dicens venit ad villam dictam Felmyngham ubi idem capitaneus mansionem habebat. Interrogati vero ii qui illic habitabant ubi esset, dixerunt ipsum pridie fuisse apud Thorp-market, ubi proclamari publice fecerat, ut omnes qui volebant bonum regni et communitatis, ipsum sequerentur usque ad Walsham; ubi intendebat, ut dixit, contra tyrannidem supervenientis Episcopi militari acie populum defendere. Et super hac re omnes robusti villarum adjacentium ipsum secuti sunt, et ibi sunt. Ad referentem ait Episcopus:— "Benedicaris, fili, quoniam non immiscuisti te malis hominibus nec populo pestilenti."

The Bishop disperses the mob, takes Lister and beheads him.

Sicque usque ad Walsham properans, invenit exitus viarum lignis turribusque ac aliis impedimentis præoccupatum. Sed bono tractatu Episcopi et aliorum virorum qui convenerant, populus universus se reddidit, gaudentes quod recederent cum pace. Ipse Jekke Lister, murum transiliens, abscondit se in segete. Quod videns quispiam de populo nunciavit Episcopo. Quæritur traditor et invenitur; captus decollatur; in quatuor partes divisus per provinciam mittitur ad Norwicum, Jernemutham, Lennam, et locum mansionis suæ; ut discant rebelles, et contra pacem surgentes, quo fine terminabunt.

A.D. 1383. He is sent into Flanders by the Pope to oppose Heretics.

Hæc sunt acta hujus venerabilis Episcopi. Et post hæc, jussu Papæ, contra schismaticos in Flandria Crucesignatus, signa desolationis ibidem dereliquit; et plura fecisset, nisi fraude et deceptione quorundam militum, Helmham et Tryveth, non fuisset impeditus. Semper enim ad punitionem malorum promptus erat; nullus hæreticus tempore suo inter populum habitare potuit. Nec regnaverunt in diebus suis perjuratores in questis et assisis, sicut nunc; quippe qui potenter opprimebat eos et diligenter inquisivit.

A.D. 1383. The lawfulness of an Ecclesiastic bearing arms discussed.

Si sit alicui dubium,[1] an episcopus sive persona ecclesiastica poterit in quibusdam casibus arma ferre, et populum ad bellum animare ; et, quoniam multi de hac re conscientiam faciunt, allego hic processum Decretorum XXIII., Quæstione VIII. *Si in Morte*:"[2] ubi sub paragrapho sic continetur :—Ecce quod Nicholaus Papa prohibet episcopos seculari militia occupari, et nec etiam contra maritimos piratas permittit eos ad pugnam accedere. Quomodo ergo Leo Papa adversus Saracenos urbem egreditur, et, ut eos procul a littore arceat, populum undique convocat, et suorum injurias præsentialiter vindicat ? atque Gregorius milites ad arma invitat ? Sed notandum est quosdam episcopos Levitica tantum portione esse contentos, qui, sicut in Dei sorte tantum numerantur, sic Ipsum Deum solummodo in hereditatem accipiunt, dicentes :—"Dominus pars hereditatis meæ."[3] His nihil est vere cum principibus hujus seculi, quia temporalia penitus abjiciunt, ne eorum occasione legibus imperatorum obnoxii teneantur. Talibus nulla occasio relinquitur occupationis secularis militiæ, quia, cum de decimis et primitiis vivunt, tanquam filii Summi Regis in omni regno a terrenis exactionibus liberi sunt, ita ut dicere valeant : —"Venit Princeps mundi hujus, et in Me non habet quicquam."[4]

Porro sunt alii qui, non contenti decimis et primitiis, prædia, villas, castella, et civitates possident ; ex quibus Cæsari debent tributa, nisi imperiali dignitate immunitatem ab hujusmodi promeruerint. Quibus a Domino dicitur :—"Reddite quæ sunt Cæsaris Cæsari, et

---

[1] *alicui dubium.*] dubium alicui. C.C.C.

[2] *Si in Morte.*] See page 479 of Gratian. Decret. Lib. Quinque, Rom. 1726. "Si in morte Langobardorum me miscere voluissem, hodie Langobardorum gentes nec regem, nec duces, vel comites haberet, atque in summâ confusione esset divisa. Sed quia Deum timeo, in mortem cujuslibet hominis me miscere formido."

[3] Psalm xvi. 5.

[4] S. John xiv. 30.

A.D. quæ sunt Dei Deo."[1] Quibus et Apostolus ait:—"Reddite omnibus debita; cui tributum tributum, cui vectigal vectigal."[2] Et quidam Doctor compendiose hunc processum sic declarat dicens:—"Qui ergo tantum de eleemosynis et decimis vivunt, prœliis interesse prohibentur, quia cum iis nihil commune principibus. Qui vero castra et hujusmodi regalia a principibus habent, prœliis interesse permittuntur, non tantum contra Paganos vel Saracenos, sed etiam contra falsos Christianos alios opprimentes. Propria tamen manu nulla causa cuiquam clericorum in Sacris Ordinibus constitutorum arripere licet arma."

Hæc dicta sunt in excusationem, vel magis confirmationem, factorum hujus venerabilis episcopi; qui contra schismaticos et pacis perturbatores, sive Fidei inimicos, solum militavit.

A.D. 1406. Death of Bishop le Despenser. Obiit autem in vigilia Sancti Bartholomæi,[3] sub anno Domini M.CCCCVI., sepultus apud Norwycum. Cujus Epitaphium hoc est:—

"Henricus natus le Spenser, miles amatus,
Præsul sacratus, hic Norwycensis humatus.
Florens progenie regali virgo putatur,
Et pugil Ecclesiæ, per eum quia[4] Schisma fugatur.
Lollardi mores damnavit deteriores.
Insurrectores perimens necat et proditores.
Spirat ad astra boni Pastoris mens matutinis,
Dicendo 'Domini est terra.' Fuit sibi finis
M. quadringeno Vigili Sex Bartholomæi,
Christo, Sereno Regi, peragrat requiei."[5]

---

[1] S. Mark xii. 17.

[2] Romans xiii. 7.

[3] August 23.

[4] *quia*] C.C.C.—The MS. Cotton. has "qui."

[5] *Cujus Epitaphium . . . requiei.*] The addition of the epitaph of Bishop le Despenser to the account of his life has been made in the margin and along the bottom of the page in the MS. C.C.C.

De Henrico, Archidiacono Huntingdonensi.

Capitulum Decimum.

A.D. 1135. Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon.

Henricus, Archidiaconus Huntyngdoniæ, vir laudabilis vitæ et florentis ingenii fuisse ejus scripta manifestant.[1] Quo autem tempore fuit, vel ubi sublimatus, vel quid senserit de fine mundi, inter ceteros[2] scriptores ex Chronica sua, sparsim[3] singulis locis collegimus. Sub quo autem tempore scripsit, testatur libro VIII., qui intitulatur "De Summitatibus Rerum," ubi ait:[4]— "Hic est annus qui comprehendit Scriptorem, annus scilicet[5] tricesimus quintus regni gloriosi et invictissimi regis Anglorum Henrici: Annus sexagesimus nonus ab adventu Normannorum gentis excellentissimæ, temporibus nostris, in Angliam:[6] Annus ab adventu Britannorum ad hanc eandem insulam[7] secundus millesimus et ducentesimus et sexagesimus quintus: Annus ab initio mundi quintus millesimus trecentesimus et tricesimus sextus."[8] Et de promotione sua loquens infra eodem libro, in epistola ad Walterum, ait:— "Septem," inquit, "Archidiaconos septem provinciis quibus præerat Remigius, Episcopus Lincolniensis, impo-

---

[1] *Henricus . . . . manifestant.*] This peculiar construction is found in both MSS. "Henricus" and the words in apposition to it should, of course, be in the accusative case.

[2] *ceteros*] cetero. MS.

[3] *sparsim.*] C.C.C.—spersim. MS. Cotton.

[4] *ubi ait.*] This passage has been collated with the MS. Reg. 13 B. VI., Brit. Mus.

[5] *scilicet.*] om. MS. Reg.

[6] *Normannorum . . . . in Angliam.*] Thus in both MSS. These words are somewhat differently arranged in the MS. Reg.:—"Normannorum gentis temporibus excellentissimæ memoriæ nostris in Angliam."

[7] *insulam.*] In both MS.—insulam inhabitandam. MS. Reg.

[8] *Annus ab initio . . . . sextus.*] Thus in both MSS. "Annus ab initio mundi VM. et CCC. et XVII. Annus Gratiæ, M.CXXXV. Hic est igitur annus ille a quo Scriptor Historiæ suam voluit ætatem a sequentibus computari." MS. Reg.

A.D. 1108. On the foundation of the See of Ely, he is made Archdeacon of Huntingdon.

suit: Ricardum Archidiaconum Lincolniæ, cui successit Albertus Longobardus, cui successit Robertus Bagocensis, et nunc Robertus minor omnium Archidiaconorum qui in Anglia sunt, ditissimus; Cantabriggensi, et Huntyngdonensi, et Herfordensi, Nicholaum, quo nullus erat corpore formosior, nec moribus corpori multum erat absimilis. Cujus circa transitum, cum Cantabriggensis provincia, ab Episcopatu nostro separata, novum Episcopum suscepisset, duabus reliquis provinciis Archidiaconus et ipse successi." Hæc de promotione sua sub Episcopo Lincolniæ Remigio tangit.

Extract from the "De Summitatibus Rerum."

Et infra, eodem libro, in fine, opinionem suam de fine mundi tangens, ait:—"Ad vos igitur jam loquor, qui in terno millenario circa xxxv. annum, si contigerit, quod valde desiderat anima mea, vestras ut in manus hoc opusculum[1] prodeat, precor, ut Dei clementiam inexcogitatam[2] pro me misero exoretis, et sic pro vobis orent, qui et impetrent, qui in quarto vel quinto millenario cum Deo ambulabunt, si generatio mortalium tamdiu protelabitur. Quærit aliquis cur de sequentibus millenariis ita loqueris, cum in nos fines seculi devenerint et mundi terminum cotidie cernentes expectemus? Ad hæc ego:—'Mundi terminus tibi est dies qua morieris. Christus autem seculorum finis est, qui non primam seculi partem Adventui Suo elegit, sed ultimam, in qua finirentur Lex et Prophetæ; et significantia, veniente Significato.' Quia vero de prolixitate temporum, nullus nisi Pater Omnium novit, quod scripsi secundum æstimationem meam est, quam de Herberto, Norwycensi Episcopo, viro doctissimo, jamdudum extraxi. Dicebat enim secundum quod æstimo, et ex ratione compensare queo. Multo magis durabit veritas quam figura, lux quam umbra, significata tempore Gratiæ quam Legis. Quod si figura et umbra,

---

[1] *opusculum*] opus meum. C.C.C.

[2] *inexcogitatam*] inexcogitabilem. C.C.C.

præcedentes et præsignantes Christi Gratiam, pæne per quinque mille annos extensæ sunt, quanto magis Christi Lux et Christi Gratia. Æstimationem namque eorum jam frustratam esse vidimus, qui post Passionem Domini mille tantum annos seculum duraturum putaverunt, quia in ultima ætate venerit Christus. Nec Judæorum opinio sequenda est, qui post sex mille annorum, numerum ab initio[1] numerando, in millenario septimo Sabbatum suum inchoandum asserunt, et reversionem in terram suam, et totius mundi dominium, affirmans etiam post modicum exinde tempus totius mundi terminationem futuram. Sed potius veritatem multis temporibus promissam, multo amplius, præstante Domino nostro Jhesu Christo, credimus duraturam." A.D.1135.

Hæc est opinio hujus venerabilis viri de fine mundi. Et si quis alia ejus dicta videre desideraverit, ad librum ejus festinet legendum, quem de Chronicis compilavit.

[1] *ab initio*] ab initio mundi. C.C.C.

De Henrico Archidiacono[1] de Gandavo.

Capitulum Undecimum.

A.D. 1279. Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent.

Henricus de Gandavo cujus conditionis extiterit, vel qualis ejus vita fuerit, in[2] notitiam plurimorum nondum pervenit. Quidam aiunt eum sic dictum quia natus sit in Gandavo, et nativitatis locum in perpetuam[3] transisse memoriam. Quidam autem eum dicunt fuisse Archidiaconum ibidem, et ex officio traxisse cognomen. Notitia ejus apud nos hoc modo convaluit.

Account of his writings.

Scripsit [notabilem] librum, cujus titulus est,[4]—"De Quæstionibus suis Ordinariis;" et aliud opus etiam solemne, cujus titulus est[5] "De Quodlibetis." Primum Opus [sic incipit], "Quia Theologia[6] est Scientia in qua est sermo." Secundum autem sic:—"Quærebantur[6] in nostra disputatione." Magna laus huic viro ex scripturis suis consurgit, quippe qui incognitus transisset, si scripta

---

[1] *Archidiacono*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *in*] ad. C.C.C.

[3] *perpetuam*] perpetuam viri. C.C.C.

[4] *cujus titulus est.*] See fol. 1., Quæstio I., of "Summæ Quæstionum Ordinarium Theologiæ recepto præconio Solennis Henrici a Gandavo. Paris 1520." A new edition was published "labore Hieronymi Scarparii, Ferrariæ, M.DCXLVI."

[5] *cujus titulus est.*] See fol. 1. Quæstio Prima of "M. Henrici Goëthals a Gandavo Doctoris Solemnis, Socii Sorbonici, Ordinis Servorum B. M. V., et Archidiaconi Tornacensis, Aurea Quodlibeta. Commentariis M. Vitalis Zuccolii Patavini. Venetiis, apud Jacobum de Franciscis, MDCXIII."

[6] *Quia Theologia, etc.—Quærebantur, etc.*] The "Incipit" in both of these cases is added in a different ink, but by the same hand, and evidently at a later time, and on blank space left for the purpose.

sua ad lucem non venissent. Plus enim confert famæ et notitiæ hominum ut in secula maneat memoria scripturarum, quam parietes calculo solidatæ, quam marmorea templa, et idola ærea. Unde et Radulphus Cicestrensis, in principio Chronicæ suæ, ait:— "Plus,"[1] inquit, "scriptura[2] poëtarum Cæsariis laudibus addiderunt quam omnis[3] mundi divitiæ quas tulerunt.[4] Quis, quæso, Cæsares[5] hodie sciret, philosophos miraretur, Apostolos sequeretur, nisi eos insignirent monumenta scriptorum?[6] Quis denique[7] Lucilium cognosceret, nisi eum Seneca suis Epistolis illustrasset? Sed et[8] in præsentiarum artes et jura prorsus ruerent, spectabilium actionum[9] exemplaria[10] non [paterent], loquendi quoque tropi et schemata penitus deperirent, nisi in remedium imperfectionis humanæ litterarum usum Divina miseratio providisset."[11] A.D. 1279.

Hæc dicta sunt pro viro qui post mortem in scriptis suis apud nos vivit, et plus honoris[12] apud exteras nationes scriptis suis meruit quam si civitatem natalem sibi mœnibus circumcinxit. Erat vir in scholastica lingua satis exercitatus, et in moralibus non mediocriter profundus. Unde et titulum laudis apud scholasticos promeruit ut, sicut Sanctus Thomas dictus est "Doctor Communis," et venerabilis Egidius, "Doctor Declarativus," ac Duns, "Doctor Subtilis," ita et iste

---

[1] *Plus*] Plus profecto. MS. Rawl.

[2] *scriptura*] scripta. MS. Rawl.

[3] *omnis*] omnes. MS. Rawl.

[4] "*Plus*," *inquit*, ... *tulerunt*."] This sentence concludes the whole passage here quoted, instead of beginning it, in MS. Rawl.

[5] *Cæsares*] Cæsareos. MS. Rawl.

[6] *Quis, quæso*, ... *scriptorum*.] This sentence follows that ending with the word "providisset" (the last quoted by Capgrave), in MS. Rawl.

[7] *Quis denique* . . . . *illustrasset*.] om. MS. Rawl.

[8] *Sed et, etc.*] This sentence stands first of all the quoted sentences in MS. Rawl.

[9] *actionum*] gestorum. MS. Rawl.

[10] *exemplaria*] exempla. MS.Rawl.

[11] "*Plus*," *inquit* "*scriptura* . . *providisset*."] This passage has been collated with the copy of the original Chronicle of Richard of Cirencester, preserved in the Bodleian Library, MS. Rawlinson. B. 193.

[12] *honoris*] laudis. C.C.C.

A.D. 1279. He is called "Doctor Solemnis."

quoque, ad summam laudem, dictus est "Doctor Solemnis."

Hæc est laus hujus viri litteratissimi et scholastici, Domine mi Rex, ut dicetur nomen hoc sublime non tantum imperatoria majestate, sed et regali potestate, sed et militari nobilitate, sed et postremo clericali subtilitate.

De Henrico de Urimaria,

De Ordine Heremitarum Sancti Augustini.[1]

Capitulum Duodecimum.

Henricus iste, Alemannus natione, magnæ peritiæ, et sanctitatis, et litteraturæ fuit. In juventute, instigante se Bono Spiritu, Ordinem ingressus est qui titulo Heremitarum Sancti Augustini insignitur. Non mediocriter, ut aiunt ejus gesta, in libris studuit, sed sic studio se in illa ætate confixit ut etiam, ad maturam ætatem veniens, nunquam ab eo divelli potuit. A.D. 1340. Henry de Urimaria, his industry and devotion.

Factus ergo Doctor Parisius, multa utilia in firmamentum ecclesiæ,[2] utilitatem animarum et [scholarum disciplinam conscripsit]. Nunquam enim cessaverat, [ut nobis scripserunt] contemporanei sui, a studio vel oratione. Nam postquam surrexerat a libro, aut fessus, aut forsan plenus, tunc in ore ejus resonabant vigiliæ mortuorum, tunc septem Psalmi Pœnitentiales, ut nunquam cessaret, sicut de Beata Cecilia dicitur, a colloquiis divinis et oratione. Nullo die Missam prætermisit; nullo die vir timoratus inconfessus Sacrificium obtulit, conscientiam magnam faciens etiam de minimis peccatis. Quando

---

[1] *De Ordine Heremitarum S. Augustini.*] These words are not found in C.C.C., which reads instead,—"Doctore Parisiensi."

[2] *utilia in firmamentum ecclesiæ*] utilia conscripsit in fulcimentum ecclesiæ. C.C.C.

A.D. 1340. cetera opera sibi delectabilia non erant, tunc in marginibus librorum, quos studere sollicitus erat, notulas intexit, seriem et vim columnarum sententialiter includentes.

O beatum virum! omni laude dignum! qui sanctus in vita, pacificus in moribus, excellens in doctrina probatus est. Et de sanctitate devotionis ejus, Jordano referente, legi quod semel ad altare Beatæ Katerinæ celebrans in tanta ebrietate mentis raptus est, ut oblitus quidem sui, oblitusque eorum quæ retro sunt cum Apostolo, in anteriora se extendens,[1] putabat se [deliciis interesse] Paradisi, ubi Sanctam Virginem et Martyrem Katerinam in tanta devotione mentis recolebat, ut reliquiæ ejusdem Virginis corporaliter existentes sudorem emitterent, testimonium tantæ devotionis proferentes.

Solebat dicere iis cum [quibus notus erat] nunquam propter studium caput doluisse, [nunquam] dorsi spinam infectam fuisse, nuncquam oculorum [visum] hebetiorem effectum. Quanta gratia [Dominus conservat] cultores suos prospicere jucundum est; [quos fortes] efficit in molestiis, et in tribulationibus anxietatibusque quandoque reddit firmiores. Usque ad maturam ætatem has pias exercitationes tenens, etiam in anno sexagesimo et studuit et scripsit.

His writings.

Reliquit autem posteris suis multa studiorum suorum volumina,[2] ex quibus primum est "Super Libros Ethicorum," satis grande opus, cujus initium est,—"Ex nobili prosapia oriundo Domino."[3] Item "Sermones de Sanctis per totum anni circulum."

---

[1] Philippians iii. 13.

[2] *multa . . . . volumina.*] See MS. Bodl. Laud 203, fol. 152 [136]. "Incipit expositio Orationis Dominicæ, concepta per doctum Magistrum de Urimaria, Sacræ Theologiæ Professore."

[3] "*Ex nobili . . . Domino.*"] This "Incipit" has been added upon revision, in a different ink, and upon a blank space evidently left for the purpose in the MS. C.C.C.

Item Super illo Decretali,—"Cum Marthæ,"—Tractatum unum. Item "De perfectione[1] hominis interioris," Tractatum unum. Item "De Exemptionibus," Tractatum unum. Hæc quatuor Opuscula ego non vidi; sed ex libro Fratris Jordani,[2] qui vitam ejus et aliorum scripsit, intitulavi. Vidi autem opus super Libros Ethicorum, et Quæstiones suas Ordinarias, quarum initium est,—"Utrum[3] verbum sit ratio alicujus alterius productionis." Item [vidi Quodlibetum suum,] cujus etiam initium jam non recordor, quoniam ad manus non est.[4] A.D. 1340.

In fine dierum suorum, maximis infirmitatibus vexatus, purior Deo effectus est: stranguariam et calculum quasi per annum passus est, [et in] magna

---

[1] "*De perfectione, etc.*"] A MS. of this work is preserved in the Bodleian Library; MS. Laud, 492. 4to. vellum, fol. 57. It is entitled in the MS. "De Perfectione Spirituali." The Prologue begins thus:—"In Nomine Domini. Amen. Hæc est intitulatio et continentia Libri præsentis, cujus titulus est 'Liber de Perfectione Spirituali Hominis Interioris.' Istum Librum pro honore De et ædificatione legentium studiose concepit Magister Henricus de Urimaria, Sacræ Theologiæ Professor, ex Libris Collectionum et Institutionum Sanctorum partum."

[2] *ex libro Fratris Jordani.*] Opera Henrici de Urimaria:—"Hæc inter cetera studiositatis suæ opera scripsit:—Super Libros Ethicorum Aristotelis: Opus Solenne Sermonum de Sanctis: Lecturam Decretalis 'Cum Marthæ:' Librum de Perfectione Hominis Necessariorum: Tractatum de Exemptione: Quodlibet duo cum multis Quæstionibus Ordinariis disputatis Parisius. Sermones et tractatus quam plures prædicabiles." See "De Communione Spirituali," chap. xxii., page 171 of "Liber qui dicitur 'Vitas Fratrum,' Compositus per B. Fratrem Jordanum de Saxonia Ord. Fratr. Eremit. S. Augustin: Romæ, 1587.

[3] *utrum . . . . . productionis.*] This "Incipit" also has been added, upon revision, in a different ink, and on a blank space left for the purpose.

[4] *jam non recordor, quoniam ad manus non est.*] These words are written upon a blank space purposely left in the text, in the MS. C.C.C. This alone is sufficient to prove the statement made in the Introduction that the Corpus MS. is an Autograph. An additional evidence is found in the fact that all the MSS. of Capgrave's works in which similar alterations of, and additions to, the text are found, are manifestly in the same handwriting.

A.D. 1340. patientia pœnas has sustinuit. [Insuper et per mensem] paralysim in lingua sustinens, vix potuit [1] formare verba quæ conceperat, ubi, ut credimus, [peccata] linguæ, quæ maxime Doctoribus non conveniunt, [punita] sunt. Beatus enim est, cujus lingua iniquitatem non operatur.[2]

Account of his death. Ad extremum tamen halitum veniens satis competenter verba promebat. Unde et sumptis omnibus Sacramentis, et valefaciens omnibus, hæc verba ultima devote et morose depromsit:—"In manus Tuas, Deus Pater, commendo spiritum meum." [3] Et iterum,—"In manus Tuas, Deus Filius, commendo spiritum meum." Et tertio,—"In manus Tuas, Spiritus Sanctus,[4] commendo spiritum meum." Inter hæc verba exhalavit spiritum, seculum quidem derelinquens, et cum Deo habitans.

Legend. Quædam autem religiosa femina, quæ monitis suis [5] sacris conversa est, post mortem ipsum tractare atque videre petiit. Maxima autem tacta devotione, faciem dicti patris detergens et suam hoc humore liniens, sanata est ab infirmitate qua longo tempore laborabat; [6] nam, vertiginem capitis patiens, nullo poterat medicorum remedio consolari. Servabatur, ut puto, ad virum hunc, ut laudaretur Deus in Sanctis Suis, et magnificaretur in Mirabilibus Suis.

---

[1] *potuit*] poterat. C.C.C.

[2] 1 Pet. iii. 10.

[3] S. Luke xxiii. 46.

[4] *Spiritus Sanctus*] Deus Spiritus Sanctus. C.C.C.

[5] *suis*] ejus. C.C.C.

[6] *laborabat.*] Here follows in MS. C.C.C. the word "sanabatur," but it appears to have been expuncted by the writer.

HÆC[1] sunt ut nunc horum Henricorum Illustrium [commendatiunculæ, quas, prout] potui, breviter explicavi, de erratibus [meis apud tantam] clementiam veniam expostulans.

[In calce autem] libelli Beatos Reges, hujus terræ vestræ [patronos], invocandos puto, ut successorem eorum [in hoc] regno supplicationibus suis tueantur, et ab insidiis defendant. E quibus primi sunt Oswaldus, Edmundus, Edwardus, et Kenelmus, qui, glorioso sanguine pro Christo effuso, jam in Cœlestibus læti triumphant. Alii autem sunt Confessores gloriosi gentem vestram Deo commendantes,—Ethelbertus, et Oswinus, Atelstanus, et Edwardus.

Primus, martyr Oswaldus, in eleemosynis dandis parem non habuit. Secundus, Edmundus, jaculis vitam finivit. Tertius, Edwardus, osculo et cultello traditus esse legitur. Et quartus, Kenelmus, per cœlestem columbam jam mortuus proditur. Opto autem ut dominus meus eleemosynis feratur in Cœlum, jacula ignita diaboli scuto fidei evadat, traditorum turbam ignoret, et innocentiam columbinam possideat.

---

[1] *Hæc sunt . . . sæculorum. Amen.*] The whole of this passage has been added in MS. C.C.C., evidently at a somewhat later period, and in a different ink, but by the same handwriting as the rest of the MS.

Aliorum autem primus suscepit fidem ; secundus Deo obtulit filiam ; ad tertium de Cœlo gladius in vaginam lapsus est, et quartus in puritate pudicitiæ decessit. Sic et dominus meus fidem semper teneat inviolatam, liberos, cum venerint, Deo [fideliter enutriat] ut gladio suo terreantur inimici, [et in puritate corporis et] animæ decedat ; ad laudem Domini [nostri Jesu Christi], Qui cum Deo Patre, et Spiritu Sancto, vivit [et regnat] in secula seculorum. Amen.[1]

[1] In the MS. C.C.C. are added, in red letters at the end, these words: —"Feliciter per Capgrave." Here also occurs the small mark, evidently the private mark of the Author, which is found at the end of the Prologue, and in various other places, in the English Chronicle, and the extant MSS. of his other works, of which a fac-simile is given at page 4 of the Printed Edition of the Chronicle.

APPENDICES TO THE INTRODUCTION.

APPENDICES, &c.

Introductory Note to the Appendices.

In the Introduction to Capgrave's "Chronicle of England," a Catalogue of the Author's works was given, accompanied by brief accounts of all that are now known to be exant.[1]

These works are chiefly Theological, consisting of Commentaries, Sermons, and Biographies of Saints; and it appears that his only historical productions were the "Chronicle of England," the "Liber de Illustribus "Henricis" (now for the first time printed), and the Life of his patron and friend, Humphrey Duke of Gloucester.

The last of these, it is to be feared, is lost for ever; and with it, we cannot doubt, much that is highly important relating to the history of Capgrave's time.

The extant Theological Works of our Author could not, of course, be comprehended within the limits of a strictly historical series; it has, however, been considered desirable that the Prologues should be printed, both because they serve to render our notices of Capgrave's writings as complete as it is now possible to make them, and because they contain a few scattered

[1] See the *Chronicle of England*, page xiii.

facts of considerable historical interest, which do not occur elsewhere.

The Prologues of his extant English Works will be found in the Appendices at the end of the volume containing the English Chronicle. The Prologues of the Latin books have been reserved for the same place at the end of the Latin Chronicle.

APPENDIX I.

OF THE NOVA LEGENDA ANGLIÆ.

Capgrave's Nova Legenda Angliæ.

THERE appears to be no evidence as to the period of Capgrave's life at which this work was written.

It is to a great extent a compilation from the "Sanctilogium" of John of Tinmouth, but the order of the Lives, which in the latter work are arranged according to the calendar,[1] is changed into an alphabetical series. Tanner says, that of the one hundred and six-eight Lives given by Capgrave, all (with the exception of fourteen) are copied from Tinmouth.

A MS. of this work is preserved in the Library attached to York Minster.

A valuable copy formerly existed in the Cottonian Collection in the British Museum, which was, however, seriously injured by the destructive Fire in 1731. The notice of Tiberius E. 1. stands in the Cottonian Catalogue (page 40) as follows :—"The remains of a folio volume on vellum, burnt to a crust, and preserved in a case. It formerly consisted of 341 leaves, and contained 157 articles, enumerated in Smith's Catalogue, being all Lives of British

[1] Beginning with Edward the Confessor (January 5), and ending with S. Egwin (December 30). See Hardy's Introduction to Petrie's *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, page 5, note (4).

Capgrave's Nova Legenda Angliæ.

"Saints, said to have been collected by John of "Tinmouth in the year 1366, and to have been ex- "tracted by John Capgrave."

A splendid MS. belonging to the Tanner Collection is preserved in the Bodleian Library.[1] It consists of a large folio volume, beautifully written upon vellum, in double columns, pp. 585. There is a Table of the Contents, but the Prologue is wanting. At the end, in the following inscription, is recorded the name of the writer of this copy :—"Perfectum est hoc opus, vul- "gariter intitulatum 'De Sanctis Angliæ,' ad laudem "et honorem Omnipotentis Dei, et sanctæ Cantua- "riensis ecclesiæ, ex impensis reverendi in Christo "patris, domini Thomæ Goleston,[2] ejusdem ecclesiæ "Prioris, ac Sacrarum Litterarum Professoris egregii, "per me, Jacobum Neell, Normannum, ac Rothomagi "natum, anno Verbi Incarnati 1499. Deo gratias."

The "Nova Legenda Angliæ" is well known as one of the earliest works of an historical character printed in England. In the year 1516 Pynson printed "The "Kalendre of the Newe Legende," in the Prologue to which it is said to be "taken out of the Newe Legende "of the Santys of Englande, Irelande, Scotlande, "and Wales, for them that understand not the Latin "tongue." This book was an abridged and very brief translation of the work of Capgrave.[3]

In the same year, however, Wynkyn de Worde produced an edition of the entire work, and it is from a copy of this that we have printed the annexed Prologue. It is in black letter, and has thrice repeated (twice at the beginning, and once at the end of the volume) a representation of the Blessed Trinity

[1] MS. xv. Capgrave.

[2] Thomas Goldston, the last Prior but one, who died in the year 1517.

[3] See Hardy's Introduction to Petrie, page 5, note (4).

enthroned, surrounded by Angels, with a band of Saints in the several costumes of Kings, Popes, Bishops, Priests, and Virgins standing beneath the throne. Capgrave's Nova Legenda Angliæ.

The Prologue, which is of considerable length, will be found to be full of interest, and quite worthy of being preserved in an Edition of the Historical Works of Capgrave.[1]

The "Nova Legenda" has never been reprinted, but numerous detached Lives have been extracted from it, and are to be found in the "Bollandi Acta Sanc-"torum." The following is a correct list of them:—

"Vita Sancti Wulsini, Episcopi Schireburnensis," p. 507, vol. i. (January.)

"Vita Sancti Adriani, Abbatis," p. 596, *ib.*

"Vita Sancti Henrici, Eremitæ," p. 60, vol. ii., *ib.*

"Vita Sancti Willielmi, pueri Martyris Norwici, p. 590, vol. iii. (March.)

"Vita Sancti Ricardi, Episcopi Cisterciensis," p. 278, vol. i. (April.)

"Vita Sancti Erconuvaldi, Episcopi Londinensis," p. 781, vol. iii., *ib.*

"Vita Sanctæ Mildredæ, Virginis," p. 517, vol. iii. (July.)

The "Nova Legenda" is also occasionally quoted as an authority in the same Work.

---

[1] *Capgrave.*] The question of the authorship of this Prologue has been fully discussed in the General Introduction.

PROLOGUS.

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

Sancti Patres, qui priscis fuere temporibus, caritatem in multis frigescentem aspicientes, curantesque omnino ne ignis de altari deficeret, hoc est, ne corda hominum quadam torporis ignavia prorsus tepescerent, sed magis illo divini amoris igne, quem Dominus misit in terram, jugiter arderent, lignorum nutrimenta subjicere satagebant, ac semivivos quasi colligere cineres post multorum sacrificia, in loco mundo, puris videlicet mentibus, reponendos sive reservandos, acta scilicet vitasque Sanctorum recensentes et in medium proferentes, quatenus variis Sanctorum exemplis, quasi calceamentis quibusdam comedentium Agnum Paschalem pedes munirent, qui nudis et duris funibus præceptorum forsitan læderentur, quippe quorum tenerioŕes animos, ad solidum capiendum cibum adhuc invalidos, lacte prius fovere oportuit. Et dum audirent legerentque Sanctorum turbas, toto orbe diffusas, omnis sexus, omnis ætatis, omnis gradus, omnis denique ordinis, reges videlicet et omnes populos, principes et judices, juvenes et virgines, senes cum senioribus, omnes uno quasi ore laudantes nomen Domini,[1] ac brevissimum post vitæ curriculum cœlum vi quadam rapientes, omnem subire laborem pro Dei amore (pro quo ferri et fieri debent

[1] See Psalm cxlviii. 11, 12. (Vulg.)

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

omnia), pertimescerent nequaquam, nec quod ab aliquo fieri potuit impossibile æstimarent, cum et sexus infirmior, et ætas tenerior, et status sublimior, immo et de omnibus multitudo profusior, omnia, quæ vel jussa sunt vel prohibita, tanto studio adimplerunt, ut nec de cunctis vel unum iota dumtaxat prætermitterent.

Hinc est quod (ut supra diximus) viri venerabiles, liquide cernentes quamplures Sanctorum incitatos exemplis, qui divinis raro moventur præceptis, contemplantesque Sponsam in Canticis tantopere Sponsi voce laudatam (eo quod antiqua Sanctorum opera studioso imitatur affectu), dicente ad eam Sponso,[1]—"Quam pul-" chri sunt gressus tui in calceamentis, filia principis," vestigiis scilicet amicorum Dei fortius inhærendo, et alibi ipsam ad eorum sequelam dulcius his verbis imitando,[2]—"Si ignoras te, O pulchra inter mulieres, egre-" dere et abi post vestigia gregum," etc., ac si aperte dicerent,—"Pensare debes mira et stupenda opera, quæ " in aliis conspicis, ut eorum comparatione parva ac " minima tibi viderentur bona quæ tu facis, ac sic ad " meliorem vitam capessendam ferventius accendaris."

Attendentes, inquam, hæc omnia, laudare viros generosos in generationibus suis permaxime, ac cupiebant Deus quam sit mirabilis in Sanctis Suis latius ostendere.

Mathathias vero, sanctus Machabæorum dux et princeps, viam universæ carnis mox ingressurus, vocatis filiis, dum eos ad prœliandum prœlia Domini fortius animaret, emissis[3] tanquam minime necessariis divini legis densissimis silvis, Sanctorum virtutes et exempla devotius recensuit, imitandos quosdam proferens in medium, qui ante Legem fuerunt, ut Noe, Abraham, et Loth, ceterique Sancti Patriarchæ, qui in medio nationis pravæ bona operari non cessabant;[4] et, dum adhuc Lex

[1] Canticles, vii. 1.

[2] Canticles, i. 7.

[3] *emissis*] Probably an error for omissis.

[4] *cessabant.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "cessabunt."

non esset data,[1] ipsi tamen sine lege non fuerunt, sed sibimetipsis facti sunt lex, cuncta futuræ Legis perfectiora strenue adimplentes, ac Deo fide firmissima et operatione dignissima jugiter placentes, quorum invictissima patientia sublimissimaque obedientia tanta meruerunt apud Deum, ut ceteris, eorum culpa exigente, pereuntibus, a pressura flammæ et de profundis aquarum, insuper et de manibus quærentium animas eorum, divina liberarentur virtute, ac seminis eorum multiplicationem ad instar stellarum cœli consequerentur: quosdam vero, qui et sub Lege floruerunt, et eidem veluti quibusdam loris arctius astricti sunt, sub cujus jugo libentissime colla inclinaverunt.

Phinees quoque sacerdos in exemplum proponitur, qui, zelo Dei succensus, Madianitam cum concubitore transfodit, in ultionem divinæ legis.[2]

Porro et Daniel, vir desideriorum summæque abstinentiæ; atque alii quamplures, de quibus omnibus longum jam esset enarrare.

Cujus et rei seriem sapiens ille, qui Ecclesiasticus[3] dicitur, imitatus est; qui, post multa sacra hortamenta salubriaque documenta, in sui calce voluminis catalogum Sanctorum Patrum studiose retexuit, cunctorum virtutes singulares mira replicans sedulitate, ut posteris daretur sanctitatis exemplum, et qua unusquisque potissimum polleat virtute clarius innotesceret;—Sicuti in Abraham obedientiam summam; in Moyse mititatem et mansuetudinem; in Phinees zelum et justitiam; in Samuele patientiam et longanimitatem; in David misericordiam et humilitatem; in Mathathia ceterisque Machabæis in persecutione constantiam et perseverantiam; et sic de ceteris; ut hi omnes, una et consona quasi voce, cum Apostolo clamarent: "Imitatores nostri "estote, sicut filii carissimi."[4]

[1] Romans, ii. 14.
[2] Numbers, xxv. 6.
[3] Ecclesiasticus, xliv.–xlix.
[4] Ephesians, v. 1.; Philippians, iii. 17.

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

Apostolus quoque et is, eundem insecutus ordinem in suo catalogo* ad Hebræos, antiquos patres, seriatim procedens, commemorat; ab Enoch incipiens, septimo ab Adam, qui, Deo sancta conversatione placens, translatus est in Paradisum ne mortem videret, sed daret gentibus sapientiam; Abraham quoque commemorans, quod fide justificatus sit; et Moysen sanctum, qui vir erat mitissimus super terram, in quo mundi contemptum laudavit, eo quod Ægypti gloriam fastidiens "magis "elegit affligi cum populo Dei, quam temporalis peccati "habere jocunditatem."[1] "Sancti denique omnes "quomodo per fidem vicerunt regna, operati sunt jus-"titiam, adepti sunt repromissiones,"[2] et cetera quæ sequuntur.

Proinde, ut etiam ad sanctos ecclesiasticosque veniam doctores, beatus ille Iheronimus[3] vitas Sanctorum Patrum, qui in eremo victitabant, tanto studio in unum collegit fasciculum, ut innumerabiles immortalesque virtutes, immensas singulorum divisiones gratiarum, vivendique efficacissima exempla, et plurimorum signorum infinita prodigia intuentium oculis aspicienda, brevi membrana exararet, Paulum[4] sanctissimum inducens anachoretarum principem atque primarium, Antonium[5] quoque, et Hilarionem,[6] ceterosque pæne innumerabiles, qui, tanquam purgamenta hujus mundi omnium peripsima, stulti esse voluerunt ut essent sapientes;[7] qui omnes, quasi dii quidam (ut ita dicam) in hominum effigie latitantes, peccata hominum suis expiarunt sacratissimis meritis, et Deum quadam violentia, ne ad vindicandum esset propensior, orationibus reti-

[1] Hebrews, xi. 25.

[2] Hebrews, xi. 33.

[3] *Iheronimus.*] The text of Wynkyn de Worde's edition has "*Ihetoonius,*" which is evidently a mistake for Iheronimus (Hieronimus).

[4] *Paulum.*] See S. Hieronymi Opera (ed. 1742), vol. ii., col. 1.

[5] *Antonium.*] See S. Hieronymi Opera, *ibid.* col. 14.

[6] *Hilarionem.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "Hillaronem." See S. Hieronymi Opera, *ibid.*

[7] 1 Corinthians, iii. 18.

nuerunt. Quorum etsi numerus infinitus erat, tamen cor unum, et anima una; ac consona voce Deo laudes decantabant, incredibili viventes abstinentia, et supra omnia prorsus humanam naturam; cibum illum, qui non perit, jugiter operantes, et tanquam luminaria in hoc mundo innumerabilibus virtutibus coruscantes.

Nec minori diligentia illud Spiritus Sancti organum, beatus videlicet Gregorius,[1] virtutes et exempla Sanctorum Patrum Italiæ in uno Dialogi volumine suavissimo stilo complexus est.

Sic et plures historiographi, aliique devoti, Sanctorum exempla vitasque summo recolligere studio conati sunt. Maxime tamen in laudibus eorum immorati sunt, quorum eis notitiam et locorum vicinitas et nascendi propinquitas abundantius præbuerunt; nos inde (ut verum fatear) sanis provocantes exemplis, quatenus Sanctorum vitas hoc sacro volumine contentas, nec sine magno quorundam labore ac studio in hanc, quam videmus, formam sollicite redactas, tanto diligentiori studio perlegamus, eorumque vivendi exemplo ad sacra conversationis studia pertrahamur, quanto pro majori parte ex nostris sunt et patria et gente.

Deus enim Omnipotens, cum seminans exiret seminare semen Suum,[2] et orbem jam pæne universum fecunda[3] repleret vitæ spiritualis segete, singulis donans provinciis sacræ Fidei patronos, quorum sanctissima sequerentur vestigia, in Idumæam quoque Suum tandem extendit calceamentum,[4] suos videlicet mittens in hunc extremum orbis angulum, qui populum gentilibus implicatum erroribus ad viam veritatis reducerent, atque ipsum Salvatoris sermonem, in Apostolorum Actibus inscriptum, devotius implerent, ubi ait,—"Et eritis

---

[1] *Gregorius.*] See S. Gregorii Primi Opera (ed. Rom. 1591), vol. iii., page 209.

[2] S. Matthew, xiii. 3.

[3] *secunda.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "secundo."

[4] Psalm cvii. 10.; Psalm lix. 10. (Vulg.)

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

" mihi testes in Iudæa et Ierusalem, et usque ad ulti-
" mum terræ,"[1] præsciens utique, quod postea est impletum, quoniam multus Ei esset populus in ista regione.[2]

Quantæ etenim sunt Anglicorum turbæ Sanctorum, quam magnis floruere virtutibus, quantisque coruscavere miraculis, optimus erit judex liber subsequens, ita ut ipsum hujus nostræ patriæ vocabulum sui merito sortiatur[3] nominis affectum.

Anglia namque, secundum quorundam definitionem, dicitur ab " En," quod est " In," et " Cleos," quod est " Gloria," quasi " intus gloriosa," nec immerito quidem. Namque tametsi exterius quoque multis magnisque gaudeat prærogativis, quemadmodum in promptu est videre, ut puta in agrorum ac segetum fecunditate, in lanæ pannorumque immensitate, in pratorum, fluviorum,[4] ac fontium amœnitate, in civitatum, villarum, castrorum, ædificiorumque multiplici varietate et pulchritudine, in ipsius denique Gentis vultus et habitus miro angelicoque splendore et formositate, animique audacia et strenuitate, ac ceteris innumeris terrenis commoditatibus, in quibus omnibus, absque eo quod intrinsecus latet, ejusdem resplendet pulchritudo et gloria. Longe tamen illustrius et gloriosius[5] ejus relucet claritas spiritalisque majestas ex Sanctorum, qui in ea floruerunt, virtutibus et exemplis, qui, tanquam sidera quæque rutilantia, tenebrescentem mundum suis illuminarent radiis, claraque luce cuncti perspicerent quod non sit " personarum acceptor Deus, sed in omni gente " qui timet Deum et operatur justitiam acceptus est " Illi."[6]

---

[1] Acts, i. 8.

[2] Acts, xviii. 10.

[3] *sortiatur*] " sociatur " in Wynkyn de Worde.

[4] *fluviorum.*] This word is printed " fluvium " in Wynkyn de Worde, evidently by mistake for " fluviorum " or " fluminum."

[5] *gloriosius.*] Wynkyn de Worde has " gloriosus."

[6] Acts, x. 35.

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

Nostræ itaque memoriæ reducenda sunt aurea illa tempora, cum primo in hac nostra religione fides adolevit,[1] quantum in omnibus viguit Christianæ religionis fervor, currebatur passim ab omnibus ad Dei cultum, nec felicem se quispiam æstimavit, nisi aut longo diuturnæ pœnitentiæ, aut certo gladii sævientis brevi martyrio, vitam consummaret. Effusa est in omnes divinæ virtutis abundantia, sicut unguentum in capite, quod descendit in barbam Aaron, descendens et in oram vestimenti ejus.[2]

Unguentum enim in capite superabundantem dixerim Dei gratiam in superiori potestate, quæ tunc in barbam Aaron descendit, cum et in alios nobiles summo gradui vicinius adhærentes. Ipsa eademque Dei gratia sese infundit, quæ etiam in oram vestimenti defluit, quando inferioris plebis mentes tangit : unguentum quippe in capite effusum est, quia tantus erat regum et principum fervor religionis, ut universos subjectos sibi populos suis provocarent exemplis. In sacræ conversationis exercitio tantum impendebant, et is semper inter ceteros reputabatur laudabilior, qui circa Dei cultum præ ceteris fuerit sollicitior. In latum extensum est, illis diebus, sacræ Crucis vexillum ; circumquaque ædificabantur ecclesiæ ; monasteria undique erigebantur ; et tantum fuit in talibus implendis unius Anglicani regis desiderium, ut quamdiu vixerit unum quolibet anno fundaret monasterium.

Veniam denique ad sacros Dei martyres reges, qui stolas suas laverunt in sanguine Agni.[3] Enumerando siquidem eos duodecim specialiter inveni nominatos, ac viginti alios, qui, tacito nomine, omnes sunt sacro martyrio coronati ; ipsorum etiam Anglicanorum regum septem, qui, pompis seculi prorsus derelictis, nudi nudum

---

[1] *adolevit.*] This appears to be the true reading. Wynkyn de Worde has "adolent."

[2] Psalm cxxxii. 2. (Vulg.)

[3] Revelation, vii. 14.

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

in sacra religione sequebantur Christum, atque hominum consortia fugientes, monachi effecti, cœlibem in monasteriis vitam duxerunt; præter alios sanctissimos Dei confessores, qui, superfluis resecatis curis, abjectisque seculi pompis ac vanis mundi solatiis, Deo totaliter erant intenti; necessariisque regni negotiis, operibus misericordiæ jugiter vacantes, et juxta Domini præceptum amicos sibi de mammona iniquitatis facientes.[1]

Unde et inter ceteros Sanctus Dei Edwardus rex tantum dinoscitur mundum habuisse contemptui, ut latronem conspiciens suos sæpius thesauros furantem, non solum non caperet, sed etiam suo camerario, de hoc conquerenti, penitus excusaret,—"Forte," inquiens, "plus nobis indiguit quod furatus est; habeat igitur "sibi; nobis enim sufficit quod remansit." Unde etiam tam largus in pauperes fuit quod Sanctum Iohannem Evangelistam, Domini consobrinum, quodam tempore in peregrini habitu recipere meruit.

Oswaldus præterea rex, Salvatoris perficiens sententiam, qua ait, "Omni petenti te tribue,"[2] nullum omnino pauperem a se vacuum dimisit. Immo cuncta fere, quæ habuit, indigentibus tribuens, scutellam quoque argenteam cum pretiosissimo ferculo, mendicanti pauperi dedit. Unde et sanctus præsul Aidanus hoc videns brachium regis dextrum, quo eleemosynas erogare est assuetus, protinus benedixit, — "Nunquam," inquiens, "marcescat manus ista!" quod quidem ita divina est impletum virtute, ut post regis mortem, ceteris totius corporis membris in cinerem resolutis, usque in hodiernum diem integra adhuc maneat sine corruptione.

Quid plura? Tam fervida fuit retroactis temporibus Anglicanorum regum devotio, ut mirum tunc fuerit regem videre non Sanctum. Unde et venerabilis ille

[1] S. Luke, xvi. 9.

[2] St. Matthew, v. 42.

ac religiosus pater, qui "Fasciculum Temporum"[1] compilavit, asserit in sua Chronica plures se invenisse Sanctos Reges in Anglia quam in ulla alia mundi provincia quamcumque populosa. Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

Nec sane minoris sanctitatis studio sanctæ ipsorum regum floruere reginæ, ac ceteræ nobiles, quæ sincero matrimonio Domino devote servientes, proles suas in Dei timore erudientes, operibus misericordiæ summa sollicitudine vacantes, honestas nuptias torumque immaculatum custodierunt. Quarum tamen multæ, ex consensu maritorum suorum, a licitis etiam amplexibus abstinentes, cœlibem et vere angelicam vitam ducentes, tanto ampliori corona dignæ sunt, quanto in igne positæ non exarserunt.

Unde earum plurima corpora, ut quantum Deo placeat illibata virginitas cunctis innotesceret, hucusque absque omnimoda corruptione, si famæ credendum est, divina virtute servata sunt, quemadmodum in sacra patet virgine Etheldreda, quæ, duobis nupta viris, virgo nihilominus semper remansit, et ideo corruptionis prorogativam a Domino pro munere accepit; sicut et plures aliæ (ut ita dicam) testes et sanctissimæ puritatis et futuræ resurrectionis fuerunt; et plures sanctissimæ vitæ præsules, quorum sanctitas tantum emicuit, ut omnes, qui eos viderent, cognoscerent utique quoniam isti sunt semen cui benedixit Dominus,[2] quorum jugis conversatio in Cœlis erat, ab his nostris (ut verum fatear) longe dissentiens temporibus, ubi totum avaritiæ ac voluptati datur, sanctitati parum aut nihil: circueunt enim jam multi, (pace aliquorum dicam,) ut seduli exploratores,

---

[1] *Temporum.*] The printed book has "Temperium." See the "Fasciculus Temporum" of Werner Rolewink in "Pistorii Scriptores Germani," ii. 73.—"Edwardus, vir sanctus, rex Angliæ, claret spiritu prophetiæ, nec reperi plures aliquos reges in aliquo regno ita justos et sanctos quam in Anglia."

[2] Isaiah, lxi. 9.

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

simulant, dissimulant, sequuntur, obsequuntur. Manibus repunt et pedibus, ut quoquo modo sese ingerere queant in patrimonium Crucifixi, quorum insatiabilia corda nunquam quiescunt, duplici semper æstuantes desiderio, quo utique magis magisque et dilatentur in plura et ad celsiora sublimentur.

Verum non sic illius temporis sacri pontifices; non sic, inquam, sanctissimus ille præsul Cuthbertus, qui, etsi virtutibus plenus, etsi omni sanctitate conspicuus, haud tamen ad ecclesiæ regimen vocatus electusque ire voluit, quousque rex, cum suis optimatibus, sancti viri pedibus prostratus, cum multis precibus et lacrimis ejus tandem renitentem animum non sine maxima instantia devicit.

Sic et sanctissimus Hugo episcopus, non sine quadam violentia maximaque solemnitate, ac regis procerumque magna importunitate, ut curam susciperet animarum tandem est devictus.

Sic et alii quamplures qui, gregis sibi commissi[1] curam strenue agentes, veri et re et nomine pastores, oves suas pascere studebant, non exspoliare, ac juxta sacros canones necessaria sibi solummodo, non superflua, reservare.

Unde et Sanctus Dei Aidanus episcopus tanto exarsit pietatis amore in pauperes Christi, ut ipse, ex episcopo pauper effectus, dum totam pecuniam pauperibus erogaret, et pauperi cuidam, a se eleemosynam expetenti, unde redderet nihil haberet, equum protinus, quo sedit, sibi paulo ante a rege datum, pedes incedens, pauperi mendicanti daret.

Præterea et multi ac strenui in hac fulsere regione sancti prædicatores et doctores, quorum primarii Sancti fuerunt Augustinus, Anglorum apostolus, et Theodorus, ceterique eorum socii, qui in his præcipue partibus

---

[1] *commissi.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "commisse," *i.e.* "commissæ;" "*grex*," however, is used as feminine in Lucretius, and elsewhere.

orthodoxæ Fidei seminantes triticum centuplices hinc fructus collegerunt cœlestibus horreis reservandos. Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

Anselmus quoque, et is quidem pullulantium errorum strenuissimus eradicator, hæreticorumque atrocissimus inimicus, Divini Verbi sarculo, omni penetrabiliori gladio ancipiti,[1] superseminata zizania sollicite resecavit, Deique sacræ Genetrici semper devotissimus, cumque sermonis eloquentia omnes (*sic*) disertissimus plurima in ejus laudes dulciter compilavit.

Beda etiam Venerabilis, qui, Verbum Dei prædicando, cœlestia grana ubique seminavit, tantæque fuit auctoritatis, tantoque ab omnibus habitus honore et reverentia, ut ejus Homiliæ, ipso adhuc vivente, quod de nullo alio legimus, publice legerentur. Commentatus est denique in totum fere Vetus Novumque Testamentum, ac felici tandem morte sopitus.

Sed nec illud est negligendum et tacita prorsus voce prætereundum, quomodo et antiquitus sacra die floruerit religio, quantosque protulerit viros disciplina excellentes, ex quorum numero Beda fuit sanctissimus.

Et ante episcopatum sancti præsules Cuthbertus et Dunstanus, pluresque alii,—Bartholomæus monachus, Alredus etiam vir religiosissimus, Walleuusque abbas, cum aliis quamplurimis, qui cœlestibus solummodo intendentes eloquiis, nullam prorsus habebant de crastino sollicitudinem,[2] humilitatis et paupertatis amatores, perituras calcantes divitias, ut cœlestes æternasque invenirent, quorum exemplis tantum inviguit inter monachos fervor disciplinæ, ut usque ad Coilsi[3] regis tempora nec vinum biberent, nec cervisiam,[4] nec aliquas[5] comederent carnes.

---

[1] Hebrews, iv. 12.

[2] S. Matthew, vi. 34.

[3] *Coilsi.*] *i.e.* Ceolwulfi. See Simon Dunelm. in the "Decem Scriptores," col. 139.

[4] *cervisiam.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "servisiam."

[5] *aliquas.*] Wynkyn de Worde has "alquas."

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

O quam suavis est vita istorum Sanctorum, qui duxerunt vitas tam gloriose hic in terra! O homo, lege; et quid legeris, memento, quia (ut verum fatear) rem pulchriorem non scis facere.

Oblitus sum paulominus (mea culpa dixerim) sacrarum virginum catervas, quæ, tanquam lilia inter spinas, spretis pro Christo carnalibus illecebris terrenisque divitiis, in castitate, paupertate, et humilitate Sponso Cœlesti adhærentes, Ejus nimium accensa dilectione, licet earum parentes plurimis abundarent divitiis. Ipsæ tamen, obliviscentes populum suum et domum patris sui,[1] malebant angustias paupertatis sustinere, quam inter pomposos seculares in periculo permanere; quarum et multæ sacro sunt martyrio coronatæ, sicut Beata Ursula, una cum ceteris suis consodalibus, ac Beata Ositha virgo et martyr, quas Deus ex sexu eligens infirmiore, ut fortia mundi confunderet,[2] per eas multos utriusque sexus lucratus est.

Demum, ut paucis concludam, tantus ipsis temporibus electorum erat numerus, a singulisque tam ferventi ardentique animo ad Christi obsequium currebatur, ut genitam nobilitatem omnes pro majori parte sanctitate imitarent; nec aliqua tunc in quovis reputabatur nobilitas nisi Dei servitute fulciretur. Sed quorsum hæc omnia? Nimirum ut nulla curiosa indagine forenses quæritemus longinquasve Sanctorum operationes, cum intra nos ipsos sit regnum Dei, et tantos hic habeamus Sanctos patronos, ut eorum merito nobis sufficerent ad imitandum exempla. Si nulla prorsus alta documenta haberemus, immo tanto diligentiori studio eos imitari debemus, quo eis vicinius sumus annexi.

" Solent enim homines proprii semper ducis magis " provocari ad bellum" (ut verbis Ieronimi utar[3]), "habet

---

[1] Psalm xlv. 10.

[2] Corinthians, i. 27.

[3] *ut verbis Ieronimi utar.*] See S. Hieronymi Opera (ed. Verona), vol. i., col. 320. " Habet unumquodque propositum principes suos," etc.

" et unumquodque propositum principes " ergo " suos. " Romani duces imitentur Camillos, Fabricios, Scipiones ; " philosophi proponant sibi Pithagoram, Platonem, " Aristotilem ; poetæ[1] emulentur Homerum, Virgilium, " Terentium," et sic de ceteris. Nos vero eamus ad exemplum turbamque Anglicanorum Sanctorum ; imitetur unusquisque propositi sui duces ;—seculares videlicet principes et domini, ac milites.

Reges sanctissimos imitentur Edwardum et Oswaldum.

Sexus vero femineus Helenam sanctam reginam, Sexburgam reginam, et virginem Dei Etheldredam, et Beatam Modwennam.

Episcopi vero sacros pontifices Dunstanum, Cuthbertum, et Aidanum ; Thomam quoque, sanctissimum Christi athletam, qui, pro zelo justitiæ diram perpessus persecutionem, proprio est cruore profusus.

Prædicatores vero theologi et doctores Augustinum, Anselmum, Bedamque Venerabilem, discantque ab eis non altum sapere, nec ad inflationem scire, sed ad ædificationem.

Religiosi quidem ipsum quoque Bedam Venerabilem, Bartholomæum quoque, et Alredum.

Sacratæ proinde virgines Ursulam imitentur Beatam, Osithamque, Etheldredam, ac Beatam Modwennam, ceterasque sacras virgines.

Omnes denique ipsorum Sanctorum exemplis proficere studeamus in melius ad altiora subvehi. Si etenim pravorum sæpe secuti sumus exempla, cur non imitemur Sanctorum digna studia et Deo placita ? Et si tam apti sumus imitari iniquos ad malum, cur pigri sumus justos imitari in bonum ? Timeamus ergo, bonumque facere satagamus, ne vitia nostra aliorum virtutibus noceant, ne aliorum sanitatem nostra[2] infirmitas cor-

---

[1] *poetæ.*] Wynkyn de Worde has " poeti."

[2] *nostra*] Wynkyn de Worde has " nostram," which is probably a mistake for " nostra."

Prologue to the Nova Legenda Angliæ.

rumpat, ne aliorum pulchritudinem fœditas nostra contaminet, ne aliorum lampades extinguamus ardentes, si nostra illuminare non possumus; quin magis unusquisque proximum suum sanctæ conversationis odore post se trahat, et nox nocti indicet scientiam,[1] ut qui audiat dicat, "Veni."[2]

Porro attendat prudens lector quod in hoc codice, etsi quamplurimæ sunt Anglicanorum vitæ Sanctorum, non tamen omnes hic inseruntur, maxime cum nemo facile omnes qualicumque indagine valeat invenire.

Hujus nihilominus collector, sive (ut ita dicam) auctor operis, ita suam compilandis Sanctorum vitis dedit operam,[3] ut et ipse tam pii operis fructum parcipiat,[4] et aliis quoque ad eorum meritum plura aliaque ad hæc addendi facultatem relinquat. Nec quempiam de cetero movere debet, si præsens volumen in assertione locorum, ubi Sanctorum corpora sive reliquiæ quiescunt, omnino et in omnibus veritati forte non conveniat, aut verius aliorum opinioni non consentiat, nam unusquisque sensu suo abundat, et quod sibi magis evidens videtur suis inserit scriptis. Potest etiam esse, et de aliquibus Sanctis dubium non est quin eorum corpora et reliquiæ fuerunt ad diversa loca mutata sive translata, unde, licet diversa inde sunt scripta, possunt tamen secundum temporis diversitatem continere veritatem. Hoc tamen unum pie credere possumus, immo et debemus, quod ubicumque locorum eorum sunt corpora, animæ eorum in æterna jam receptæ sunt habitacula,—quo nos perducat Qui est omnium Sanctorum jocundissima laus et gloria. Amen.

---

[1] Psalm xix. 2.

[2] Revelation, xxii. 17.

[3] *operam.*] "aperam" in the printed book.

[4] *parcipiat.*] This is probably a mistake for "percipiat." The word "parcipio," however, seems to have been (very rarely) used (*quasi parti-cipio*) for "participo."

Et quia major pars Sanctorum, in hac præsenti Legenda jam noviter impressa contentorum, fuerunt de ista patria, quæ nunc Anglia vocatur, aut cum vocabatur Britannia, vel postquam nomen Angliæ sortita est, in ea nati vel conversati; et quia similiter prædictæ terræ Hiberniæ, Scotiæ, et Walliæ de jure subjici debent, et obedientes esse tenentur huic regno Angliæ, præsens volumen istud (ut videtur) non incongrue vocari potest,—"NOVA LEGENDA ANGLIÆ."

APPENDIX II.

OF CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE CREEDS.

Two MSS. of this work are preserved at Oxford; one in the Library of All Souls' College, the other in the Library of Balliol College.

The former of these,[1] once the property of Narcissus Luttrell,[2] and by him given to the College, is a most interesting volume. It is an autograph, and very carefully and clearly written throughout. At the end are the words "FELICITER PER CAPGRAVE," rubricated; and the curious private mark, supposed to be a monogram of his initials, J. C., of which a fac-simile will be found at page 4 of the Edition of his "Chronicle of England."

Attached to the old boards with which this MS. is bound, and once forming their lining, are two of the leaves of Capgrave's Work on the Antiquities of Rome, which have been printed in Appendix IV., at page 367 of the "Chronicle of England." It is clear that the boards are original, and we are accordingly justified in concluding that the MS., of which these leaves formed a part, was cut up for this purpose with the writer's sanction. Our conclusion is strengthened by the fact that this latter is also an autograph MS., and that two consecutive leaves of the same work were similarly employed in the binding of a scribe's copy

[1] MS. 17; 4to. vellum, pp. 218. | [2] "His Book," 1682.

of this same Commentary on the Creeds, which contains many insertions and corrections written by Capgrave himself.

The Balliol MS. (as we have already said,) is the the work of a scribe, who has executed his task well; it was probably the presentation copy, and was originally decorated with a handsome illuminated letter at the commencement of the dedicatory epistle, which has been clumsily cut away by some ruthless hand. It is written on vellum, in 4to., and contains 116 leaves.

Three of the Creeds occur at the beginning of this MS. written upon separate leaves of vellum by Capgrave himself, but they do not appear to have been originally intended to form part of this volume. Their titles are as follows:—

1. Symbolum Fidei Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti, compositum a Beato Athanasio, cui præposuit hanc exhortationem: "Cum legeris per hanc "Fidem, moneo te ut mei memor sis in orationibus "tuis, ne forsan negligenter quisquam hoc obtrectare "contingat, quia scriptum est: 'Ne projicias mar-"garitas ante porcos.'"

2. Symbolum sequens canitur solemniter in ecclesia; cujus auctor, ut multi affirmant, fuit idem Athanasius.

3. Symbolum Johannis Chrysostomi, episcopi Constantinopolitani.—Universalis ecclesia congaudeat, etc. The latter portion of this creed is wanting.

This MS. contains (as we have said) the second half of the fragment of the work on Roman Antiquities. Capgrave's private mark occurs (in red ink) at the end of the chapter entitled "Aurelii Augustini de Symbolo "libri quatuor." It also occurs after the words "FELICITER PER CAPGRAVE," at the end of the volume.

THE DEDICATORY EPISTLE

TO

WILLIAM GRAY, BISHOP OF ELY.

DOMINO[1] suo singulari, et super ceteris magis sibi propitio, domino Willelmo Eliensi episcopo,[2] suus ut olim orator sedulus, quidam Johannes, inter doctores minimus, tituloque Heremitarum Sancti Augustini insignitus, De Monumento Pileato[3] vulgariter nominatus, honores, preces, vota et quicquid melius tam rudis zelator cogitare possit.

Quum Psalmographus ait: "Secundum Nomen Tuum, "ita et laus Tua,"[4] mihi quoque (ut reor) loquitur, cui animus jam hebes est, corpus fatescit, et—juxta sancti Job eloquium,—"Spiritus meus attenuatur, dies "breviantur, et solum mihi superest sepulchrum."[5]

Hac igitur animadversione percussus cotidie cogito quo fine actus meos deducam ut liberius ad domum meam

---

[1] *Domino, etc.*] The text has been taken from Capgrave's autograph, preserved in the Library of All Souls' College, which has been collated with the Balliol MS.

[2] *Willelmo Eliensi episcopo*] In the margin are written, in a later hand, the words "Willielmus Gray, episcopus Eliensis."

[3] *de monumento pileato* (MS. "*pilleato*")] Here is written in the margin the following explanation of these words:—"Monumentum, *a grave*; pileatum, a pileo, *a cap*; *i.e.*, "Capgrave."

[4] Psalm xlviii. 10.

[5] Job xvii. 1.

recurram, de qua assumptus sum. Vidique bonas et laudabiles consuetudines multorum, qui morti appropinquantes, hoc ultimum habent solamen, ut fidem corde teneant, labiisque Symbolum pronuncient, juxta illud Apostolici in Prima ad Corinthios: "Psallam spiritu, "psallam et mente."[1] Quod dictum, ut nonnulli scribunt, intelligitur de melodia linguæ exteriori et gaudio mentis interiori.

Pro hac re ad mentem rediens, totam spem meam in Fide constituo, Symbolum Fidei labiis revolvo; ut, cum dies extremus veniet, et in adventu Domini nostri, cum veniret, etsi raram, tamen inveniet fidem super terram.

Exhortator hujus rei est noster magnus Augustinus, qui in primo libro de Symbolo sic ait: "Accipite Sym- "bolum[2] Fidei, et cum accipitis,[3] in corde scribite, et "cotidie dicite apud vos. Antequam dormiatis, ante- "quam procedatis, Symbolo vos munite."[4] Hæc Augustinus.[5]

Licet enim excelsior sit Oratio Dominica Symbolo Apostolorum ratione[6] Conditoris, hoc tamen congruum est ut fides præcedat, et[7] subsequatur oratio. Unde idem Augustinus in sermone de Oratione Dominica,[8] quæ incipit: "Beatus Apostolus[9] tempora ista" (et est sermo secundus secundæ partis) "sic[10] dicit: Symbolum ergo

---

[1] 1 Corinthians xiv. 15.

[2] *Symbolum*] regulam. Pr. Ed.

[3] *accipitis*] acceperitis. Pr. Ed.

[4] S. Luke xviii. 8.

[5] *Augustinus.*] See S. Augustini Opera (ed. 1685)—vol. vi. col. 547 A.

[6] *Symbolo Apostolorum ratione*] By the careless and shameful removal of a large illuminated initial letter, in the Balliol MS., these words (and others, which will be mentioned as they occur) have been cut away.

[7] *ut fides præcedat, et*] These words have been cut away in the Balliol MS.

[8] *in sermone de Oratione Dominica*] These words have been cut away in the Balliol MS.

[9] *Beatus Apostolus, etc.*] See S. Augustini Opera, vol. vi. col. 322 G.

[10] *est sermo . . . . sic.*] These words have been cut away in the Balliol MS.

" pertinet ad Fidem, oratio ad precem, quia qui[1] credit " ipse exauditur invocans." Et paulo ante : " Ideo non[2] " accepistis prius orationem et postea Symbolum, sed " prius Symbolum, ubi sciretis quid crederetis, et postea " orationem, ut nosceretis[3] Quem invocaretis."[4] Hæc ibi. Symbolum ergo præponit orationi, ut prius credamus ea quæ necessaria sunt saluti, deinde orationibus impetremus quod salubre sit.

Cum ergo Symbolum sit principium salutis ipsis credentibus, et multa et diversa in eo contineantur, mihi quoque bonum visum est de origine hujus Symboli jam investigare;[5] et post hæc, per quot Patres, per quot Concilia Symbola sint edita; ut habeat dominatio vestra non ea quæ non habebat, sed promptiora quædam Fidei testimonia in unum collecta,[6] tamquam in uno fasciculo, ex multis ramis credibilium confecto, adversus inimicos Legis et Evangelii.

Si autem quæratur de studiosis de proprietate nominis, habemus super hac re sermonem declaratorium, quem edidit Sanctus Maximus, et ponitur in serie sermonum Augustini, parte I., sermo 54, et sic incipit:[7] " Cum apud patres nostros, sicut liber Judicum refert,[8] " quædam Israeliticæ tribus civili adversus se prœlio " decertarent, nec propter consimilem populi unius " habitum inter bellantes posset esse discretio, tribus " illa, cujus justior causa pugnandi erat, et quæ[9] " merito per Dei auxilium victoriam præsumebat,

---

[1] *oratio . . . quia qui.*] These words have been cut away in the Balliol MS.

[2] *paulo . . . non.*] These words have been cut away in the Balliol MS.

[3] *nosceretis*] nossetis. Pr. Ed.

[4] See col. 323 B.

[5] *Symboli jam investigare.*] Symboli investigare. MS. Balliol. The word "jam" is added on an erasure in the All Souls' MS.

[6] *collecta*] collocata. MS. Balliol.

[7] *sic incipit.*] See "Bibliotheca Veterum Patrum," vol. v. pt. 1. col. 39.

[8] See Judges, xii. 6. Here the words "Judices 12" are written in the margin in red.

[9] *et quæ*] quia. Pr. Ed.

" signum sibi certo in sermone constituit, ut quos una
" armorum facies confundebat secretioris verbi distin-
" gueret sacramentum.

" Quod Beati Apostoli (ut ego reor) exemplum se-
" quentes, ecclesiæ Dei, quam adversum militiam dia-
" bolici furoris armabant, mysterium Symboli tradide-
" runt, ut quia sub uno Christi nomine credentium erat
" futura diversitas, signaculum Symboli inter fideles
" perfidosque secerneret et alienus a Fide hostisque[1]
" appareret ecclesiæ, qui aut tanquam non baptizatus
" nescisset, aut tanquam hæreticus corripuisset."[2]

Et consonat huic Maximo Beatus Augustinus in quodam sermone, qui sic incipit: " Sicut nonnullis scire
" permissum est apud veteres, Symbola vocabantur[3] quod
" de substantia collecti in unum sodales in medium
" conferebant ad solemnes epulas vel ad cœnæ commu-
" nis expensas; ita et ecclesiarum patres, de populo-
" rum salute solliciti, ex diversis voluminibus Scriptu-
" rarum collegerunt testimonia divinis gravida sacra-
" mentis, disponentes ad animarum pastum salubre
" convivium." Plura exempla hujus sermonis hic expressa non sunt, quum intendimus totum sermonem sequentibus inserere.

Propter hæc et alia, quæ vidi dispersa in auctoribus diversis, me compulit spiritus meus libellum condere, in quo multa Symbola inscribentur, ut habeat dominatio vestra Fidei sanctam collectam adversus viperina[4] venena hæresum et errorum.

Et, ut facilius occurrat oculo quod quæritur, hæc erit forma dicendorum:—

De Symbolo Apostolorum;
De Symbolo Nicæno;
De Symbolo Nicæno altero;

---

[1] *hostisque*] atque hostis. Pr. Ed.
[2] *corripuisset*] corrupisset. Pr. Ed.
[3] Here the words "Symbolum quid" have been written in the margin in a recent hand.
[4] *viperina.*] MSS.—viperinia.

Symbolum Athanasii;
Aliud Symbolum ejusdem;
Symbolum Chrysostomi;
Symbolum Ieronimi;
Symbolum Toletanum;
Symbolum Carthaginiense;
Symbolum Augustini;
Aliud ejusdem;
Item aliud ejusdem;
Item aliud;
Symbolum Maximi;
Symbolum Boëthii;
Symbolum Rabani;
Symbolum cujusdam auctoris ignoti;[1]
Quatuor libelli Augustini de Symbolo.[2]

---

[1] Here is inserted in the margin: "Item—Symbolum Hugonis." This was omitted by the scribe in the Dedicatory Epistle in the MS. Balliol, and has been there inserted in the margin by Capgrave himself. In both MSS. the Exposition of the "Symbolum Hugonis de Sancto Victore" is found in its proper place.

[2] Here follows a copy of the Apostles' Creed; one article being assigned to each of the Twelve Apostles.

APPENDIX III.

OF CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.

ONLY one MS. of this work is now extant, and that is the Author's autograph.

It is preserved in the Library of Balliol College, Oxford, and was the gift of William Gray, Bishop of Ely, to whom the work itself is dedicated. It seems, therefore, only reasonable to suppose that this is the identical copy which was given by Capgrave to the Bishop.

It is a fine MS. in folio, ff. 178, written upon vellum, in two columns.

The initial letter (as in the case of the MS. of the Commentary on the Creeds) has been cut away, and that so carelessly as to destroy the opening sentence of the Dedicatory Epistle. The wanting words have been supplied conjecturally, and by collation with the opening sentences of similar Dedications, in a note subjoined to the text.

At the bottom of the first page are written the words "In crastino Francisci." At the end of the MS. occurs the usual inscription, "FELICITER PER CAPGRAVE," and the Author's monogram.[1]

---

[1] See the "Chronicle of England," page 4.

It will be observed that this Epistle contains the interesting record of Capgrave's visit to the city of Rome, on which occasion he is supposed to have compiled his work on the Antiquities of that City, now no longer extant, but of which a small and very curious fragment has been accidentally preserved. — See the "Chronicle of England," Appendix IV., page 355 *et seqq.*

THE DEDICATORY LETTER

TO

WILLIAM GRAY, BISHOP OF ELY.

. . . . . venerabili . . . . . dilecto . . . . . episcopo, suus inter doctores . . . . . titulo Heremitarum . . . . . omnem . . . . . mentis . . . . quicquid aut dici aut cogitari melius possit.[1]

Reminiscor, sancte antistes, quanta pia visitatione vestra in me miserum peregrinum atque Romæ infirmum dilectionis exenia tribuistis; et nunc, a sollicitudine officii mei penitus absolutus, licet tarde veniens, munus possibilitatis meæ vobis decrevi mittendum.

Diu enim corde gessi aliquod opus ad utilitatem ecclesiæ condere; in quo opere nihil præstantius ad me pertinere arbitrabar, quam ad prudentiam vestram illud

---

[1] . . . *venerabili* . . . *possit.*] The first few lines of this Dedication have been disgracefully mutilated by the careless removal of a large initial letter. A comparison of the fragments given in the text with the commencements of other similar Dedications by Capgrave, leads to the conjecture that the sentence originally stood as follows :—[" Domino suo] venerabili [et super omnes] dilecto, [domino Willelmo Eliensi] episcopo, suus inter doctores [minimus], titulo Heremitarum [sancti Augustini insignitus], omnem [subjectionem] mentis [et] quicquid aut dici aut cogitari melius possit."

mittere; maxime cum studium vestrum diversis mundi plagis exercitatur; ad summam apicem fama vestra pervenerat.

Accipite igitur quod mitto, et favorabili paternitate librum tractate. Bona quæ ibi sunt, pia auctoritate roborate; mala autem, si sint,[1] funditus evellere studeatis; ut sic liber, a dominatione vestra præcedens, asterisco vel obelo consignatus, securius ad alios descendat, tanta auctoritate vallatus.

Est autem liber, quem eligimus, opusculum Beati Lucæ Evangelistæ, quod "De Actibus Apostolorum" intitulatur. Sicut enim Legi, datæ per Moysen, Prophetica Doctrina successit, sic Evangelicæ perfectioni in Novo Testamento Scriptura successit Apostolica. In qua infimum locum tenent Actus Apostolorum, quia, sicut in dictis Domini summa salutis nostræ consistit, sic in dictis et factis eorum summa constat morum, bonæque conversationis exempla monstrantur. Unde Evangelicam narrationem in Ascensione Domini Lucas terminans, opus operi continuans, Actus Apostolorum contexuit, ostendens affinitatem quam habent Actus Apostolici cum Doctrina Evangelii.

Quæ autem hic scribit Lucas oculis viderat; quæ vero in Evangeliis dixerat ab aliis didicerat.

Materia quippe in hoc opere sunt Actus Apostolici.

Intentio ejus primitivæ Ecclesiæ statum discribere, et, per beneficia Dei ei illata, dilatationem ejus per orbem factam, ut ejus fidem et conversationem posteri imitentur, notificare.

Modus agendi talis est:—Quum de Ascensione Domini incipiens, quædam quæ in Evangelio de ipsa prætermiserat, recapitulat; deinde quid egerunt Apostoli ante adventum Spiritus Sancti, quum Mathiam loco

---

[1] *si sint.*] These words were added afterwards, above the line, and with a different ink.

Judæ substituerunt, adnectens missionem Paracliti in centum viginti homines, in solio montis Sion positos. Postea, quomodo Paulus commissus est commemorat, et in ejus actibus enarrandis maxime immoratur, quomodo eum Romæ deduxit, ubi, finito biennio, martyrium subiit,—in qua urbe et hunc librum scripsit.

Et sciendum est quod, licet Actus Apostolorum nudam videantur historiam et nascentis ecclesiæ texere infantiam, tamen, si noverimus eorum scriptorem Lucam fuisse medicum, advertimus omnia verba ejus animæ languentis esse medicamentum.

In hoc ergo opere providendus est, juxta modum scientiarum secularium, quis sit auctor, cui scribat, quæ sit materia, quis finis, quæ intentio, quis titulus, quæ causa operis, et quis modus tractandi.

Auctor hujus operis Lucas fuit, natione Syrus, de civitate Antiochia, arte autem medicus, Pauli Apostoli discipulus, et totius peregrinationis suæ individuus comes.

Primum in Galathiæ partibus scripsit Evangelium: deinde Romæ Actus Apostolorum composuit.

Scripsit autem hunc librum, atque Evangelium suum, Theophilo, quoniam erat unus de Episcopis Asiæ, cujus precibus et instantia hoc opus fecit.

Materia hujus Libri sunt Actus Apostolici; maxime autem Pauli, cujus comes fuit, ut diximus, in omni peregrinatione sua.

Finis est ipsius animæ languentis medicinam propinare.

Intentio, ipsius Ecclesiæ infantiam educare, et ad plenam ætatem cibis convenientibus deducere, et ne inter adversa deficiat, confirmare.

Titulus incipit: "Liber Actus Apostolorum."

Causa scribendi triplex est:—Prima, ut numerus Apostolorum, quoniam alibi divinitus legitur, hic completus ostenderetur.

Secunda, ut electio Pauli, extra numerum Apostolorum assumpti, firma manifestatione ostenderetur.

Tertia ut prophetia Joëlis de missione Spiritus Sancti, factis evidentioribus monstraretur.

Modus tractandi: Primo ostendit cui scribit; consequenter Christi ascensionem manifestat; tertio mortem proditoris; quarto Apostolorum miracula.

Et hæc sufficiant ad præsens.

APPENDIX IV.

OF CAPGRAVE'S COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF GENESIS.

THIS is on many accounts one of the most interesting of the extant MSS. of Capgrave's works.

It consists of a large folio volume, containing one hundred and eighty-one leaves, written upon vellum, in double columns, and by his own hand.

It is dedicated to Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester; and at the commencement of the Dedicatory Epistle, in a fine initial letter, is a curious figure of the Duke, seated, and, as Tanner says, "galero indutus," while Capgrave, clad in his monk's dress, kneels before him, and presents his Commentary. The initial letter at the commencement of the Prologue contains a figure of the old monk, seated at a desk, with four books bound in red before him, and a large number in the cupboard beneath. That at the commencement of the first chapter contains a representation of the creation of man.

At the end of the MS. are the words, "FELICITER "PER CAPGRAVE;" and, immediately after, the following interesting record of the date of the commencement of the work, and the period occupied in its compilation:—"Incepit Frater Johannes Capgrave hoc opus

" in Translatione Sancti Augustini Doctoris, quæ occur-
" rit mense Octobris, anno Domini M.CCCCXXXVII.;
" et fecit finem ejusdem in festo Mathei, Apostoli et
" Evangelistæ,[1] anno Domini M.CCCCXXXVIII."

On the fly-leaf opposite is the following remarkable inscription, written in a bold, but not very clear hand: —"Cest liure est a moy, Humfrey duc de Gloucestre, " du don de Frere Johan Capgrave, quy le me fist " presenter a mon manoyr de Pensherst, le jour de " l'an M.CCCCXXXVIII."

The Dedicatory Epistle (which is annexed) contains a curious reference to the "Chronicle of England," from which it is clear that Capgrave had, at least to some extent, thrown into shape his historical materials, if indeed he had not actually written the first part of the Chronicle, as early as the year 1438, though that work was certainly not finished till the year 1461. He says that on turning over "his Annals" (*Annualia mea*) he found an entry to the effect that "in the " year 1248 the Order of the Hermits of S. Augus-" tin was established in England by Richard de " Clare, the son of Gilbert de Clare, and Earl of Glou-" cester." The passage he refers to stands as follows in his "Chronicle of England:"—"In that same ȝere " Richard, the Kyngis brothir, weddid the lady Ysa-" belle, that was wyf to Gilbert, Herl of Gloucester. " That same Gilbert was ryth affectuous onto the " Heremites of Seynt Austin; for, as it is seid, he " was aqweyntid with Doctour Gilis in Frauns; and " at his request Gylis was meved to make that bok " of Governauns of Princes. But never the lasse he " entitelid it to Philip, dauphin of Frauns. It is " saide among us comounly that this Gilbert graunted " onto Gylis that he schuld make a Hous of oure

[1] September 21.

" Ordre in Ynglond. And, because Gilbert deied or " it was doo, Richard, his son, fulfillid his fader de- " sire; for, in the ȝere of oure Lord 1230, Alisaunder " the Pope gaf us leve for to edifie coventis in these " places,—Surek, Clayanger, Clare, and Sidingborn, and " othir: but there tok no place but Clare and Wodous, " which was than clepid Bica, or ellis Vilentynge. " Than had this Ordre leve for to entyr, and bigge. " But thei biggid not gretly onto the ȝere of oure " Lord 1248." This account is entered under the year 1228. It will be seen, however, that the date at the end of the extract corresponds with that given in the present Dedication, as the period when the Order of the Hermits of S. Augustin might be strictly said to have been "fundatus," and to have "biggid gretly."[1]

It appears from Hearne's Edition of Leland's Collectanea,[2] that a copy of this work was formerly extant in the Library of the Augustinians at Cambridge. The notice there given is as follows:—" *In Bibliotheca* " *Augustiniensi Cantabr.*:—Joannes Capgrave forsan " Augustiniensis Frater et Doctor Theol., super Gene- " sin justum Volumen, ad Humfredum Ducem Glo- " cestriæ. *Arduum namque et supra vires.* Leyland. " 'Erat hic non infeliciter eruditus.'"

The Oriel MS., the only copy now known to be extant, is undoubtedly the very volume which Capgrave gave to the Duke of Gloucester. This, of course, is proved by the inscription given above. The following document, extracted from one of the Registers of the University[3] of Oxford, is a record of the presentation to the University of this and three other volumes of Capgrave's writings by the Duke of Gloucester:—

" Hæc indentura facta Oxon. vicesimo quinto die " mensis Februarii, anno Domini millesimo CCCC.

[1] See "Capgrave's Chronicle of England," page 152.

[2] See vol. iv., page 15.

[3] See Registrum F. fol. 67 *b*.

" quadragesimo tertio, et regni regis Henrici Sexti
" post Conquestum vicesimo secundo, inter serenissi-
" mum et illustrissimum Principem et Dominum in-
" clitissimum, Dominum Hunfridum, Regum filium,
" fratrem, et patrem, Ducem Gloucestriæ, Comitem
" Pembrochiæ, et Magnum Camerarium Angliæ, ex una
" parte, ac suam humillimam et perpetuam oratricem
" Universitatem Oxoniensem, ex altera parte, testatur,
" Quod dicta Universitas, de summa et magnificen-
" tissima liberalitate prædicti inclitissimi Principis,
" centum et triginta quinque volumina, per dilectos
" et speciales nuncios suos magistrum Willelmum Say
" et Radulphum Drew ad ipsam Universitatem desti-
" nata recepit ; quorum utique voluminum nomina, cum
" initiis secundorum foliorum, inferius distribuuntur.

* * * * * *

* * * * * *

" Item, Capgrave super Regum Primum . 2° fo. 'sint viv.'
" Item, Capgrave super Regum 3 . . . . . 2° fo. 'fulgorem.'
" Item, Capgrave super Genesin . . . . . 2° fo. 'arduum.'
" Item, Capgrave super Exodum . 2° fo. 'et beatitudinem.'

* * * * * *

* * * * * *

" In quorum omnium fidem et testimonium sigillum
" commune Universitatis prædictis præsentibus est ap-
" pensum. Dat. Oxon. in Nostræ Congregationis Domo,
" die et anno supradictis."

DEDICATORY EPISTLE

TO

HUMPHREY, DUKE OF GLOUCESTER.

Gloriosissimo Christianæ Fidei defensori, nefandarumque[1] hæresum studioso extirpatori, ac pauperum, qui sub Christo militant, devoto defensori, domino Humfrido, Duci Gloverniæ, suus humilis in Christo, et orator sedulus, frater Johannes, inter Doctores minimus, tituloque Heremitarum Sancti Augustini enutritus, obsequia, preces, et subjectionem.

Meditationes meas, quibus, in Scripturarum campo ludens delectabar, scriptis mandare intendens,[2] aliisque communicare cupiens, nulli alio melius destinandas putabam, serenissime Princeps, quam Dominationi vestræ, quippe qui, acumine intellectus subtilissimi vigens, studiosissime, ut fertur, in scrutandis veterum auctorum opusculis indulgetis. Et, quia excellentior via humani studii Sancta Scriptura esse dinoscitur, ideo ad eam specialissime invisendam Spiritus Ille Supremi Patris vos, ut audivi, inspiravit.

---

[1] *nefandarumque.*] The MS. has "nephandorum."

[2] *intendens.*] The MS. has "intentens," altered into "intendens."

O quam gloriosum mihi est videre Principem, in his diebus malis, quibus ab ecclesiasticis quasi repellitur scientia, scientiæ insudantem et tanquam iis, qui in ecclesia sunt et studium negligunt sanctum, exprobatio illa prophetica conveniat, qua dicitur, "Erubesce, Sidon, "ait mare."[1] Sidon enim, qui "venationem" nobis sonat, viros designat ecclesiasticos, quos Dominus venatores et piscatores fecit animarum. At maris nomine temporales dominos designari non ambigo, pro eo quod in fluctibus humanorum actuum, quasi in aquis, ipsi tumentium undarum vicem tenent. Sed quia et ii qui in pace Ecclesiæ sunt, ad fluctus seculi exire festinant, et ii qui in ipsis fluctibus sunt, quietem studii pro posse amplectuntur, merito, ut diximus, super hos prophetæ vaticinium terribiliter intonat, dicens ut coram mare etiam Sidon erubescat. Erubescant et merito ii qui, sua relinquentes, alienis avide inserviunt, cum viderint alios illorum tenere et sua.

Hæc autem digressio, nobilissime Princeps, nunc animo occurrens, magis magisque me incitavit ut studio intenderem, ne, aliis prædicans, ipse reprobus efficiar.[2]

Librum autem Geneseos, quia primo occurrerat expositionibus antiquorum, pro posse decoravi, hoc summe observans, ne ipse quocumque modo aliquod seminarium immitterem, ubi antiqui cultores quondam aravere. Causa ergo studii vestri, qua occupatissime animum libris impenditis, me maxime movit ut illuc opusculum parvitatis meæ mitterem, ubi scientia judicandi de litteratura invenitur.

Sed et, Annualia mea[3] revolvens, aliud inveni quod me monet. Scriptum enim in iis reperi, quod anno Domini M.CCXLVIII. fundatus fuerat Ordo Heremitarum Sancti Augustini in Anglia per Ricardum de Clara,

---

[1] Isaiah, xxiii. 4.

[2] 1 Corinthians ix, 27.

[3] *Annualia mea.*] See the introductory matter prefixed to this Dedication at page 226.

filium Gilberti de Clara, comitemque Gloverniæ. Quia igitur per gloriosos progenitores vestros in hanc ubertatis terram ducti sumus, digne ad illum, qui generalis fundator noster est, ego totius Ordinis novissimus hoc opus meum direxi, ut si qua Catholice, et ad Fidem ædificandam, ibi inventa fuerint, ipse non tantum fundator, sed et protector eorum habeatur. Si qua vero inculta, aut piis moribus dissona, illic inveniantur, ipse correctionis lima benignissime emendet.

Movit me etiam hoc tertium, quod contra venenosas linguas modernorum Dominatio vestra murus sit, qui tunciones excipiat. Nam et malleus ille universæ terræ, quem meminit Jeremias,[1] malleatores habet et numero et malitia satis infestos, utinam ad patientiam nostram atque consolationem. Non ignoramus, inclite Domine, quod ex bona voluntate vestra optimoque desiderio tota salus nostra dependeat, nec sumus apti ad reddendas vices tuarum sanctarum meditationum, quas Deo offerimus.

Placeat igitur interim quod adusque majora veniant in conspectu vestro hoc indignum munusculum, inclite Princeps, et animum mittentis dignemini acceptare, ac si a studiosissimo viro emanaret.

Si enim placuerit et ad notitiam meam pervenerit, tunc, sub protectione majorum meorum, ad Exodum festino, et deinde ad reliquos Moisei libros, ut habeat obliviosus mundus opuscula solito paratiora, in quibus, sicut in libris Regum vires prolum triplex expositio inveniatur, primo litteralis ex Augustino in Quæstionibus, aut Ieronimo, sive Doctore de Lira.

Deinde sequetur allegoria, ex veterum opusculis, secundum assignationem tabulæ quæ dicitur "Septem Custodiarum," quæ quidem mihi magnam occasionem dedit exponendi.

Postremo quasdam morales notulas adnexas copulavi, sparsim eas[2] colligens, ut sit summa expositionum

[1] Jeremiah, xxiii. 29.

[2] *eas.*] MS. ea.

opusculum hoc, auctore quidem, sicut sibi convenit, ex omnium Doctorum libris materiam mendicante.

Valeat in ævum Principatus vester ad Fidei stabilimentum, errorum purgamentum, pauperumque tutamentum; ut, Christo Duce, ex hujus mundi turbinibus ad Cœlestem Mansionem transferamini. Amen.

GLOSSARY.

A GLOSSARY

OF

OBSCURE WORDS AND PHRASES.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

The present Glossary needs little explanation; it explains itself. Every rare and vague word is carefully described; while words of more common occurrence in writers of the Middle Ages, and of more obvious signification, are merely mentioned, examples of their usage being added whenever necessary. Words which occur only in the Ecclesiastical writers, and early, but post-classical, words, are simply entered, with a reference to the page in which each occurs. There are also a few classical words, bearing a signification which was never attached to them except by writers of the middle ages.

In some instances a parallel has been discovered between the English and the Latin of Capgrave; and in these cases reference to the Glossary appended to the *Chronicle of England* has been given. His style is for the most part clear; in places, indeed, almost Classical, but, as the Glossary will show, encumbered more or less throughout with the peculiar

mannerisms of the mode of Latin writing which prevailed in his day.

The substitution of "deferreretur" for "deferretur" and "transferrerentur" for "transferrentur"[1] was probably a mere mistake; it is, however, worthy of notice, in connection with this reduplication, that Capgrave, in his English work, followed the peculiarity of the dialect of his county, substituting "fischerer" for fisher; "utterest," for "uttermost;" like "lesserer" for "lesser;" and "lesserest," for "least."[2]

---

[1] *See* page 97 *note* [3], and page 100 *note* [3].

[2] See the *Chronicle of England*, p. 381, § 3.

A GLOSSARY,

&c.

A.

ABBAS. An Abbot, (Chald., a father). 26.

ABBATIA. An abbey. 67.

ALLECTIVUS. Capable of attracting.

"Hæc sunt *allectiva* regum et principum, ut ecclesias diligant, et non spolient." 16.

Du Cange gives an instance of its use from Madox Formulare Angl., pag. 321:—"Mentes fidelium ad pietatis et caritatis opera per *allectiva* indulgentiarum munera excitamus."

ALTO, DE, ET DE BASSO. From high to low, inclusive of all.

"Quicquid super dictis Provisionibus et Statutis seu contentionibus, ordinaret et statueret *de alto et de basso*, nulla prorsus exceptione facta, utraque pars inviolabiliter observaret." 95.

"*Alte et Basse*, Supremo Jure, Souverainement." — Du Cange. He quotes a similar passage to the present, from Cart. Henrici Comitis Ruthenensis apud Baluz, tom. 2, Hist. Arvern., page 291; and refers also to Rymer, vol. i. p. 776. col. 3.

AMBASSIATOR. An ambassador.

"Male tractaverunt *ambassiatores* nostros." 119.

"Ambassiator est legatus principis in arduis negotiis."—Breviloq. apud Du Cange.—So also EMBASSIATOUR, in the *Chronicle of England*, p. 190.

AMODO (*ἀπὸ τούτου*). From this time forth; henceforth.

This word is frequently used by Capgrave (*see* p. 10), and is not found earlier than in Ecclesiastical writings.

ANACHORETA (*ἀναχωρητής*). A hermit; an anchorite. 198.

So also ANKIR, in the *Chronicle of England.*

ANATHEMA (*ἀνάθεμα*). The ban of excommunication (eccles. Lat.)

"Mox *anathema* ferit." 35.

ANNUALIA, *i. q.* ANNALIA.—*See* pp. 164, 230.

ANNULUS. The ring.

"*Annulus* et baculus,"

(*See* p. 36), the ring and staff, or cross, used in the ceremony of investiture.—*See* BACULUS.

*

ANNUNCIATIO. The Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary. 151.

APOLOGIA (*ἀπολογία*). An apology; a defence.

"Beatus Ambrosius in *apologia* David." 51.

An Ecclesiastical word. *See* S. Hier. in Ruf. 2, 4.

APOSTOLATUS. The Papacy. 159.

APOSTOLICUS. The Pope.

"Filius monet ut pater per *Apostolicum* exeat ab excommunicatione." 34.

Or, it may mean the Papal Bull or Decree, which was frequently called "Apostolicum." —Du Cange.

APPROPIENS. Approaching.

"Ne, irreverenter *appropiens*, projiciar a tanta dignitate." 3.

A mistake, probably, for *appropians*, from appropiare, a word commonly used by the Mediæval writers. Du Cange gives examples from the Vulgate, and from Simeon of Durham, and other writers.

APPUNCTUARE. To come to an agreement on; to settle.

"Concilium Franciæ condescenderat omnibus articulis *appunctuatis* per Concilium regis Angliæ pro pace reformanda." 119.

"Pactum articulis seu *punctis* distinctum facere."—Du Cange.

ARCHANGELUS (*ἀρχάγγελος*). An Archangel (eccles. Latin). 107.

ARCHIEPISCOPUS (*ἀρχιεπίσκοπος*). An Archbishop. 26.

ARCHIDIACONUS (*ἀρχιδιάκονος*). An Archdeacon. *See* p. 63.

"Primus inter Diaconos," afterwards "ut Episcopi Vicarius." —Du Cange.

ARMIGER. An arm-bearer; an esquire.

"Cum uno *armigero* Ricardi, comitis Arundell, qui armiger dictus est Glendore." 112.

ASSISÆ. Assizes.

"Nec regnaverunt in diebus suis perjuratores in questis et *assisis*, sicut nunc." 172.

"Apud Anglos *assisa* definitur Sessio Justitiariorum duorum itinerantium, cum Justitiariis Pacis, ut vocantur, in urbe capitali uniuscujusque comitatus bis in anno, ut audiant placita, lites componant, et pro tribunali jus dicant."—Du Cange.

ASTERISCUS (*ἀστερίσκος*). An asterisk. 222.

AUTHENTICUS. Authentic; received by authority.

"Quæcumque *authentica* et a prædecessoribus nostris concessa habeat ecclesia vestra, ea nullatenus imminuimus." 60.

B.

BACULUS. A pastoral staff: the staff given at the ceremony of investiture.

"Imperator .... episcoporum investituras, et annulum et *baculum* a Papa recipiens." 38.

"Omnes suffraganei, qui, eo absente, ordinandi fuerunt, annulos et *baculos* .... more Gallicarum ecclesiarum ab eo [*i.e.* Archiepiscopo] acceperunt." —Gervas. Dorobern., sub ann. 1183, quoted in Du Cange.

BALIVUS, BALLIVUS. A bailiff. 95.

See Du Cange, i. 542, col. 3.—This word is derived from BAJULUS.

BAPTISMUM. Christian Baptism.

"Primus erat illius gentis qui *baptismum* suscepit." 16.

The more usual form of this word in the writings of the Ecclesiastical Fathers is "Baptisma" (*βάπτισμα*). The form, "Baptismum," is, however, found in Tertullian, (Bapt. 15,) and elsewhere, but rarely.

BAPTISTA (*βαπτιστής*.) A baptizer; and (as at page 76, *κατ' ἐξοχήν*, of S. John,) the Baptist.

BAPTIZARE. To baptize, 149.

BARO. A Baron. 87.

See BARONES PARLAMENTARII. BARONES SCACARII, etc. in Du Cange.

BARONAGIUM. The Order of Barons.

"A *baronagio* sigillum suum sibi reddi, et rotulos sibi mandavit restitui." 94.

BASILICA (*βασιλικά*). A cathedral; a basilica. 97.

See Du Cange, i. 611.

BASSO, DE. *See* ALTO (DE) ET DE BASSO.

BASTARDUS. A bastard; an illegitimate child. 121.

"Willelmus, cui pro obliquo sanguine cognomen est *Bastardus*." — Adam Bremensis, cap. 168; ap. Du Cange.

BAUSANUM, *i.e.* BAUCEAUNT: The Standard of the Templars.

"Tres Cruces rubeas vestimentis exterius affixerunt, et vexillum *Bausanum* assumpserunt." 158.

The following account is given in Gurtler's History of the Templars:—"Sed tempus est ut e diverticulo in viam revertamur, indicaturi jam Templariorum 'vexillum bipartitum ex albo et nigro, quod nominant Bauceant . . . . eo quod Christi amicis candidi sunt et benigni, nigri autem et terribiles inimicis. (Jacob. de Vitriac.)" *See* page 203. § 81, Ed. 1703.

"Hoc vocabulum præsertim usurpant scriptores vernaculi de equis, quorum pelles nigro et albo interstinctæ sunt.—Le Roman de Garin:—

'Li Rois sarra sor Baucens le flori!'" *See* Du Cange, i. 627.

BENEPLACITUM. A decree.

"Henricus [de Bohun] . . . . non solum naturali prosapia, verum sed ex *beneplacito* regis, factus est comes Herfordiæ." 165.

"Desiderium optatum, vel etiam decretum."—Du Cange.

BILLA. A bill; a libel, or little book.

"Una *billa* inter ceteras inventa est, in qua supplicatur regi ut omnia bona temporalia ecclesiarum assumat in manu propria." 121.

See the verb "*to bille*" in the *Chronicle of England*, 278.

BONA NOVA. Good news. 122.

BREVE. A brief.

"A quo die, quamdiu vixit, descripta est data in *Brevibus* regis Henrici." 87.

BULLATUS. Sealed, (from BULLARE, also spelt BULLIRE).

"Cartam . . . . auro *bullatam*." 91.

See Du Cange, sub BULLA.

BURSA (*βύρσα*). A purse, or bag.

"*Bursa*, in qua erant litteræ, penderet cingulo pueri." 22.

It was originally made out of hide; hence the name.

C.

CALCETUM. A paved way; a road.

"Omnia *calceta* defossa, ut nullus inde transitus fieret." 116.

Also, a mole, or embankment for crossing a river.

"Transito . . . fluvio dicto Somme, atque uno *calceto* satis stricto." 116.

So CALCEATA, in Epistola S. Ludov. de liberatione sua, quoted by Du Cange:—"Quia fluvius Thaneos non fuit vadabilis propter profunditatem aquarum et riparum altitudine, fecimus super eum *calceatam*, ut per eam pateret transitus exercitui Christiano."

CAMERA. A chamber; the King's Privy Chamber.

"Judices in *camera* [Regis]." 103.

CAMERARIUS. A chamberlain; one who has the charge of the "Camera Regia." 63.

CAMISIA. An inner linen garment worn by women.

"Dedit . . . . *camisiam* Beatæ Virginis." 10.

See Capgrave's *Chronicle of England*, page 106, where he translates this passage thus:—"The *smok* of oure Ladi."

From "camisia" come the Italian *camicia* and the French *chemise*.

CANCELLARIUS. A chancellor. 39.

"Cancellarii qui ad *Cancellos forenses*, seu judicum, stabant."—Papias, quoted by Du Cange.

CANONICE. Legitimately, canonically.

"Primati *canonice* electo Ancelmo." 59.

CANONICUS (κανονικός.) According to rule; canonical (eccles. Lat.).

"*Canonica* electio Romanorum Pontificum." 30.

CAPELLA. A she-goat. Used of the she-goat's skin in which the corpse of the Emperor Henry IV. was wrapped, after it had been exhumed. 35.

CAPELLANUS. A chaplain.

"Præsente Godfrido comite et *capellano* suo." 10.

"Capellani" were (originally) those who took charge of the "Capella Sancti Martini" (Du Cange, ii. 123); and as "capella" came afterwards to mean the building in which the "Capella Sancti Martini" was preserved, so the term Capellanus was applied to him who served that chapel, and finally the chapels of kings and nobles, and any chapel.

CAPITANEUS. A captain; a ringleader; the French *capitaine*.

"Unus principalis *capitaneus* eorum, nomine Jekke Lister." 171.

CAPITULUM. A chapter; a section of any writing or book (late Latin use of the word). 109.

CAPUTIUM. A head-dress; a hood. 65.

CARCERALIS. Of, or pertaining to, a prison.

"Rex . . . . fratrem suum . . . . *carceralibus* ingessit tenebris." 58.

CARDINALIS. A Cardinal. 30.

Connected with the earlier signification of the word "chief," "principal," as in Serv. ad 1 Æn. :—"Quatuor venti *cardinales*."—The presbyters of parish churches generally were called "Presbyteri cardinales;" those of the parish churches of Rome, "Cardinales Primæ Sedis."

CARECTER, CARECTER ANIMÆ. The character given by some of the [Roman] Sacraments, as Baptism, Confirmation, etc.

"Præmisit tamen idem rex . . . quod noluit nec intendebat renunciare *carecteribus* animæ suæ impressis." 107.

Capgrave's own translation of the phrase is "*carectis* of his soul." *See* the Glossary to the *Chronicle of England*.

CARTA, CHARTA. A deed of gift; a charter. 70.

CARUCA. A war-vessel, called a carrack.

"Cum *carucis*, et aliis satis terribilibus vasis." 119.

CASSARE. To render null and void; to quash.

"Provisiones Oxoniæ seu Statuta abrogavit penitus et *cassavit*." 95.

See "CASS" in the Glossary to the *Chronicle of England*.

CASTRAMETARI. To measure out the spot for, *i.e.* to pitch, a camp. 37.

More properly written (as in Classical Latin) in two words.

CASTRUM. A town as opposed to a city (civitas); a town, *i.e.* without a bishop.

"Civitatibus, *castris*, et oppidis, in deditionem resumptis." 56.

CATALOGUS (*κατάλογος*). A list; a catalogue.

"In *catalogo* Romanorum Pontificum." 30.

CATHOLICUS (*καθολικός*). Catholic; of, or belonging to, the Catholic Church; orthodox.

"Scripsit imperatori, et aliis . . . principibus *Catholicis*." 114.

So used only by ecclesiastical and mediæval writers. The word was used in post-Augustan writings in the sense of "general" or "universal."

CAUTELA. Prudence; caution; circumspection.

"Janus *cautela* minor." 66.

CEDULA. A schedule; a paper.

"*Cedulas* in vicis et plateis tali sententia repletas seminaverunt." 120.

CELEBRARE. To celebrate the Mass.

"Ad altare Beatæ Katerinæ *celebrans*." 182.

CERTIFICO. [*i.e.* certiorem facio].

"Cui Christus apparens de lancea *certificavit*." 10.

A form "certioro" was used, but only in juridical Latin, and chiefly by Ulpian.

CERTUS. A certain, in the sense of "quidam."

"*Certis* de causis." 101.

"Ducentes cum per *certas* custodias et dominationes." 109.

CHARTA. *See* CARTA.

CHRONICA (*χρονικός*). A chronicle.

"Godfridus Viterbiensis in sua *chronica*." 11.

The form "chronicon" is also used.

CINGULUM MILITIÆ. *See* MILITIÆ CINGULUM.

CIRCUMSTANTIA. Circumstances.

"Multa sunt hic notanda . . . . in puniendis malis, — persona, tempus, *circumstantia*." 14.

A very rare word, especially in this tropical sense. *See* Aulus Gellius, 14, 2, 2.

CIVITAS. An episcopal city. *See* Castrum.

"In *civitate* Spira." 40.

Rarely used as a "city" in classical authors (*see* Ennius, in Non., 429, 5); never in Cicero or in Cæsar.

CLAVICULARIUS. The key-bearer.

Applied frequently by early Christian and mediæval writers to S. Peter.

"*Clavicularius* Petrus." 76.

This word was also used for a jailor, as being the keeper of the keys of a prison.

CLERICALIS. Clerical; pertaining to the clergy. 180.

CLERUS. The order of clergymen; the clergy.

"Papa, caput *cleri*." 35.

CŒMETERIUM (κοιμητήριον). [A sleeping room]; a burial ground; a cemetery (eccles. Lat.).

"Effoditur, et a *cæmeterio* ejicitur," 34.

CŒNOBIUM (κοινόβιον). A convent.

"Præter ecclesias multas et *cænobia* quæ construxit." 15.

COETANEUS, COÆTANEUS. A contemporary. 48.

COLUMNA. A column; the division of a page of a book. 182.

COMES. A Count; an Earl. 9.

Of very frequent occurrence. *See* the article in Du Cange, ii. 450-460.

COMESTIO. A meal; a feast.

"Hæc . . . . *comestio*, pessimi humoris illatrix, et consimilium vehemens excitatrix, senile corpus infrigidans letaliter, subitam fecit perturbationem." 66.

COMETA. A comet. 57.

"Cometes" [κομήτης] is the usual form, but "cometa" is found in late writers as an accessory Latin form.

COMITATUS. A county. 29.

"*Comitatus* apud Anglos, est locus publicus in quo vicecomes uniuscujusque provinciæ, quæ apud illos comitatus nomen obtinet, jurisdictionem suam exercet;" also the "dominium" itself, *seigneurie*. *See* Du Cange.

COMITE. *See* page 141, *note*. This word is possibly a mistake for "*comi*;" but *see* "Epist. Alcuin. ad Monachos Vedastinos" (circa annum 796), apud Marten. vol. i. Ampliss. Collect. col. 51.

COMITISSA. An Earl's wife; a Countess.

"Duxit . . . . Henricus Helianoram . . . . *comitissam* Pictavorum." 69.

COMITIVA. A band; a company.

"Sibi . . . . innumerabilem stipendiariorum cœpit adjungere *comitivam*." 56.

COMMENDATIUNCULA. A brief commendation; a commendatory writing. 96, 114.

COMMONITORIUS. Commonitory; calling anything to mind.

"Cum litteris Lucii Papæ *commonitoriis*." 80.

Du Cange explains "commonitorium," *i. e.*, "Commonitoriæ litteræ," to mean "Epistola qua quis commonetur ut rem mandatam exsequatur."

COMMUNITAS. The whole community ; the commons.

"Coram dominis et tota *communitate*." 10.

COMMUNIVIT. He ground small to powder.

"Rex statuas hæreticorum justitiæ malleo *communivit*, et in cineres redegit." 123.

"Communire" means to fortify, or protect ; the word in the text is probably a mistake for "comminuit."

COMPENDIOSE. Compendiously; in an abridged, or compendious form.

"Hæc . . . . dicta sufficiant; *compendiose* procedere intendo." 27.

"Compendiosus" (opposed to "damnosus") signifies "advantageous." It is found with the signification of "abridged" in Appuleius (M. 11. 268), and Sidonius Apollinaris (Ep. 7. 10).

COMPLACENTIA. A delight ; a pleasure; also a giving of pleasure; a paying of honour.

"Si enim sanctis non esset *complacentia*, quod diversa membra eorum ad diversas ecclesias transferrentur." 11.

COMPLEX. An accomplice ; an associate in crime ; also, not necessarily in a bad sense, a partizan. 88.

COMPROMITTERE. To promise mutually ; to accept the decision of an arbiter. 84.

This word was used occasionally by Cicero, and is found not uncommonly in Ulpian, and writers on law. — *See* "COMPROMIT" in the Glossary to the *Chronicle of England.*

CONCILIARIUS, CONSILIARIUS. A counseller and adviser ; a sharer of counsels. 95.

CONCILIUM. A council ; especially a council of bishops assembled to discuss matters ecclesiastical. 58.

CONCINUS, *i.e.* Concinnus, the penultimate syllable being shortened for the sake of the metre. 43.

CONCITO. Immediately.

"Filia præcipitur *concito* sponsa dari." 22.

The word occurs in a quotation from Godfrey of Viterbo, but is an alteration by Capgrave for "quam cito." *See* Du Cange, ii. 513.

CONDESCENDERE. To give one's consent to.

"Concilium Franciæ *condescenderat* omnibus articulis appunctuatis." 119.

CONDICTUS. A command.

"Ex *condicto*." 78.

Explained by Du Cange to be equivalent to "Decretum," "Mandatum," "Edictum."

CONFESSOR.

(1) One who confesses Christianity (an eccles. word).

"In festo Sancti Cuthberti, Episcopi et *confessoris*." 110.

(2) A priest who receives confessions ; a confessor.

"*Confessor* sit tibi unus sapiens et prudens." 111.

CONFIRMARE. To confirm; to administer the rite of Confirmation.

"Hunc Edwardum baptizavit Otto legatus, et *confirmavit* Sanctus Edmundus archiepiscopus." 90.

CONFORTO. To strengthen greatly ; to relieve.

"Peregrinationem suam dulcissimo contubernio *confortans*." 100.

A late word, used frequently in the Vulgate.

CONQUERERE, CONQUÆRERE. To conquer, or acquire. 71.

So " conquerementum, " the acquisition itself ; the thing conquered.

CONQUESTOR. A conqueror.

" Willielmus *conquestor*."—William the Conqueror. 55.

CONQUESTUS. The Conquest, *i. e.* of England, by William of Normandy.

" Anno regni regis Edwardi Primi post *Conquestum* XXII." 138.

POST CONQUESTUM. " Putandi ratio apud Anglos, qua annus quo rex inauguratus seu regnum auspicatus est designatur."—Du Cange, ii. 544.

CONSTABULARIUS. *i. e.* " Comes stabuli " (originally, the keeper of the King's stables) ; the Constable.

" Dominus de la Bret, *Constabularius* Franciæ." 117.

CONSUETUDO. A custom; a right.

" Apud Claringdon, coram rege et magnatibus regni, facta est recordatio Libertatum regiarum et *consuetudinum*." 74.

CONSUL. A Count ; an Earl.

" *Consul* de Morteville." 57.—" Ricardus *consul* Cestriæ." 63.

" *Comites* a comitatu . . . . nomen sumpserunt, qui etiam dici possunt *Consules*, a consulendo."—Du Cange.

CONTRAVENIRE. To contravene.

" *Contraveneri* [*sic in* MS.] vel impugnari permittam." 105.

CONTUITA. Consider. 131.

CONVENIENTIA. Appropriateness ; suitableness.

" Magnam hujus rei *convenientiam* fodiens." 2.

Approaching nearer to our word " convenience " than to the classical meaning of "agreement," or " symmetry."—It is a Ciceronian philosophical word.—So, also in the *Chronicle of England* : —" ȝet fynde I a grete *conveniens* in ȝoure tytil." *See* page 4.

COPIA. A copy of any writing or document.

" Propinquitatem sanguinis probavit [Henricus IV.] ex antiquis quidem gestis, quorum veras *copias* necdum vidi." 107.

COPIOSITAS. Abundance.

" Magnarum possessionum *copiositate* basilicam replens." 145.

CORNUACOPIA, *i.e.* CORNU COPIÆ. The emblem of plenty and fruitfulness.

" Magno strepitu applaudunt, quod in futuro anno *cornuacopia* responsura sit in omnibus." 25.

CORONA. A reign.

" In anno primo *coronæ suæ*." 47.

CORONATIO. A coronation. 77.

CORPORALITER. With the body ; in one's own proper person.

" Sancta Dei Evangelia, per me *corporaliter* tacta." 105.

CURIA.

(1.) A council.

" Generalis *curia* Maguntiæ congregatur." 34.

(2.) The court of a king.

" Tenens *curiam* suam apud Londinum." 39.

CURIALIS. Of, or belonging to, a Court.

" Thomas [Becket] vitam *curialem* in sanctissimam convertit." 74.

CURTMANTELES.

I. e., " Cum curto mantello." 81.

—A name given to Henry II., because he was the first to introduce the short mantle, worn in Anjou, into England.

D.

DAPIFER. A steward; a seneschal.

"Multi proceres, *dapiferi*, camerarii, pincernæ regis." 63.

Du Cange quotes the following explanation of the signification of this word from the Chronicon Moriniacense, lib. 2. :— "Willelmus dapifer, qui et seneschallus appellatur."

DATA. A date; "Anni, mensis, dieique et loci, Diplomati seu Chartæ adscripta notatio."—Du Cange.

"A quo die [coronationis], quamdiu vixit, descripta est *data* in Brevibus Regis Henrici." 87.

DEBRIATUS. Inebriated (used both in a bad and good sense).

"Recte dulcedine Verbi *debriatus*." 2.

So Lambertus Adensis (page 170, quoted by Du Cange,) "Spiritus Sancti *debriatus* et perfusus gratia."

DECAPITARE. To behead. 103.

DECEPTORIUS. Deceitful; deceptive. 119.

DELICIOR. The comparative of "delicius"=deliciosus.

"Prandia disposuit sibi *deliciora* sacerdos." 21.

But it is very probable that *deliciora* is a mere mistake in the MSS. for *deliciosa*, which is the reading of the Printed Edition of the Pantheon.

DELPHINUS. The Dauphin of France.

"Inter hæc, misit haraldum ad *Delphinum* Franciæ." 115.

"Apud nostros dignitatis species, qua donantur vulgo Comites Viennenses, quod complures ex iis qui primo Comitatum Viennensem possedere, hoc nomine appellarentur." — Du Cange. — So also DELFYN in the *Chronicle of England*. 206.

DENARIUS. A penny.

"Statuit ut *denarii* et oboli essent rotundi." 59.

See the long article in Du Cange, in which every kind of "denarius" is mentioned and explained.

DEOCULARE. To put out the eyes. 67.

DESTINARE. To send.

"Regi . . . . super hoc Privilegium *destinavit*." 71.

DIABOLUS (διάβολος). A calumniator, or false accuser; the devil. 81.

DIADEMARE. To put on a diadem; to crown.

"In Pentecoste fuit *diadematus*, cum regina sua nova, apud Londoniam." 64.

Another form, "diadematizare," was sometimes used.

DICATIO [PRÆDICATIO, C.C.C.]. Preaching. 159.

DIES LUNÆ. Monday. 107.

DIES MARTIS. Tuesday. 107.

DIES MERCURII. Wednesday. *See* Inscript. Murator., 402, 7.

DIŒCESIS. (διοίκησις). A Diocese (an eccles. word). 59.

DISCIDIUM. A rending asunder; a schism.

"*Discidium* procurbant in Ecclesia." 31.

DISCRETIO.

(1) Discretion; judgment.

"In quo facto, quanto . . . . majori *discretione* procedis, tanto, &c." 71.

(2) A distinguishing; a discerning.

"Nec, propter consimilem populi unius habitum, inter bellantes posset esse *discretio*." 215.

DISCUTIO. To discuss.

"Utrisque partibus *discussis*, ad solam veritatem elucidandam sedulus existo." 102.

A post-classical signification of the word: in classical Latin it signifies to "disperse," to "dissipate."

DISPARERE. To disappear; to vanish.

"His dictis, vir ille *disparuit*." 76.

It also means generally "to fly" or "to escape":—"Quod sentiens Rodoaldus noctu fuga lapsus *disparuit*." — Will. Gemetic. Hist. Norman. vol. x. Collect. Hist. Franc., pag. 192. — Du Cange.

DOMINATIO. Lordship, (of a person).

"Petierunt a *dominatione* sua." 167.

DOMINICUS. Of, or belonging to, THE LORD.

Hence "Dominica dies," (or simply "*Dominica*"), *i.e.* Sunday. 75.

DOMINIUM. A dominion.

"Regnorum et *dominiorum*." 104.

In classical Latin, "a banquet;" and later as a technical term in juridical Latin, "right of ownership;" not necessarily implying actual "possessio" (which might be interrupted). *See* Gai. Just. 1. 54; Cod. Justin. 2, 3, 20.

To demesne. 169.

DONARIUM. A donation; a gift.

"Dato Fratribus suæ munificientiæ *donario* satis gratifico." 101.

In classical Latin "donarium" signifies the part of a Temple in which votive offerings were preserved. Ovid (Fasti, 3, 335) applies it to the Temple or shrine itself. In Livy and Cæsar it is used for the votive offering itself, hence, as in this instance, any offering.

DUCATUS. A duchy.

"Roberto, filio suo primogenito, Normanniæ *ducatum* concessit." 55.

DUCISSA. A duchess. 21.

DUX. A duke. 6.

E.

EBDOMADA. *See* HEBDOMADA.

ECCLESIA (ἐκκλησία). In ecclesiastical Latin,—

(1) A place of Christian assembly, *i.e.* a church.

"Solitum enim erat regibus ejus seculi *ecclesias* construere." 16.

(2) The religious assemblies collectively called the Church.

"Alter in tanta devotione erga *ecclesiam* mansit, etc." 16.

EMBASSIATOR. *See* AMBASSIATOR.

EPIPHANIA (τὰ ἐπιφάνια, sc. ἱερα). The manifestation of CHRIST to the Gentiles; the feast of the Epiphany. 113.

EPISCOPALIS. Of, or pertaining to, a Bishop,

"*Episcopalis* gratia, donum... Spiritus Sancti." 31.

EPISCOPATUS. A Bishop's See; a Bishopric. 93.

EPISCOPUS (ἐπίσκοπος). An overseer ; (in eccles. Lat.) a Bishop. 26.

EREMITA (ἐρημίτης). A hermit.

"Fratrum *Heremitarum* Sancti Augustini exiguus." 1.

So HEREMIT in the *Chronicle of England*, p. 123.

ETYMOLOGIARE. To give the etymology of.

"Etsi . . . . . hoc nomen *etymologiatum* non inveniatur." 2.

EVANGELIUM (εὐαγγέλιον). The Gospel. 105.

A word of frequent occurrence in all Ecclesiastical writers.

EXCEREBRARE. To remove the brain.

"Corpus itaque regis defuncti ita eviscératum et *excerebratum*, saleque multo respersum est." 67.

Fr. "Escerveler."—"Lit. Remiss. ann. 1469, in Reg. 195. Chartoph. Reg. ch. 315. 'Icellui Pierre print ung queminel et s'en ala vers ledit Jehan, en disant que d'icellui il donroit si grant cop, qu'ille *escherveleroit*.' "—Du Cange.

EXCINERARE. To burn to ashes.

"Primo tractus et suspensus, deinde in partes divisus et evisceratus, ac postremo flammis *excineratus* est." 123.

EXCOMMUNICARE. To shut out from the Communion of the Faithful ; to excommunicate. 81.

EXENIUM, *i. q.* Xenium (ξένιον). A gift ; a tribute (of affection, etc).

"Reminiscor, sancte antistes, quanta pia visitatione vestra in me miserum peregrinum atque Romæ infirmum dilectionis *exenia* tribuistis." 221.

"Munus, donum, oblatio, atque quævis præstatio, vel tributum, sub nomine doni."—Du Cange.

EXILIARE. To drive into exile.

See page 101, note (1), and page 103, note (1) : in the former case "exiliavit," and in the latter "exiliari" must be returned to the text, as mediæval words, instead of the classical "exulavit," and "exulari."—"Lex Alemau. Tit. 35, § 1: '*Exiliet* eum de Provincia.' Annales Franc. S. Nazarii, ann. 787 : —'Fraudulentissimos eorum in Franciam *exiliavit*.' "—Du Cange.

EXIMIA. The robes or ensigns of office.

"Episcopum Sarisberiæ sacris vestibus indutum, illud officium tanquam infra diœcesim suam facere volentem, exutis *eximiis* cedere coëgit." 60.

EXTIRPATOR. An extirpator ; an eradicator. 228.

F.

FAVILLARE. To burn up ; to blaze forth.

"Ardens furore *favillat*." 23.

"Favillesco"—to be reduced to ashes—was used by late writers, as by the grammarian Fabius Fulgentius (A.D. 530) in his Contin. Virgil.

FEODUM seu BENEFICIUM. *See* the elaborate article in Du Cange, iii. 258, *et seqq*.

"In ducatu Normanniæ, et comitatibus Andegaviæ, Cenomanniæ, Turoniæ, et Pictaviæ, et eorum *feodis*." 92.

FEOFARE. "Feudum in aliquem conferre, investire, donare.—*Feofator*, Donator." — Du Cange. *Feofatus*, Donatus.

"Quando pater alicujus moritur *feofatus*, de jure filius portabit hereditatem." 87.

So also ENFEFF in the *Chronicle of England*, p. 194.

FINALITER. At length ; finally.

" Hæc omnia *finaliter* patienter tulisse." 35.

FORTALICIA, FORTALITIA (also FORTALITIUM). A fort ; a means of defence.

" Venit ad Hareflew, quam multis munitionibus, et cautelis, et *fortaliciis*, cepit." 115.

" Will. de Podio Laurentii, cap. 85 :—' Et eis *Fortalitia* tradebantur, et ad suam dabant obsides voluntatem ' . . . . Elmham, Prior de Lenton, in Gestis Henrici V., Regis Angl. ann. 5 :—

' Ad *Fortalitii* facti murique cacumen,
Hostes portabant dolia, ligna, petras.'

' Domus Fortalitii ' in Charta Guidonis Abb. ann. 1200, tom. 1. Macer. S. Barbaræ Lugdun."—Du Cange, iii. 375.

G.

GALEA. A galley.

" Dux Venetiarum cum *galeis* sibi per aquam occurrens." 100.

" Will. Britoni in Vocabul. MS. ' Est genus navigii velocissimi.' Ebrardus in Græcismo : ' Armo caput Galea, pelagus percurro *Galea*.' Alius Poeta apud Matth. Paris, ann. 1243:—

'In terris Galeas, in aquis formido *Galeias*.' "—Du Cange.

GESTA. The records of deeds.

" Quam probavit ex antiquis *gestis*, quorum veras copias necdum vidi." 107.

GLOSSA (γλῶσσα). An obsolete word, requiring explanation ; a collection of such words and their explanations, a commentary.

" *Glossa* super hunc locum." [Eccl. x. 16.] 130.

GRAMERCY. " Many thanks ; much obliged ; a form of returning thanks, contracted from *grand merci*, Fr. In the second volume of Lacombe's *Dict. du Vieux Langage*, we find it in the form of *gramaci*, which he explains *grand merci*. . . . . *Grand mercy* occurs at length in Chaucer's Canterbury Tales."—Nares' Glossary, p. 211.—" Mercy Gramercy " was the title of a book written by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster. *See* page 163, *ad finem*. Among the examples of the use of this word given by Nares, the following are worthy of notice :

" Be it so, Titus ; and *gramercy* too. "

— Tit. Andr. Act i. last line.

" *Gramercy charme* means,—thanks to the charm that secured it. Hence too the phrase of getting anything for *gramercy*, which meant getting it for thanks, or for nothing. ' Paying every lytle for them, yea mooste commonlye *getting them for gramercy*.' — Robinson's More's Utopia, N. 3. Thus a thing ' not worth *gramercy* ' means, not worth thanks.

' No ladies had such lives.
M. Some few upon necessity,
perhaps, but that's not worth
grammercy.'—Jovial Crew, O.Pl.

x. 412. It appears sometimes in the plural form :—

'*Gramercies*, Tranio, well dost thou advise.'

—Tam. of the Shrew, i. 1. Chaucer has it in its original form :—

'*Grand mercy*, Lord God, thank it you (quoth she)
That ye hau saved me my children dere.'

—Clerke's Tale, 8964."

GRATIFICUS. Kind ; pleasing.

"Dato Fratribus suæ munificentiæ donario satis *gratifico*." 101.

GROSSUS. Thick ; large ; fat.

"Audiens . . . . quod *grossior* esset scapulis quam domino suo rege." 65.

This word is found in the late writers. *See* Sulpic. Sever. (A.D. 420), Dal. 1, 21 ; also Vulg. Ezechiel, 41, 25.—*See* Du Cange, iii. 572.

GUERRA, WERRA. War. 112.

See Du Cange, iii. 585, et seqq.

H

HABITACULUM. A habitation (post-class.).

"In corde tuo *habitaculum* Deo præparasti." 15.

HÆRESIS (αἵρεσις). A heresy (eccles. Latin). 112.

HÆRETICUS (αἱρετικός). Heretical (eccles. Latin). 112.

HARALDUS, HERALDUS. A herald. 115.

See Du Cange, iii. 646 *et seqq.*

HASTILUDIUM. A tournament. 164.

"Joan de Janua :—'*Hastiludium*, quidam ludus militum, cum hastis, scilicet quando equites currunt et frangunt hastas.'"—Du Cange.

HEBDOMADA. The space of seven days ; a week. 57.

Hebdomas (ἑβδομάς) is used by Cicero (Fam. 16, 9, 3).

HEREMITA. See EREMITA.

HISTORIOGRAPHUS (ἱστοριόγραφος). A historian ; a writer of history, (post-class.). 199.

HOMAGIUM. Homage. — FACERE HOMAGIUM, to do homage. 74.

HOMILIÆ. Homilies; sermons. 205.

Of the original meaning of the word Du Cange has the following :—

"Familiares collationes, quæ a præsulibus habebantur in ædibus Sacris, in quibus et interrogabant populum, et interrogabantur a populo : ita enim ὁμιλίαν a λόγῳ seu oratione distinguit Photius in Bibl. Cod. 172."

HONORIFICENTIA. A paying of honour (post-class.).

"Cum ea qua decuit *honorificentia* tumulatus est." 97.

Formed from the classical word "honorificus."

HORA TERTIA. Nine in the morning.

"Sol obscuratus est ix. Kal. Julii, a *tertia* usque ad nonam." 47.

HORA NONA. Three in the afternoon. 47.

HOSPITALIA. Houses in which the poor and pilgrims were received and entertained. 163.

So in Epistol. Alcuini:—"Consideret quoque tua diligentia in eleemosynis, ubi Xenodochia, id est *Hospitalia*, fieri jubeat, in quibus sit quotidiana pauperum et peregrinorum susceptio."—Du Cange.

HOSTIA. The wafer used in the celebration of the Eucharist; the Host.

"Colligebat spicas de nocte in agro suo, et clam virgas excutiens, et manu propria *hostias* faciens, distribuit per ecclesias." 144.

HOSTIS. A host; an army.

"Rex . . . . a longe conspicit Francorum cohortes, et inter utrosque *hostes* vallem mediam." 116.

See Du Cange, iii. 710-719.

HUMILIARE. To humiliate; to humble a person (post-class.).

"Comes . . . se *humiliasset* ad gratiam regis." 110.

HYDROMELLUM. A sweet drink made of honey and water; mead; hydromel.

"Vas plenum potu illo, quod, ex aqua et melle confectum, *Hydromellum* vocant." 25.

The form "hydromeli, -itis" (ὑδρόμελι), is found in Pliny (14, 17, 20; 27, 5, 20) and elsewhere.

HYPOCRISIS (ὑπόκρισις). Hypocrisy. 121.

I.

IMPIGNERARE, IMPIGNORARE. To give in pledge. 56.

"Oppignerare, pro pignore tradere."—Du Cange.

IMPUBERTAS. Youth.

"Propter *impubertatem* suam." 88.

INCARCERATI. Imprisoned persons.

"*Incarceratos* malefactores a vinculis absolvit." 7.

INCONFESSUS. Before having made confession.

"Nullo die .... *inconfessus* Sacrificium obtulit." 181.

INCONSUTILIS. Not sewn together; seamless.

"Tunica Christi *inconsutilis*." 71.

So in Vulg. Interpret. Joh. xix. 23.

INDETERMINATUS. Indeterminate; unsettled.

"Litigium .... reliquit *indeterminatum*." 60.

INDEVOTUS. Impious; irreligious.

"Ad declarandum *indevotis* et rudibus populis Christianæ Fidei veritatem." 71.

Used by Justinian, Cod. 8, 55, 35.

INFERNALIS. Infernal; of, or belonging to, the lower regions (a post-class. word). 122.

INFESTATIO. An offence; hostile conduct.

"Taceo hic de multis *infestationibus* baronum erga dictum regem." 96.

INFRIGIDARE. To make cool; to cause to take a chill.

"Senile corpus letaliter *infrigidans*." 66.

INSTALLARE. To install.

"Imperator .... eligitur in fraternitatem Militiæ de Gartere, et debitis insigniis *installatur*." 118.

INSUFFICIENS. Insufficient; incapable (post-class.).

"*Insufficientem* penitus et inutilem." 105.

INSULTUS. An assault; an attack.

"*Insultum* Gallorum iterum sustinuit. 116.

INTERDICTUM. An interdict; a general excommunication of a country or town, etc. for a certain period. 86.

INTHRONIZARE (ἐνθρονίζειν). To enthrone, of Kings, Bishops, etc. 59.

INTIMARE. To make known; to intimate. 96.

INTITULARE. To claim a title to any thing; to call one's own. 86.

INTROITUS. An introit,—"Antiphona, quæ a choro canitur, dum Pontifex procedit ad altare, quæ in Missa Ambrosiana 'Ingressa' dicitur."—Du Cange.

"In ea Dominica qua solet ecclesia pro *introitu* Missæ hoc officium cantare:—'Omnia quæ nobis fecisti, in vero judicio fecisti.'" 128.

INVESTURA, INVESTITURA. The investiture of Bishops, etc. 38.

See Du Cange, iii. 883, *et seqq.*

J.

JURATORIUS. Confirmed by an oath.

"Trifariam præstitit *cautionem juratoriam.*" 78.

So also in "Vita Innocentii III. Papæ, ex Baluzio, apud Murator. iii. p. 491. col. 2: 'Respondit quod in spiritualibus absolute pareret, in temporalibus autem justis mandatis parendi *juratoriam cautionem.*'"—Du Cange.

JUSTICIARIUS. A judge; the chief judge; Lord Chief Justice.

"Hubertus Comes Cantiæ erat, et *Justiciarius.*" 89.

See Du Cange, iii. 953, *et seqq.*

L.

LAICUS. Untaught; unlettered; lay. 41.

LAUREARE. To decorate; to crown.

"Hoc nomine *laureatus.*" 3.

LEGANTIA, LIGANTIA. 104.

"Dominium, seu jus, quod dominus habet in vassallum, qui ligio hominio obnoxius est, vel sacramentum fidelitatis, quod is domino suo præstat. Radulphus de Diceto:—'Homagium regi fecit, fidelitatem juravit, et rursum in suam *ligantiam* rediit.'"—Du Cange.

LEGATUS. The legate of the Pope. 30.

LEGEI HOMINES, *i.q.*, LIGII HOMINES, *q.v.*

LEGENDA. 209.

"Liber acta Sanctorum per anni totius circulum digesta continens, sic dictus quia certis diebus *legenda* Ecclesia et in Sacris synaxibus designabantur a moderatore Chori."—Du Cange.

LIBERABILITER. *i.q.* LIBERALITER. 79.

LIBERTAS.

"*Libertatum* regiarum et Consuetudinum [facta est recordatio]." *See* p. 74.

LIBRA. A pound. 92.

See Du Cange, iv. 100, *et seqq.*

LIGEANTIA. 104, *note* 4. *See* LIGANTIA.

LIGII HOMINES. Liege-men. 104, *and note.*

"*Ligius* is dicitur qui domino suo ratione feudi vel subjectionis fidem omnem contra quemvis præstat."—Du Cange.

LITANIA (λιτανεία). A litany.

"Rex jubet *litanias* fieri et processiones per totum regnum." 113.

LORICA. A haubert.

"Ipsa *lorica* aliquantulum capiti regis inserta est." 61.

"Militum, quos 'Chevaliers' dicimus, armatura maculis ferreis contexta."—Du Cange.

LUMINAR. A light; a lamp. (Eccles. Lat.)

"Tanquam *luminaria* in hoc mundo . . . . . coruscantes." 199.

In earlier Latin, a "window," or "window-shutter."

LUNÆ DIES, *see* DIES LUNÆ.

M.

MAGNATES. Nobles; magnates; vassalli majores (Du Cange). 70.

Also written *Magnati* in old MSS.

MAGNIFICENTIA. A magnifying; exaltation.

"Ad laudem et *magnificentiam* regiam." 141.

MAJOR. A mayor.

"*Major* civitatis [Roffensis]." 96.

"*Majores* dicti urbium Præfecti, nostris *Maieurs, Maires*, Angl. *Mayor*. Charta apud Madox. Formul. Angl. p. 10, 'Elyas Russel, *Major* civitatis Londoniæ.'"—Du Cange, iv. 194.

MAMMONA (μαμμωνᾶς). Riches; mammon. 202.

MANTUM. A mantle worn at their investiture by Popes.

"Clerus compatiens Papæ reddit mitram et *mantum*." 45.

"*Mantum* vero olim habitum inter præcipuas Summorum Pontificum vestes, adeo ut dignitatis investituram per illud acciperent. Ceremoniale Romanum, lib. i., sect. 2:—'Legimus superioribus temporibus, cum duæ partes in electione concordabant, Priorem Diaconorum consuevisse induere electum *Mantum* Papale, dicendo, Ego investio te de Papatu ut præsis urbi et orbi.' . . . . Gerhohus Reichersp. de Alexandro PP.:—'Oblato ei, ut mos est, per Archidiaconum *Manto*, rubea videlicet illa cappa, quæ insigne Papale est . . . .' Pandulphus apud Baronium, ann. 1124, et Willelm. Tyr. lib. 13, cap. 15, de Electione Honorii II. Papæ:—'Et quæ electio ipsius Honorii minus canonice processerat. . . . . *mitram et mantum* sponte refutavit et deposuit.'"—Du Cange, iv. 247.

MARCA. A coin of the value of thirteen shillings and fourpence; a mark. 55.

"Marca Anglicana . . . . . pro 13 solidis et 4 den. esterlingis computatur. At sub Henrico rege videtur marca fuisse tantum pondere 6 solidorum et unius denarii; ita enim in Legibus ejusdem Regis, cap. 34:—Si erga Comitem 40 sol. erga Hundredum

30 sol. et 5 den. qui faciunt 5 mancas, ut solidus denar. 12 computetur.' Est autem *manca* idem quod *marca*."—Du Cange, iv. 272.

MARCHIO, MARCIO. A Marquis. 33, 104.

"Marcæ vel Marchæ, seu provinciæ limitaneæ Præfectus; Comes Marcæ præpositus."—Du Cange.

MARISCUS. A marsh. 116.

"Gallis *Mares* vel *Marais*, quam vocem a *mare*, *i. e.*, 'collectione aquarum,' deducit Salmasius: Somnerus a Saxonico *mersc*, palus."—Du Cange, iv. 295.

MARTIS DIES. *See* DIES MARTIS.

MARTYR (*μάρτυρ*). A witness; in Ecclesiastical Latin, one who bears witness by his death to the truth of Christianity, a martyr. 10.

MARTYRIUM (*μαρτύριον*). Martyrdom (Eccles. Lat.). 75.

MARTYRIZO. To martyr. 75.

MATILDIS. Matilda (used indeclinably).

"*Matildis* imperatrici." 65.

MEDIATOR. A mediator; one who reconciles contending parties.

"*Mediatoribus* plurimis laborantibus, facta est concordia inter Regem Henricum et filium suum Henricum." 78.

MERCURII DIES. *See* DIES MERCURII.

MESSUAGIUM. A messuage. 138.

"Domus habitationi idonea; consuetudo Normanniæ, art. 271: 'Manoirs masures logées aux champs, que la coustume appelloit anciennement *mesuage*.' . . . Ut plurimum tamen *messuagium* sumitur pro modo agri mansionibus et ædificiis rusticis instructo, scilicet, hortis, areis, stabulis et hujusmodi, vel certe eo quem vulgo *masure*, seu *mansuram* dicimus, vel etiam quem *mansum* olim appellabant."—Du Cange, iv. 384.

METROPOLITANUS. An archbishop; a metropolitan.

"Eboracensis consecrandus *metropolitanus*." 59.

MILES. A knight.

"Johannes Buschi et Henricus Grene *milites*." 102.

MILITIA TEMPLI. The Order of Knights Templars. 157.

See BAUSANUM.

MILITIÆ CINGULUM. The belt of knighthood. 69.

"In hisce sacris cærimoniis *cingulum Militare* conferebatur novo Militi ab aliquo principe aut magnate, data, ut solemne erat, alapa militari, sacra faciente episcopo aut sacerdote, ensemque benedicente."—Du Cange, iv. 400.

MILLENARIUS. Containing a thousand; a millenary. 176.

MINISTER. An officer.

"Discernens quod rex Justiciarium, Cancellarium . . . . et *Ministros* eligeret." 95.

See Du Cange, iv. 415, *et seqq.*

MISSA. The Mass. 26.

"De vocabuli origine variæ sunt scriptorum sententiæ. Hanc enim quidam, ut Baronius, ab Hebræo *Missah*, *i.e.* '*oblatio*' arcessunt; alii a *mittendo*, *quod*

nos mittat ad Deum, ut est apud Alcuinum de Divino Offic. Honorium Augustod. lib. i. cap. 2. . . . . Alii rursum a *missu* vel a *mittere*, quæ vox est sacrificiorum . . . . Verum missis ejusmodi et similibus conjecturis, constans est et recepta ab omnibus viris eruditis, Bellarmino, Casaubono Exercit. 16. in Baron., Scaligero, Card. Bona, et aliis, eorumdem Alcuin, Honorii Augustod. lib. i. cap. 91., Isidori lib. 6., Orig. cap. 19., Belleti cap. 34., etc. sententia, scribentium *Missam* dictam a *Missa Catechumenorum*, ea scilicet parte sacræ Liturgiæ, in qua finita concione, et Epistolæ ac Evangelii lectione, Catechumeni exire jubebantur, Diacono dicente, *Ite, Missa est, i.e.* excedite."—Du Cange, iv. 433.

MITITAS. Mildness; meekness.

"In Moyse *mititatem* et mansuetudinem." 197.

MITRA. A Bishop's mitre. 45.

MODERNUS. Modern.—MODERNI, the Moderns.

"Ex hac re magna practica ad *modernos* sumi potest." 16.

A post-classical word, derived (like "hodiernus" from "hodie") from "modo." *See* Cassiodor. Var. 4, 51.

MOLENDINUM. A mill-house. 171.

This word is found in some of the earlier Ecclesiastical writers, as S. Augustin on Psalm 36, 99, 132.

MONACHARI. To become a monk. 159.

MONACHUS (μοναχός). One who lives alone; a monk. 24.

Used only in Ecclesiastical Latin. *See* S. Hieron, Ep. 22, 34.

MONARCHIA (μοναρχία). Absolute rule; monarchy. 84.

MONARCHUS, MONARCHA (μονάρχης). A monarch. 49, 134.

In the latter instance the MS. Cotton. has MONARCHA, and the MS. C.C.C. MONARCHUS.

MONASTERIUM. A monastery. 41.

MONIALIS. Monacha; Sanctimonialis. (Du Cange).

"Quadraginta fertur monachorum et *monialium* erexisse ecclesias." 16.

MONOS (μόνος). Used for "unus."

"M Domini C quater quadraginta *monos* patet annus, (*i.e.* A.D. 1441)." 133.

N.

NATIVITAS. A nativity; a birthday (post-class). 83.

NON OBSTANTE. Notwithstanding. 28.

Attention is called to this expression, because it is identical with the words "not withstand," used by Capgrave in his *Chronicle of England*. *See* pp. 2, 401.

NONA HORA. *See* HORA NONA.

NOTORIUS. Notorious; well-known (post-class.). 105.

O.

OBELUS (ὀβελός). A spit; an 'obelisk,' *i.e.*, a mark in shape resembling a spit, placed horizontally in the margin opposite suspected passages in books.

"Asterisco vel *obelo* consignatus." 222.

OBITUS. An obit.

"Anniversarium; dies *obitus* quotannis recurrens; Officium Ecclesiasticum."—Du Cange.

"Item, quod reservavit sibi redditus, terras, et tenementa, ... pro *obitu* suo." 107.

"Annuum vel perpetuum pro defuncto Sacrificium."—*See* Du Cange, iv. 670.

OBLIGATIO. An obligation.

"Eos . . . . . ab eisdem *obligationibus* et juramentis . . . . . relaxo." 104.

OBOLUS. A half-penny.

"Statuit ut denarii et *oboli* essent rotundi." 59.

OCTAVA. An Octave.

"Dies octavus a festo Dominico aut Sancti alicujus, quo tota solemnitas clauditur."—Du Cange. 75.

ORTHODOXUS (ὀρθόδοξος). Orthodox (post-class.). 205.

P.

PAGANITAS. Paganism; Heathenism. In Eccles Lat., used like "Paganus."

"Non *Paganitatis* errore sunt cœcati." 6.

PALLIUM. An ecclesiastical vestment; the pall. 60.

"Vestis species, summis Pontificibus, Patriarchis, Primatibus, et Metropolitanis propria." —Du Cange, v. 37.

PAPA. The Pope. 28.

"Neque illud prætermittendum, quod Papæ vocabulo tametsi promiscue ab aliis donarentur Episcopi, nullus tamen in Occidente hunc sibi titulum tribuerit præter Romanum Pontificem, qui eo nomine, tamquam sibi proprio, usus est jam inde a Leonis Magni temporibus."—Du Cange, v. 65.

PAPALIS. Of, or belonging to, the Pope. 45.

PAPATUS. The Papacy. 31.

PARACLITUS, PARACLETUS (παράκλητος). A protector; specially THE COMFORTER, THE PARACLETE. 223.

PARCELLA. A small portion; a parcel of ground. 138.

PARCIPERE. *See* page 208.—A mistake probably for participere. "PARTICIPERE in litteris Caroli regentis ann. 1359, tom. 3. Ordinat. pag. 343, bis occurrit pro *Percipere*, ut recte emendat Cl. editor."—Du Cange, v. 110.

PARENTELA. Relationship; parentage. 151.

PARISIENSIS LIBRA. A Parisian Pound. 92.

"*Libra Parisiensis* 25 solidis constabat, Turonensis vero 20."—Du Cange.

PARISIUS (*indecl.*). Paris.

"Porro . . . . . iter versus Franciam arripiens, etiam ibidem *Parisius* diadema decoris assumpsit." 128.

PARLIAMENTUM, PARLAMENTUM. The Parliament. 103.

"Colloquium, quod vulgo dici tur *Parlamentum*." Joan. de Janua, ap. Du Cange.

PASCHA (*Hebr.*) The Passover; Easter. 47.

PASSAGIUM. A crossing over; a passage; an expedition.

"In magno illo *passagio*, quod factum est in Francia." 162.

PASSIO. A suffering; an enduring (post-class.); the Passion of CHRIST.

"Unum clavum *Passionis* Domini." 10.

PATRIA. The country (in the sense of "rus" or "ager").

"Omnes pontes *patriæ*." 116.

PATRIARCHIÆ seu PATRIARCHIALES, "5 Præcipuæ Romæ Basilicæ, appellatæ, ut iis adjuncta Palatia Patriarchia: sc. Laterana, S. Petri in Vaticano, S. Pauli extra muros, S. Mariæ Majoris, et SS. Stephani et Laurentii. Vide Conciliab. Rom. ann. 1160." —Du Cange, v. 141.

PATRIMONIALIS. Of, or belonging to, a patrimony. (Jurid. Lat.)

"Normanniam, Aquitaniam, etc., quæ ei *patrimoniali* jure contigerant." 84.

PAUSATIO. A resting; rest.

"Daret . . . . . regni habitatoribus pacificam *pausationem*." 134.

PENSIO. An annual payment, or tribute.

"Annuam unius denarii Beato Petro velle solvere *pensionem*." 72.

PENTECOSTE (πεντηκοστή sc. ἡμέρα). In Ecclesiastical Latin, the fiftieth day from Easter, viz. Whit Sunday.

"Tenuit vir iste quondam festum *Pentecostes* apud Maguntiam." 26.

PEREGRINATIO. A pilgrimage. 15.

PERENDINARE. To delay; to tarry.

"Robertus *perendinavit* in regno fratris sui usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis." 56.

"Perendie" (*adv.*) occurs not unfrequently in classical writers, (*e. g.* Cic. Att. 12, 44, 33.) "Perendinatio," and "perendinus" are found in post-classical writers; but the verb in the text is a strictly mediæval word."

PERSONALITER. In person; in one's own proper person.

"*Personaliter* juraverunt." 95.

PERTINENTIÆ. Things appertaining; appurtenances. 104.

PINCERNA. A butler. 63.

"Joan. de Janua:—'*Pincerna* dicitur vini dispensator, vel potius propinator, qui porrigit ex officio poculum domino suo. Et dicitur *Pincerna*, quasi penum cernens, i. Cellarium; quia semper habet oculos ad vinum suo tempore propinandum.'"—Du Cange; who quotes, among other authorities, the following, to describe the duties of the *Pincerna*:—Theodulfus Aurel. lib. 3., carm.:—

"Adveniat *Pincerna* potens Eppinus, et ipse
Pulchraque vasa manu vinaque grata vehat."

Guillelm. Apul. lib. 4, de Gestis Normannorum:—

"Iste solebat
Crateras mensis plenas deferre Lyæo
Et de *Pincernis* erat inferioribus unus.'"

PLANTULÆ JUVENILES MINORIS ORDINIS. Ministers of the lesser Order, *i.e.*, Acolytes, etc. 139.

PLENARIE. Plenarily. 8.

PLENARIUS. Full ; plenary.

"*Plenaria* potestas." 8.

PŒNITENTIA. Penance ; *pœnitentiam agere*, to do penance. 78.

PONTIFEX. [A Roman high-priest]; a Bishop (in Eccles. period). PONTIFEX SUMMUS—The chief Pontiff, *i. e.*, the Pope.

"Gratianum Presbyterum ... in *Summum Pontificem* communiter elegerunt." 30.

PONTIFICALIS. Of, or belonging to, the chief Pontiff, *i.e.* the Pope. 42.

POSSIBILITAS. Ability ; power to do anything.

"Munus *possibilitatis* meæ vobis decrevi mittendum." 221.

See the *Glossary* to the *Chronicle of England*, "POSSIBILITE."

PRACTICA (RES). A practical lesson (πρακτικός).

"Ex hac re magna *practica* ad modernos sumi potest." 16.

This word is post-classical ; it is found in the sense of *active*, "vita practica," in the Mythology of Fabius Fulgentius, 2.

PRÆAMBULUS, -a, -um. [Walking before] ; preceding.

"Hæc *præambula*," *i.e.* "this preamble." 3.

(Post-class.)

PRÆCONIZARE. To pronounce ; vaticinari, prænunciare (Du Cange). 1.

PRÆDECESSOR. A predecessor, (post-class.) 25.

PRÆDICATIO. A public proclamation of the Gospel ; preaching. 143.

PRÆDICATOR. A preacher. 204.

PRÆDICERE. To preach. 205.

PRÆFATUS. Mentioned before ; aforesaid (post-classical). 74.

PRÆLATUS. One who is set over the Church; a Bishop; a Prelate. 74.

PRÆLIBATUS. Afore-said. 108.

PRÆNOBILIS. Most noble.

"Hæc quidem de isto *prænobili* Cæsare dicta sufficiant." 27.

A post-classical word. *See* Appuleii Metamorph. 10.

PRÆNOSTICUS. Foreboding ; presaging; prophetic of : *prænostica*, omens.

"Puto enim, quod laus illa et jubilus ille pacis *prænostica* fuerint." 127.

"Consideratis tempore, itinere, paucitate populi, *prænosticorum* quoque aptitudine." 128.

PRÆSTARE. To promise on oath.

"Juramenti regii super hoc prius *præstiti*." 80.

PRÆSUL. A Bishop ; the Pope. 42.

"Qui aliis præest " . . . .

"Penes Episcopos potissimum mansit hæc appellatio." — Du Cange, v. 416.

PRÆTAXATUS, ut *Prætactus* (Du Cange) ; afore-mentioned. 95.

"PRÆTAXARE, prius numerare, assignare."—Du Cange.

PRESBYTER (πρεσβύτερος). An elder; a priest. (Eccles. Lat.) 30.

PRIMAS. A chief Bishop; a Primate. 59.

"*Primates* apud Christianos dicti episcopi qui in civitatibus quæ ex Imperii laterculis jure Metropoleos gaudebant, præsidebant."—Du Cange.

PRIMATUS. Rule; government; administration.

"*Primatum* Ierusalem respuit." 55.

PRINCIPARE. To rule; to govern. 35.

PRIVILEGIUM. A privilege; a Papal Bull.

"Tenor *privilegii* Henrico Secundo concessi ab Adriano Papa." 71.

See Du Cange, v. 455.

PROCESSUS. Relation; mode of treating a subject. 173.

So PROCESSE in the *Chronicle of England*, page 1.

PROPHETARE. To foretell; to predict. (Eccles. Latin). 130.

PROPHETIA (προφητεία). A prophecy. (Eccles. Lat.) 126.

PROROGATIVA. A delay; a postponement.

"Etheldreda . . . . . corruptionis *prorogativam* a Domino pro munere accepit." 203.

PROTESTATIO. A declaration (post-class.). 107.

PROVISIONES. Provisions, *e.g.*, the Provisions of Oxford. 93.

PSALMISTA (Ψαλμιστής). The Psalmist, *i.e.* King David. 102.

A late word, frequently used in the writings of the Church Fathers.

PSALMOGRAPHUS. The Psalmist, *i.e.* King David. 213.

PUSILLANIMIS (pusillus-animus) Pusillanimous; faint-hearted. (post-class.) 103.

Q.

QUESTÆ, QUÆSTÆ. Quests.

"Perjuratores in *questis* et assisis." 172.

QUIETA CLAMATIO or QUIETA CLAMANTIA. Quit-claim. 93.

QUIETARE, QUITTARE. To set free; to give up.

"Eos et eorum heredes . . . . . relaxo, libero, et *quieto*." 104.

QUIETUM CLAMARE. To quit-claim.

"*Quietam clamavit* totam Vasconiam pro se et heredibus." 91.

"Cum quis renunciat juri alicui quiete et pacifice."—Du Cange.

QUIETUS, QUITTUS. Released; free. 104.

QUINDENA PASCHÆ. The Quinzaine of Easter. See page 94, *note*.

QUODLIBETUM.—"Scholasticis, pluribus abhinc seculis, de quo in utramque disseritur partem, ex eo dictum, quia *quod libet* defenditur. Hinc *Quodlibetariæ quæstiones* eadem notione. Vide Vossium, Lib. iii. de Vitiis serm. cap. 40, ubi plerosque scriptores Scholasticos laudat, qui Quodlibeta scripserunt. Ex hoc Scholasticorum vocabulo deducunt nostrum Gallicum *Quolibet*, Dictum mordax, acutum nonnunquam,

plerumque triviale, nulliusque leporis sale conditum, ideoque e politioribus colloquiis amandatum, sicut et *Quodlibetariæ* Quæstiones e saniori Theologia, quod curiositati fere servirent, non utilitati."—Du Cange, v. 569.

R.

RANCOR. A morbid feeling; crossness; rancour.

"In iram et *rancorem* animi." 66.

Another form, used occasionally, was RANCORDIA, and there is a verb RANCORARE, and an adj. RANCOROSUS.

RECOGNOSCERE. To acknowledge; to confess (*Fr.* reconnoitre). 70.

REDDITUS, REDITUS. Profits; revenues. 30, 93.

REFRÆDATIO. A chill.

"Quæ a nonnullis causa *refrædationis*, et postea mortis ejus, dictæ sunt fuisse naturalis." 66.

This word appears to be a mistake for, or another form of, some other word, probably *refridatio*. Neither form appears in Du Cange, but the verb *refridare* is there given as equivalent to "refrigescere,"—the Ital. *rifreddare*.

REGALIA, Royal dignity: jus regium.

"Omni vinculo legantiæ et *regaliæ* ac dominii, quibus obligati fuerunt." 104.

REGALIA INSIGNIA. The ensigns of royalty. 34.

REGULARIS. Regular, as opposed to Secular.

"Secularium vel *Regularium* prælatos." 104, and *note*; 158.

RELICTA.

(1) A divorced woman.

"Duxit idem Henricus Helianoram reginam, *relictam* scilicet regis Francorum." 69.

(2) A widow; a relict.

"Duxit idem rex filiam regis Aragonum, et *relictam* ducis Britanniæ Minoris." 109.

RENASCI. To be regenerated; to be born again (Eccles. Lat.) 129.

REPARARE. To betake oneself to; to repair to.

"Ut .... ad motus se bellicos *repararet*." 69.

REPAUSARE. To rest from; to repose. 117.

So also *Reposare* in Chron. Dominici de Gravina, ap. Murator. tom. xii. coll. 618, 648.

RESIDENTIA. A sitting; a presiding. 132.

RESIGNATIO. Resignation; abdication. 34.

RESPONSORIUM. A responsory. 120.

"Responsorius Cantus, Cantus Ecclesiastici species et dictus, inquit Isidorus, 'quod uno canente chorus consonando respondeat.'" *See* Du Cange, v. 731.

RESTITUTIO. Restitution, *quasi* re-institution (of the restoration of Thurstan to the See of York). 59.

RIBALDI. Good for nothing fellows; ribald scoundrels. 170.

"*Ribaldi* inter vilissimos hominum habiti, quorum vita nullius erat momenti, ex calonibus fere semper delecti, cum et calonum

in castris vices persæpe agerent, impedimenta curarent, ceteraque viliora obsequia impenderent. Ut igitur id hominum genus ex ganeonibus potissimum conflatum erat, usurpata deinde *ribaldorum* vox pro hominibus vilissimis, abjectis, perditis, etc."—Du Cange.

ROBA. A vesture ; a robe.

"*Robas* de secta una parari fecisset." 65.

These robes were made by command of Henry for himself and his brother Robert, against the festival of Christmas. — "Robæ præsertim dictæ vestes, quibus Reges ac Principes Palatinos proceres ac familiares donabant, in præcipuis anni solemnitatibus, quas ob id *festiva indumenta* vocant Matthæus Westmonast. et Matthæus Paris, ann. 1201., idem Paris, ann. 1208, etc."—Du Cange, v. 782.

ROTULI. The Rolls of the Kingdom. 94.

See Du Cange, v. 809.

S.

SACROSANCTA. Things most sacred and holy ; Sancta Evangelia, sacræ reliquiæ, crux, et alia super quæ sacramenta in Ecclesiis peragebantur (Du Cange). 88.

SCHISMA (σχίσμα) :

(1) A schism ; a separation in the Church (Eccles. Lat.).

"Propter *schism* exortum excommunicatus est." 29.

(2) Any division, secular as well as ecclesiastical.

"In tanto *schismate*," 102; referring to the deposition of King Richard II.

SCHISMATICUS. (σχισματικός). A schismatic. 33.

SCRINIUM. A casket to contain relics ; a shrine. 155.

SECRETARIUS. A secretary ; consiliorum arcanorum particeps (Du Cange). 19.

See Adalberti Vit. Henr. II. Imper. cap. 37.

SECTA., — *robas de Secta una*, robes of one suit or pattern ; made from one piece.

"Perspicuum est *sectam* dici ubi de vestibus sermo fit, vestimentorum similitudinem, qua societas a societate, classis a classe distinguitur, quod aperius ostenditur in sequentibus :—Chart. Edw. II. Reg. Angl. Rymer, iii. 945 : 'Ad ordinandum quod iidem pedites certis armis muniantur, et *una secta* vestiantur.' Litteræ Edw. III. ap. eund. v. 7. 'Omnes Wallenses prædicti, bene muniti, et arraiati, ac *de una secta* vestiti sint.'"—Du Cange, *see* "SECTA 5." vi. 152.

SECULARIS. Secular, as opposed to *regular*.

"*Secularium* regulariumve prælatos." 104.

SEDERE. To sit as a Bishop ; to occupy a See. 30.

SEDES.

(1) An episcopal seat ; a See. 29.

(2) A King's seat; a throne. 102.

SENESCALLUS. A seneschal. 84.

SENTENTIALITER. Judicially; formally. 107.

SEQUENCIA, SEQUENTIA. A sequence. 27.

"Canticum exultationis, quæ et *Prosa* dicitur, sic appellatum 'quia pneuma jubili sequitur.'" —Du Cange.

SERTULUM, dimin. of SERTUM. A garland. 87.

SIGILLUM. The privy seal. 94.

SIGNETUM. A little seal; a signet (as distinguished from the Great Targe). 108.

SIMONIA. The selling of sacred things; simony. 30.

SIMONIACUS. Given to simony; who has committed simony. 30.

SPARSIM. Dispersedly; scattered here and there, (post-class.).

"Gesta ejus .... *sparsim* conscripta." 98.

STATUTUM. A statute. 93.

STIBIUM (*στίβι*). A sulphuret of antimony, with which women used to dye their eyelids of a black colour.

"Qui adulationis *stibio* superficiem colorabant." 98.

The word is used by Pliny. *See* 33, 6, 33.

STRANGUARIA, STRANGURIA (*στραγγουρία*). Strangury. 183.

The form *Stranguira* occurs in Ordericus Vitalis, lib. 5. :—

"*Stranguiriæ* morbo gemuit cruciante molesto." —Du Cange, vi. 384.

SUBDIACONUS. A subdeacon. 139.

The lowest in rank of the greater Order of Ministers.

SUBDITI. Subjects; vassals. 91.

SUBLIMATIO. An elevation; an exaltation.

"Hæc tacta sunt de mirabili .... *sublimatione* hujus viri ad imperium." 25.

A mediæval word; but the word "sublimator" is found in very late Latin.

See "Salvian. Gub. D. 1, 8.

SUBREGULUS. *See* SURREGULUS.

SUBVENTIO. Assistance; succour. 79.

SUCCINCTUS. Short, succinct. 86.

SUCCURSUS. Succour, aid; means or chances of success. 86, 94.

SUPRADICTUS. Aforesaid. 9.

More properly written as two words.

SUPPORTARE. To protect: to favour.

"Ut, in exitu ab hoc mundo, magis horum de quibus agunt favore *supportetur*." 127.

SURREGULUS, SUBREGULUS. A vice-King.

"Frater tuus Willielmus non se clamat regem, sed *subregulum*, et hoc per te et sub te, quia illo major es, melior et natu prior." 55.

This word was used by late writers for "a petty prince." *See* Sulpic. Sever. Hist. Sacr. 2, 10.

SUSURRO. A whisperer; a tale bearer (post-class.) 130.

SYMBOLUM (*σύμβολον*). A sign; a symbol; a watchword; a Creed. 214.

SYNAGOGA (*συναγωγή*). An assembly; a congregation (Eccles. Latin). 132.

SYNODUS (σύνοδος). An Ecclesiastical Council; a Synod.

T.

TENEBROSITAS [Tenebrosus]. Darkness; gloom,

"Æthiopica *tenebrositas*." 3.

The form "Tenebricositas" is found in the Tardæ Passiones of the physician Cœlius Aurelianus [A.D. 410].

TENEMENTUM. A tenement. 107.

"Prædium urbanum, quod de domino tenetur."—Du Cange *sub* "TENERE I."

TERTIA HORA. *See* HORA TERTIA.

THEOLOGUS (θεολόγος). A theologian.

"Corpus summi philosophi, necnon et *theologi* Boëtii." 100.

This word was used, although, of course, in the heathen sense, by Cicero. *See* the "De Natura Deorum," 3, 21.

TIMORATUS. Scrupulous; reverently exact in fulfilling all the duties of religion.

"Nullo die vir *timoratus* inconfessus sacrificium obtulit 181."

Du Cange does not assign any positive signification to this word, but gives several examples of its use:—"Wippo de Vita Chunradi Salici, pag. 428:—'In Dei servitio *timorata*, in orationibus et eleemosynis assidua.' Gesta Innocentii II. pag. 77: 'Devotus et *timoratus*.' . . . . Extat in Bibl. Universit. Argent. Codex MS. cui titulus: 'Johannis Nideri Tractatus de *timorata* conscientia.'"

TONSURA. The tonsure. 76.

TONSUS. Having been shorn; having adopted the tonsure.

"*Tonsus* atque in monasterio trusus est." 149.

TRABES. A beam (used of a comet).

"Cometa apparuit, ... cui ingens *trabes* visa est de Oriente occurrere." 58.

TRACTACULUM. A short treatise. 68.

TRADITIO. Treason (for the usual "proditio.") 114, 115.

TREUGA. A truce. 90.

"*Treuga*, securitas data rebus et personis, discordia nondum finita," pax vero est finis discordiæ. *See* Du Cange, vi. 656.

TRUPHA. Fraud; a fraudulent joke or trifle.

"Galli *truphis* et irrisionibus tardabant nuncios." 114.

This word is also spelt TRUFA and TRUFFA.

"Certes je tendroie à grant *trufle*
Qui diroit que tu fusses hom."

"Le Roman de la Rose," ap. Du Cange.

TURPHA.

This form is found in the MS. Cotton., where it is a mistake for TRUPHA, *q. v.*

U.

ULTRAMARINUS. Beyond the sea.

See Du Cange *sub* TRANSMARINARE and ULTREIA.

UNUS. "A" or "an;" a certain (like the French).

"Descendit rex ad villam *unam* prope." 116.—"Sepultus est in *una* abbatia." 169.

V.

VALEFACERE. To bid adieu.

"Rebus suis *valefaciens*, ... in silvam fugit." 18.

This word is used instead of "Valedicere."

VALOR. Value.

"Ad *valorem* CCCC. marcarum." 164.

VALVASOR. A vavasour.

See the Prologue to Chaucer's "Canterbury Tales," line 368 :—

"A shereve hadde he ben, and a contour;
Was no wher swiche a worthy *vavasour*."

Tyrwhitt, in his note on this passage says :—"The precise import of this word is often as obscure as its original."—*See* Du Cange in v. In this place it should, perhaps, be understood to mean the whole class of middling landholders." "*Vavassores* vel *valvassores* generatim sunt vassalli feudales."—*See* Du Cange, vi. 747, *et seqq*.

VAS. A vessel, *i.e.*, a ship.

"Conflictum habuit in mari cum carucis, et aliis satis terribilibus *vasis*." 119.

VASSALLUS. A vassal. 94.

"*Vassals* were tenants in *vadio*, upon wage or gage, or pledge, *sc.* to render certain services to the lord or proprietor, such as to follow and assist in war, and were so far bondsmen, that, by the very nature of their tenure, they were bound or under obligation or allegiance to the performance of certain conditions."—Richardson.

VERSICULUS. A versicle (in an Eccles. sense).

"Responsoriis, *versiculis*, et orationibus." 120.

VESTIRE. To invest; to give investiture. 40.

See Du Cange, vi. 787.

VICECOMES. A Viscount. 94.

VICTUALIA. Victuals.

"Cunctis . . . . . *victualibus* vel abscondi-tis, vel contaminatis." 29.

A post-classical word; an adjective: used as a substantive, neutr. plur., by Cassiodorus (A.D. 560), Var. 3, 44; 4, 5.

VIGILLÆ. Vigils; the days before certain feasts. 88.

VILLA.

(1) A vill; a royal vill.

"Contulit Episcopo Lincolniæ *villam* suam regiam de Spaldyng." 59.

(2) A town (generally).

"In *villa* de Lenne." 109.

VINCULARE. To enchain. 128.

Vinculatus is found in post-classical Latin, but *vinculare* is mediæval: both words occur in the passage here referred to.

VIRGO. A chaste man, or woman.

"Ex consensu utrorumque *virgines* p ermanserunt." 15.—"Conjuge virginea, *virgo* permansit et ille." 17.

So used commonly in the Ec-

clesiastical fathers (*See* S. Hieron. adv. Jovin. 1, 4); and Capgrave (*See* the *Chronicle of England*) says, "Abel was the secunde son of Adam, a keeper of scheep, a *mayde*, a martire." *See* also at page 337, — "A Jesu Christe, crowne of *maydenes* alle."

Z.

ZELATOR. A friend; an adherent. 203.

So also in the *Chronicle of England*, "Good *Zelatores* of the rem."—p. 195.

ZIZANIA (ζιζάνια). The herb darnel; tares (Eccles. Latin). 205.

GENERAL INDEX.

GENERAL INDEX.

A.

Abel puts to death his brother, Eric VI., King of Denmark, and occupies the throne, 145.

Abergavenny, William Beauchamp, Lord de, *see* Bergavenny.

Abiathar, the High Priest, is deprived and exiled by Solomon, 14.

Abingdon, the Abbey of, founded by King Edgar, 134.

Abington, Edmund of, Archbishop of Canterbury, confirms Edward, son of Henry III., 90.

Abishag, the wife of David, 14.

Abner, Solomon avenges on Joab the death of, 14.

Abraham, his example quoted 196; his obedience mentioned in Ecclesiasticus, 197; justified by faith, 198.

Abrincis, Hugh de, Earl of Chester, *see* William Earl of Chester.

Achilles, Henry III. (Emperor), when a boy of fifteen, compared to, 20; Prince Henry, son of Henry II. of England, compared to, 79.

Acts of the Apostles, the, *see* Apostles, the Acts of the.

Adalbert, King of Italy, *see* Lombards.

Adam de Newmarch, *see* Newmarch, Adam de.

Adelais of Louvain, her marriage to Henry I. of England, 60, 63.

Admiral, the Lord High, John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, *see* Holland, John.

Adonijah, the son of David, is put to death by Solomon for dishonouring Abishag, 14.

Adrian, S., the Abbot, the Life of, in the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," extracted in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum," 193.

Adrian IV., Pope (Nicholas Breakspere, an Englishman), consents to the invasion of Ireland by Henry II., King of England, 71; reference to his birth at S. Albans, *ib.*; copy of the Bull sent by him to Henry II., sanctioning the invasion of Ireland, *ib.*; his Bull is confirmed by Alexander III., his successor, 73.

Adzemario, Geoffrey de Sancto, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.

Agen, Louis IX., acknowledges the rights of Henry III., in, 93.

Agincourt, Henry V. defeats the French at, 116.

Agnes (the daughter of William, Duke of Poitou and Aquitaine), the second wife of the Emperor Henry III., 26; certain particulars of their wedding, *ib.*

Aidan, S., Bishop of Lindisfarne, predicts that the hand of S. Oswald will never corrupt, 202; his charity to the poor, 204; his example to be followed by Bishops, 207.

Aiscough, William, Bishop of Salisbury, celebrates the wedding of Henry VI. and Margaret of Anjou, 135.

Aix-la-Chapelle, a priest receives Henry (III. Emperor), when a boy, at, 21; he is married to the daughter of Conrad the Salique at, 22; Richard, Earl of Cornwall, is crowned King of the Romans at, 151.

Albans, S., *see* S. Albans.

Albemarle, Earl of, —
Thomas Plantagenet, Duke of Clarence, *see* Thomas Plantagenet.

——, Duke of, —
Edward Plantagenet, Duke of York, *see* Edward Plantagenet.

Alberic, Archbishop of Bourges, distinguished in the time of S. Bernard, 159.

Albert, Archbishop of Mayence, excites the Emperor Henry V. against Pope Paschal II., 38; becomes afterwards the Emperor's enemy, *ib.*; persuades Pope Calixtus II. to excommunicate the Emperor, 39.

Albert III., Duke of Austria, entertains Henry, Earl of Derby, (Duke of Lancaster), on his way to Jerusalem, 100.

Albertus Longobardus, Archdeacon of Lincoln, 176.

Alcides, *see* Hercules.

Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto, (called by Matthew Paris, "Godefridus de Sancto Andemaro," and by Polydore Vergil, "Gaufred de S. Alexandro;") *see* Gurtler's "History of the Templars," (Ed. 1691, page 10,) one of the first founders of the Order of Knights Templar, 158.

Aldred, 205; his example recommended to be followed, 207.

Alexander III., Pope, confirms the bull of Adrian IV., sanctioning the invasion of Ireland by Henry I., 73; visits France, and summons a Council at Tours, at which Thomas Becket is present, 74; Henry II. sends messages to him, declaring himself innocent of the murder of Becket, 75; he sends nuncios to Henry, who cause him to swear to his innocency, *ib.*

Alexander IV., Pope, Ottobon, the legate, confirms the agreement made between Henry III. and Llewellyn of Wales, at Montgomery, by the authority of, 91; he permits the Hermits of St. Austin to build in England, 224.

Alexandro, Gaufred de Sancto, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.

Alexis, S., 15.

All Souls' College, Oxford, MS. at, 209.

Alphonso IX. King of Castile, sends ambassadors to the Congress held at Westminster by Henry II., 78; marries Eleanor, second daughter of Henry II., King of England, 85; his sister Eleanor marries Edward I. of England, 90.

Alsace, Philip of, Count of Flanders, *see* Philip of Alsace.

Alvisus of Artois, distinguished in the times of S. Bernard, 159.

Amasa, Solomon avenges on Joab the death of, 14.

Ambassadors, great congress of, meet at Westminster under Henry II., 78.

Ambrose, S., quotation from the Works of, 54.

Amiens, Louis IX. decides in favour of Henry III. against the Barons, and abrogates the Provisions of Oxford, at, 95.

Anathoth, Abiathar, the High Priest, is exiled by Solomon to, 14.

Anchises, the son of S. Arnulphus, the father of Pepin, King of France, 149.

Andegavia, *i.e.* Anjou, *q.v.*

Andemaro, Godefridus de Sancto, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.

Andrew I., King of Hungary, drives Peter the German from his throne, 28; is attacked and defeated by the Emperor Henry IV., 29.

Andrew, S., appears to a rustic, and reveals to him the Sacred Spear, 9.

Anglia, derivation of the name, 200.

"Angliæ Nova Legenda" of Capgrave, Notes on, 191; extracts from, in the "Bollandi Acta Sanctorum," 194; prologue of, 195.

Anjou, the men of, join Henry I. on his invasion of Normandy, 57; Henry II. of England, born in, 68; Prince Henry receives Aquitaine and, from his father, Henry II., 78; Henry II. is called "Curtmanteles," having introduced the short mantle into England from, 81; he keeps it in subjection, 70, 84; Henry III. gives up his rights in, to Louis IX. in exchange for an annual tribute, 92.

——, Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of, *see* Geoffrey Plantagenet.

——, Geoffrey Plantagenet the younger, Count of, *see* Geoffrey Plantagenet the younger.

——, on the death of his father, Henry II. becomes Count of, 69.

——, Matilda of, marries Prince William, the son of Henry I., 62.

——, Margaret of, Queen of Henry VI. *see* Margaret of Anjou.

"Annualia mea," Capgrave refers to his English Chronicle under the name of, 224, 228.

Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, being absent in Normandy, Henry I. is crowned by Maurice, Bishop of London, 58; he returns to England and marries Henry VI. to Maud, the daughter of Malcolm III., King of Scotland, *ib.*; receives the homage of Gerard, Archbishop of York, 59; mentioned, 204; his example to be followed by bishops, 207.

Antenor, the Trojan, builds Sygambria on the borders of Pannonia, and becomes the founder of the Kingdom of France, according to the Genealogy written by King Henry I., 148.

Antepopes, the,—Benedict IX., Gregory VI., and Clement II.; the great schism, 29.

Anthony, S., his Life written by S. Jerome, 198.

Anticiodorensis, *see* Auticiodorensis.

Antioch, the Sacred Spear is found at Antioch, 9; S. Peter's Church at, *see* Peter's, S.; S. Luke, a physician at, 221.

——, Gregory, Bishop of, carries the seamless coat of CHRIST to Jerusalem, 73.

Apennines, the Emperor Henry V. crosses the, 37.

Apollo, Henry I., King of England, compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 66.

"Apologia David" of Ambrose, quotation from, 54.

Apostles' Creed, the, Capgrave treats of, 214.

——, the Acts of the, Capgrave's Commentary on, 217; the MS. preserved in Balliol College, *ib.*; the Epistle Dedicatory prefixed to, 219.

Apulia, wars of the Emperor Henry II. in, 16, *note;* the Emperor Henry IV. invades, 28; the Emperor Henry VI. invades, 47; three years afterwards, he subjugates the whole kingdom of, *ib.*

——, Robert Guiscard, Duke of, *see* Guiscard, Robert, Duke of Apulia.

Aquileia, Ulric of, the Emperor Henry V. commits Pope Paschal II. to the custody of, 38.

Aquinas, S. Thomas, quotation from the works of, 7.

Aquitaine and Poitou, William, Count of, *see* William, Count of Aquitaine and Poitou.

Aquitaine, the duchy of, brought to Henry II. by his Queen, Eleanor of France, 69; he keeps it in subjection, 84; given by Henry III. to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile. 91; Henry III. is acknowledged by Louis IX. as Duke of, 93; Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, assists Prince Edward (I.) in his wars in, 152.

Archdeacons in the diocese of Lincoln, 175, *et seq.*

Arezzo, in Tuscany, taken by the Emperor Henry V. 37.

Aristotle, referred to, 206.

Armagnac, the Count of, is defeated by Thomas Beaufort, Earl of Dorset, 118.

Arms, the lawfulness of an Ecclesiastic bearing, Capgrave discusses, 173; he quotes the Decretals, *ib.*; he approves of the Bishop of Norwich, Henry le Despenser, bearing arms against heretics, 174.

Arnold, son of Ausbertus, begets S. Arnulphus, 149.

Arnulphus, S., son of Arnold, is made bishop of Metz, 149.

Arques, Henry V., on his march from Harfleur to Calais, reaches, 116.

Arthur, the Prince, appointed by Richard I. of England to be his heir, 86; murdered by the order of John, *ib.*; his sister marries Louis, Dauphin of France, *ib.*

Artois, Alvisus of, *see* Alvisus of Artois.

Arundel, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, supports Henry, Duke of Lancaster, against Richard II., 101; he had been exiled by Richard II., *ib.*; lands with the Duke near Bridlington, 102; they proceed to Bristol, *ib.*; the exile of, forms part of the third of the charges alleged against Richard II. in Westminster Hall, 103; is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106; condemns Sir John Oldcastel as a heretic, 113.

Arundel, Earls of,—

Richard Fitz-Alan, *see* Fitz-Alan, Richard.

Richard Fitz-Alan, (s. and h.) *see* Fitz-Alan, Richard.

Thomas Fitz-Alan, *see* Fitz-Alan Thomas.

Asaph, S., Bishop of,—

John Trevour II., *see* Trevour, John, (II.)

Athanasius, S., the Creed of, reference to, 210; reference to a second Creed by, *ib.*; Capgrave treats of both these Creeds, 215.

Athelstan, King, many Monasteries built by him, 16; legend concerning, 186.

Athol, David, Earl of (with Henry de Beaumont, Richard Talbot, and other nobles), assists Edward Baliol, 167; they ask permission of Edward III. to pass through England into Scotland, which is refused, *ib.*; they are permitted to go by sea, 168.

Atrebates, *see* Artois.

Auceps (the Fowler), a name given to Henry I. of Germany, 12.

Augustin, S., Capgrave, a Hermit of the Order of, 1; his authority quoted on the question of lawful war, 7; also in reference to the step taken by Henry I. (of Germany) of releasing prisoners, and giving them arms, 8; Henry of Lancaster, returning from his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, visits the tomb of, 100; quotation from, on matrimony, 136, *and note;* quotation from, on martyrdom, 144, *and note;* quotations from, 153, *and note*; 154, *and note*; 212, *and note*; 214, *and note;* four Creeds, written by him, are treated of by Capgrave, 215; the four books of, on the Creed, referred to, 215. The De Clares, Earls of Gloucester, befriend the Hermits of, in England, 224.

Augustine, S., the Apostle of England, 204; his example to be followed by preachers, 207.

Augustus Cæsar, Prince Henry, son of Henry II., King of England, compared to, 79.
Ausbertus, marries the daughter of Clotaire, by whom he is the father of Arnold, 149.
Austin Friary at Lynn, *see* Lynn.
Austria, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby) passes through, on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 100; is entertained by Albert III., Duke of, *ib.*
Austria, Leopold of, *see* Leopold of Austria.
Austria, Albert III., Duke of, *see* Albert III., Duke of Austria.
Auticiodorensis, *i. e.*, of Auxerre, *q. v.*
Auvergne, in France, subject to Henry II. of England, 84.
Auxerre, Hugh of, *see* Hugh of Auxerre.

B.

Baiona, *i.e.*, Bayonne, *q.v.*
Baldwin V., King of Jerusalem, persuaded by the Patriarch Eraclius, joins the crusade against the Saracens, 80.
Baldwin, V. Count of Flanders, is appointed Regent, during the childhood of Philip I., King of France, 148.
Bale, Bishop, the word "Capgrave" inserted after "Johannes" in the handwriting of, 1.
Baliol, Edward, appeals to Edward III. to assist him in asserting his claim to the crown of Scotland, 167; obtains the support of Henry de Beaumont, David, Earl of Atholl, Richard Talbot, and other nobles, *ib.*
Balliol College, Oxford, MSS. in the Library at, 209, 210.
Bamberg, the church at, built by the Emperor, Henry II., and his wife S. Cunegund, 15; his continual devotions there, 16; Suidger, Bishop of, *see* Clement II., Pope.
Banester, Thomas, companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.
Bangor, Bishop of,—
Hervey, *see* Hervey, Bishop of Ely.
Barbarossa, *see* Frederic I. Barbarossa.
Bardo, Archbishop of Mayence, his disputes with the Abbot of Fulda for supremacy, 26.
Bartholomew, the Monk, his piety, 205; his example to be followed by monks, 207.
——, a man called, carries the Sacred Spear through fire at Antioch, 10.
Basset, William, is made Lord Chief Justice by Henry III., 94.
——, Ralph, (of Welden), is taken prisoner at Northampton by the army of Henry III., 96.
Bateman, William, Bishop of Norwich, accompanies Henry, first Duke of Lancaster to Pope Innocent VI. to treat for peace between England and France, 163.
Batilda, wife of Clovis II., King of France, the mother of Clotaire III., Childeric II., and Thierry III., 149.
Bavaria, Henry II., called Hezilon, Duke of, *see* Hezilon.
——, Henry III., (the Lame), Duke of, is elected Emperor, 13; *see* Henry II. (Emperor).
Bavarians, the, incite Henry V. at Ratisbon, to rebel against his father, 33.
Bayeux, Robert of (William of, in "Le Neve)," Archdeacon of Lincoln, 176.
Bayonne, Louis IX. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.
Bearn, Gaston de, Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, marries the daughter of, 152.
Beatrice, Countess of Provence, gives her name to the daughter of Henry III., 90.
——, Princess, daughter of Henry III. of England, is born in Gascogne, 90; so called after Beatrice Countess of Provence, *ib.*

Beauchamp, Richard de, Earl of Warwick, receives the Emperor Sigismund (on his way to England) at Calais, 118.

——, Edward, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

——, William, de Bergavenny, *see* Bergavenny.

——, Thomas de, Earl of Warwick, opposes Richard II., 99; is imprisoned, 101.

Beaufort, Henry, (third son of John of Gaunt by Katharine Swinford), Bishop of Winchester, Cardinal and Chancellor, 117; at the Parliament held at Westminster, after the battle of Agincourt, he proclaims to Henry V. his right to the crown of France. *ib.*; he urges the people to thank GOD for the capture of Calais by Edward III., and Harfleur by Henry V., 118.

——, Thomas, Earl of Dorset (called by mistake 'of Dorchester' by Capgrave) and Duke of Exeter, 118, 121; defeats the French, 118.

Beaumont, Henry, Lord, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

——, Henry de, *see* Henry de Beaumont.

Beauseant, the Standard of the Knights Templars, 158.

Beauvais, Vincent of, his Chronicle, *see* Vincent of Beauvais.

——, Henry, Bishop of, 159.

Becket, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, his consecration, 74; swears allegiance to the Prince Henry. *ib.*; is present at the Council of Tours, *ib.*; his resignation of the Great Seal, *ib.*; Henry II. plots his ruin, *ib.*; and prevents Roger de Clare (Earl of Hertford) from doing homage to Becket for the castle of Tunbridge, *ib.*; he refuses to give his assent to the Constitutions of Clarendon, *ib.*; he excommunicates all who support the Constitutions of Clarendon, *ib.*; the King drives him from Pontigny, and exiles every member of his family from England, 75; his violent death at Canterbury, *ib.*; Henry II. sends messages to Pope Alexander III., declaring his innocency of the murder of Becket, *ib.*; the King is obliged to make satisfaction on account of the murder, *ib.*; Henry II., having done penance at his tomb, is absolved, 78.

Bede, the Venerable, Reference to the "Hebraicorum nominum interpretatio" of, 3 *and note*: allusion to his learning and piety, 205; his example to be followed by preachers, 207.

Bedewita, afterwards called "pratum Beati Edwardi," certain rebels (in the time of Richard II.) assemble in, 171, *note.*

Bedford, Duke of,—

John Plantagenet, *see* John Plantagenet.

Belesme, Robert de, Earl of Shrewsbury, accompanies Robert Duke of Normandy against Henry I., 57; flies from the battle of Tenechbray, *ib.*

Belluacensis, *i.e.* of Beauvais, *q.v.*

Benedict, S., Henry V. begins to reign on the day of, 112.

Benedict IX., Pope, and the great Schism, 29, 30; he cedes the Papal Chair to John Graziano (Gregory VI.), and is allowed the revenues derived from England as his portion, 30.

Berenger II., King of Italy, (*see* Lombards); placed by Martinus Polonus among the Emperors of the West, 13.

Bergavenny, William Beauchamp, de, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Berkeley, Thomas de, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note*; sent to announce to Richard II. his deposition, 107.

Bernard, S., draws up the Rule of the Knights Templars, 158; Henry of France (afterwards Archbishop of Sens), affected by his preaching, becomes a monk, 159; his two illustrious disciples, Eugenius III. (Pope), and Henry of Sens, *ib.*; his letters to Henry of Sens, 159, 160.

Berwick, Henry de Beaumont is present at the siege of, 169.

Besilio, *see* Hezilon.

Bibliotheca Britannico-Hibernica of Bp. Tanner, *see* Tanner.

Bica, *see* Woodhouse.

Bittering, William, a benefactor of the Austin Priory at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Bituricensis, *i.e.* of Biturix, or Bourges, *q. v.*

Blanche, daughter of Henry, Duke of Lancaster (confused in the text with Constance, daughter of Peter the Cruel, King of Castile), 98; her marriage to John of Gaunt, Earl of Richmond, mentioned, 164; they were married at Reading, *ib.*

Blanche, the Princess, daughter of Henry IV., King of England, her birth, xxxiii; early marriage and death, *ib.*

Blanchmains, Robert, Earl of Leicester, rebels against Henry II., 77, *note.*

Blesensis, *i.e.* of Blois, *q.v.*

Bloet, Robert, Bishop of Lincoln, Henry I. confers on him his royal vill of Spalding, in consideration for the transfer of Cambridge to the newly erected see of Ely, 59.

Blois, Theobald of, *see* Theobald of Blois.

——, Stephen of, (Father of Stephen King of England,) *see* Stephen of Blois.

——, Stephen of, *see* Stephen of Blois, King of England.

——, Peter of, *see* Peter of Blois.

——, Charles de, *see* Charles de Blois.

Blount, William le, *see* Blund, William le.

Blund, William le, and others are sent by the Barons to Louis IX. of France to plead their cause against Henry III. in the matter of the Provisions of Oxford, 95.

Bodleian Library, Oxford, Tanner MSS. in, *see* Tanner MSS.

——, Rawlinson MSS. in, *see* Rawlinson MSS.

——, Digby MSS. in, *see* Digby MSS.

Boëthius, Henry of Lancaster, returning from his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, visits the tomb of, 100.

——, the Creed of, Capgrave treats of, 215.

Bohemia, wars of the Emperor Henry II. in, 16; Henry III. (Emperor) defeats the King of, 25; Henry of Lancaster, returning from Jerusalem, passes through, 100.

——, Kings of:—
Bretislas I., *see* Bretislas I.
Borzivoi II., *see* Borzivoi II.

——, Dukes of:—
Spitigneus I., *see* Spitigneus I.
Wenceslas I., *see* Wenceslas I.
Boleslas I., *see* Boleslas I.

Bohun, Humphrey de, his daughter Mary marries Henry IV., 109.

——, Henry de, Earl of Hereford, *see* Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford.

——, William de, Earl of Northampton, companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.

——, Mary de, Queen of Henry IV., *see* Mary de Bohun.

Bois Vincennes, Henry V. dies at, 123, *note.*

Boleslas I. (Duke of Bohemia) puts his brother Wenceslas I. to death, 143.

Bolesme, *see* Belesme.

Bolingbroke, Henry, *see* Henry, Duke of Lancaster.

Bolingbroke, in Lincolnshire, Henry IV. born at, 98.

Bollandi Acta Sanctorum, Extracts from Capgrave's "Nova Legenda Angliæ" in, 193; the authority of Capgrave continually quoted in, *ib.*

Boniface, Count, Letter of S. Augustin to, 153, *and note.*

Bonnonia, *see* Boulogne, Stephen of.

Bordeaux, the Archbishop of, and the Gascon nobles urge Henry III. to visit his foreign possessions, 89; Henry III. invades France, and proceeds towards 90; he defeats Louis IX. there, *ib.*; five years' truce, *ib.*; Louis IX. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.

Borelaus, *see* Boleslas I., Duke of Bohemia.
Borgo, Il, (Urbs Leonina), a suburb of the city of Rome, *see* Leonina Urbs.
Borzivoi II., Duke of Bohemia, deserts the cause of the Emperor Henry IV., and joins his son Henry, 31.
Bouillon, Godfrey de, is elected King of Jerusalem, 9 ; is present at the discovery of the Sacred Spear at Antioch, 9, 10.
Boulogne, Stephen of, *see* Blois, Stephen of.
Bourbon, John, Duke of, harasses the troops of Henry IV., passing from Harfleur to Corbie, 116 ; challenges the English King to do battle, *ib.*
Bourdin, a Spaniard, intruded on the Holy See by the Emperor Henry V., 39 ; is treated ignominiously by the Romans, and imprisoned at Salerno, *ib.*
Bourges, Alberic of, *see* Alberic of Bourges.
Bourges, Prince Henry, eldest son of Henry I., King of England, is married to Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., King of France, at, 73.
Bowes, Henry V. passes through, on the way to Agincourt, 116.
Bozoër, *see* Borzivoi II., King of Bohemia.
Bradford, Ralph, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.
Bramham Moor, the battle of, Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, is slain at, xxxiv.
Brampton, Henry I. meets Theobald of Blois at, 63.
Breakspere, Nicolas, *see* Adrian IV. Pope.
Brenville, the Battle of, Louis VI., King of France, is defeated by Henry I. at, 61.
Bret, Charles de la, Constable of France, is killed at Agincourt, 117.
Bretagne, the men of, join Henry I. on his invasion of Normandy, 57; are opposed to the forces of William, Earl of Mortaigne, in the battle of Tenechebray, *ib.*; rebelling against John de Montfort, it is by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, restored to him, 162.
——, Joan of Navarre, relict of John de Montfort, Duke of, is married to Henry IV., 109.
Bretislas I., King of Bohemia, is conquered by the Emperor, Henry III., 25.
Brewes, Sir John, brings certain rebels to Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 171.
Bridlington, Henry of Lancaster lands near, 102.
Bridlington, John of, his verses on the achievements of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.
Bristol, Henry, Duke of Lancaster, proceeds to, 102; William le Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, John Bushy, and Henry Greene, are there executed, *ib.*
——, given by Henry III. to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile, 91.
British Museum, MS. of Capgrave's "Nova Legenda," in ; seriously injured by the fire, 191.
Brixen, in the Tyrol, Gregory VII. (Hildebrand) is deposed at a Council held at, and Guipert, Bishop of Ravenna, elected in his room, 32.
Brydlyngton, *see* Bridlington.
Bruce, David, *see* David II., King of Scotland.
Brunswick, the Duke of, Henry, Duke of Lancaster, accuses (before the French King), of treachery, 162.
Buckingham, Earl of,—
Thomas of Woodstock, *see* Thomas of Woodstock.
Bull of Pope Adrian IV., permitting the invasion of Ireland, 71.
Burbache, John, LL.D., is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note.*
Burdegalia, *see* Bordeaux.
Burgh, Hubert de, Earl of Kent, prevents Henry III. from accepting the invitation of the Archbishop of Bordeaux and the Gascons, to visit his foreign possessions, 89.
Burgos, Edward I. marries Eleanor of Castile at, 90.

Burgundy, Dukes of,—
John, *see* John, Duke of Burgundy.
Robert, *see* Robert II., King of France.

Burgus Sancti Petri, *see* Peterborough.

Burnel, Lord Hugh de, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note.*

Bushy, Sir John, is executed at Bristol by the order of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 102.

Buturicensis, *see* Biturícensis.

C.

Caen, the corpse of Henry I., of England, is carried from Rouen to Caen, 67; William the Conqueror buried at, 121; Henry V. takes, *ib.*

Cahors, Louis IX. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.

Calais, Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, is executed by the order of Richard II. at, 101; Cardinal Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, commands the people at Westminster to praise God for the capture, by Edward III., of, 118; the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by the Earl of Warwick at, 118; he is accompanied by Henry V. as far as, 120; receives the French Ambassadors at, *ib.*; after the Battle of Agincourt, Henry V. proceeds to, 117; the Lord Gaucort, according to promise, comes thither with the captives, *ib.*

Calixtus II., Pope, persuaded by the Archbishop of Cologne and Mayence, excommunicates the Emperor Henry V., 39; the Emperor Henry V. yields to him the right of investiture, 41; Henry I. holds a conference with him at Gisors, 62.

Cambrensis, Giraldus, *see* Giraldus Cambrensis.

Cambridge taken from the Diocese of Lincoln, and given to the newly-erected See of Ely, by Henry I., 59; King's College at, founded by Henry VI., 133; William Millington (personally known to Capgrave) appointed its first Provost, *ib.*; a copy of Capgrave on Genesis was preserved in the library of the Augustinians at, 225; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, captures and executes many rebels at, 170; he captures some of the ringleaders between Thetford and, 171.

Cambridge, Earl of,—
Richard Plantagenet, *see* Richard Plantagenet.

Cambridge, Nicholas, Archdeacon of, *see* Nicholas, Archdeacon of Cambridge.

Camden's edition of Giraldus Cambrensis, and of Walsingham, 41, *note.*

Camilli, the, at Rome, patterns for generals, 206.

Cana in Galilee, CHRIST'S presence at the marriage in, 136.

Candia, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, passes through, 100.

Canons Regular, the Knights Templars to follow the customs of, 158.

Canterbury, the See of, Gerard, Archbishop of York, does homage to, 59; Thurstan, Archbishop of York, refuses to do homage to, 59, 60; Henry II. visits, and does penance at the tomb of Becket, 78; and is afterwards absolved, *ib.*; Richard, King of the Romans, confirms his brother's oath before the Barons at, 92; after the battle of Agincourt Henry V. passes through Calais to London, by way of, 117; the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by the Archbishop at, 118; Henry V., hearing of the defeat of the French fleet by the Duke of Bedford, hastens to, 120; he there relates all to the Emperor Sigismund, and they return public thanks, *ib.*

——, Archbishops of,—
Dunstan, *see* Dunstan.
Anselm, *see* Anselm.

Canterbury, Archbishop of—*continued.*
Ralph or Rodolphus, *see* Ralph.
Thomas Becket, *see* Becket, Thomas.
Edmund Rich, *see* Abington, Edmund of.
Thomas Arundel, *see* Arundel, Thomas.
Henry Chicheley, *see* Chicheley, Henry.
——, Thomas, Archdeacon of, *see* Becket, Thomas.
——, Priors of,—
Thomas Chillenden, *see* Chillenden, Thomas.
Thomas Goldston, *see* Goldston, Thomas.
Canticles, quotations from the, 196.
Canute the Great, King of Denmark, *see* Chunelinde.
Cany, the battle of, indecisive, 35.
Capet, Hugh, *see* Hugh Capet.
Capgrave dedicates his work to King Henry VI., 1; gives the etymology of the name "Henricus," 2; divides his work into three parts, 3; prays for the restoration of peace and for a blessing on the King, 4; invokes the Divine blessing on his work, 5; discusses the propriety of Henry I. (of Germany) arming prisoners against his enemies, 7; decides that Henry I. acted rightly, 8; discusses the propriety of moving the relics of the Saints from place to place, 10; vindicates his accuracy in his relation of the deposition of Richard II., 102; expresses his intention of writing a Life of Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 109; records that he saw the Princess Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., embark at Lynn, on her way to be married to Eric XIII. of Norway, *ib.;* reference to his Chronicle of England, 120, *note;* 138, *note;* 189, *and note;* 209; he dilates on the accidental circumstances attending the birth of Henry VI., King of England, 125, 126; refers to his own ordination, and records the joy that was manifested in London on the occasion of the birth of Henry VI., 127; praises Henry VI., 130; and compares him to Constantine, 131, 132; says that he was present at the foundation of Eton College, and saw Henry VI. lay the first stone, 133; records that he knew personally William Millington, the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge, *ib.;* deplores the decline of the English navy, 134; gives his views on matrimony, 135, 136; narrates the visit of Henry VI. to his Friary at Lynn, 137; gives him an account of its foundation and past history, 138; and of its state in his own time, 139; describes the intention and scope of the Third Part of this Work, 141; discusses the propriety of the retirement of Henry, Archbishop of Sens, from, public affairs, and decides that he was right, 160; discusses the propriety of an ecclesiastic bearing arms, 174; notice of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ" of, 191; quotations from his work in the Bollandi "Acta Sanctorum," 193; notice of his "Commentary on the Creeds," 209; his Dedication of this Commentary to William Gray, Bishop of Ely, 211; reference to his work on the Antiquities of Rome 209; curious derivation of the word "Capgrave," 211; notice of his "Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles," 217; his Dedication of this Commentary to William Gray, Bishop of Ely, 219; notice of his "Commentary on the Book of Genesis," 223; Dedication of this Commentary to Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 227; he refers in this Dedication to his "English Chronicle" *(Annualia mea),* 224; the initial letter contains his portrait and that of the Duke of Gloucester, 223.
Capgrave (the name), *see* Bale, Bishop.
Cardiff Castle, in Wales, Robert, Duke of Normandy, imprisoned by his brother, Henry I., dies at, 65; story of the robes sent to him there by his brother, *ib.;* certain mysterious warnings given to Henry II. at, 75.
Carlisle, David I., King of Scotland, knights Henry II. of England at, 69.

Carlovingian Dynasty, the termination of, 149.

Carnotensis, *i. e.*, of Chartres, *q. v.*

Carnotensis, Ivo, *see* Ivo Carnotensis.

Carthage, Capgrave treats of the Creed of, 215.

Cashel, Council of (in Ireland), at which the conquest of Ireland by Henry II. is confirmed by Pope Alexander III., 73.

Castile, King of,—

Alphonso IX., (called the Noble), *see* Alphonso IX.

Catursensis, *i.e.*, of Cahors, *q. v.*

Caux, Pays du, *see* Pays du Caux.

Cavendish, John, is slain by the rebels in Wat Tyler's rebellion, 171.

Celestine III., Pope, in the time of Henry VI. Emperor, 47; is succeeded by Innocent III., *ib.*; reference to his excommunication of the Emperor Henry VI. for the incarceration of Richard I. of England, extracted from Higden's Polychronicon, 48.

Cenomannia, *i.e.*, Maine, *q.v.*

Ceolwulf, 205, *note* (3).

Champagne, Troyes in, *see* Troyes in Champagne.

Champagne, Henry II., Count of, *see* Henry II., Count of Champagne.

——, Mary, Countess of, mother of Henry II., Count of Champagne, 156; sister of Philip I., King of France, *ib.*

Charlemagne, Leo IV., Pope, sends certain relics to, 10; he succeeds his father Pepin on the throne of France, 149.

Charles de Blois invades Bretagne, 162; he is defeated and carried prisoner to England by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*

Charles II. (the Bald), King of France, succeeds Louis I. 149; is succeeded by his son, Louis III., the father of Charles III., (the Simple), *ib.*

Charles III. (the Simple), King of France, submits to Henry I. of Germany, 10; is succeeded by Louis IV., 149.

Charles VI., King of France, Henry V. sends ambassadors to him, demanding the restoration of the English possessions in France, 114; the Dauphin menaces King Henry, *ib.*; refuses to treat with Henry V., 115.

Charles, Duke of Orleans, *see* Orleans, Charles, Duke of.

Chartres, Geoffrey of, *see* Geoffrey of Chartres.

Chester, the Emperor Henry V. lives in retirement in the Monastery of S. Withburga, at, 41; the barge of King Edgar is rowed by six (or by eight) Kings, at, 134.

Chester, Earls of,—

Hugh de Abrincis, *see* William, Earl of Chester.

William, *see* William.

Hugh Cyvelioc, *see* Cyvelioc, Hugh.

Chicheley, Henry, Archbishop of Canterbury, receives the Emperor Sigismund at Canterbury, 118.

Chichester, Richard of, a quotation from his Chronicle, *see* Cirencester, Richard of.

Chichester, Richard, Bishop of, and Confessor, *see* Richard, Bishop of Chichester.

Childeric I., King of France, succeeds his father Moroveus, 149; is succeeded by his son Clovis I., *ib.*

Childeric II., son of Clovis II., King of France, succeeds his brother Clotaire III., 149; is succeeded by his brother Thierry III., *ib.*

Chillenden, Thomas, Prior of Canterbury, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note.*

Chilperic I., King of France, succeeds his father Clotaire I., 149; is succeeded by his son Clotaire II., *ib.*

Chunelinde, daughter of Canute the Great, King of Denmark, wife of Henry III., Emperor, dies, 26.

Christ, discovery of the seamless coat

of, 73; His presence at the wedding in Cana of Galilee, and its bearing on matrimony discussed, 136; Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, visits the sepulchre of, 166.

Chronicle of England, Capgrave's, reference to, in the "Introduction" and the "Glossary," *passim*; 120, *note*; 138, *note*; 189, *and note*; 209.

Chronology of the present work, xxii. *et seqq.*; xxxvii.; remarks in the notes on the, 6; 18; 28; 57; 68; 88; 112; 143; 147; 148.

Chrysostom, S., quotation from one of the spurious Sermons of, 144, *and note*; reference to a Creed written by him, 210; Capgrave treats of this Creed, 215.

Cirencester, Richard of, called in the MSS. Ralph of Chichester, quotation from the Chronicle of, 179.

Clairvaulx, Henry, Archbishop of Sens and Pope Eugenius III., originally disciples of S. Bernard, at, 159.

Clare, Roger de, Earl of Hertford, by the connivance of King Henry II., refuses to do homage to Becket for his castle of Tunbridge, 74.

——, Gilbert de, Earl of Hertford and Gloucester, assists Simon de Montfort at the siege of Rochester, 96.

——, Richard de, Earl of Gloucester, fulfils the intentions of Gilbert, his father, towards the Hermits of S. Augustin, 224, 228.

Clare, Austin Friary at, the heart of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, who died at Milan, is carried to England by his own request, and buried at, 100; its early foundation, 224.

Clarence, Dukes of,—
Lionel Plantagenet, *see* Lionel.
Thomas Plantagenet, *see* Thomas.

Clarendon, the Council of, 74; Thomas Becket refuses to give his assent to the Constitutions of, *ib.*; he excommunicates all who acknowledge them as binding, *ib.*

Claudus, (the Lame,) a name given to the Emperor Henry II., 13.

Clayhanger, permission granted to build an Austin Friary at, 224.

Clement II., Pope, crowns the Emperor Henry, 28, (*see* Henry IV. Emperor); is made Pope in the time of Benedict IX., 30.

Clodion (called Crinitus), succeeds Pharamund as King of the Franks, 148; the Kings of France are called "Criniti" after him, *ib.*

Close Rolls, reference to the, xxx., *note* (2).

Clotaire I., King of France, succeeds his father Clovis I., 149; is succeeded by Chilperic I., his son, *ib.*

—— II., King of France, succeeds his father Chilperic I., 149; is succeeded by his son Dagobert I., *ib.*

—— III., King of France, son of Clovis II., succeeds his father, 149; is succeeded by his brother Childeric II., *ib.*

—— IV., King of France, succeeds his father Thiery III.. 149.

Clovis I., King of France, succeeds his father Childeric I., 149; is baptized by S. Remigius, *ib.*; is succeeded by his son, Clotaire I., *ib.*

—— II., King of France, succeeds his father Dagobert I., 149; is succeeded in succession by his three sons, Clotaire III., Childeric II., and Thierry III., *ib.*

Coat of Christ, the seamless, legend of its discovery, 73.

Cobham, John de, condemned to perpetual imprisonment by Richard II., 101; this act forms part of the third of the charges brought against Richard II. in Westminster Hall, 103.

——, Lord, John Oldcastle, *see* Oldcastle, John.

Coilsus, King, *see* Ceolwulf.

Coin; introduction of a new (gold) coin by Henry III., 91; the "ship" on a certain English coin,—the reproach of foreigners relating to it,—"remove the 'ship' and stamp a 'sheep,'" 135.

Coining false money, punishments assigned by Henry I., of England, to those who are convicted of, 59.

Cokesford, Robert de, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Cokesford, Agnes de, wife of Robert de Cokesford, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Colchester, visit of King Henry VI. to, xxxvii.

Colchester, William de, Abbot of Westminster, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard III., 106, *note.*

Cologne, Archbishop of,—
Frederic, *see* Frederic.

Cologne, the Emperor, Henry IV., having been deposed at the Council of Mayence, retires to, 32.

Comet, appearance of a, 57.

Comnenus, Manuel I., Emperor of Constantinople, *see* Manuel I.

Conrad I., Duke of Franconia, is elected Emperor (King of Germany), 7; he leaves the throne to Henry I. the Fowler, *ib.*

Conrad the Salique, Emperor, is succeeded by Henry III., 18 *and note;* banishes Leopold (the father of Henry III.) from his court, *ib.*; is accidentally present at the birth of the child, *ib.*; hears a voice proclaiming that the infant should succeed to his throne, 19; commands his servants to slay the child, *ib.*; they spare it, and show him the heart of a hare, *ib.*; sees him when he was fifteen years old, 20; takes him to his court, *ib.*; suspecting his origin, he again compasses his death, 20, 21; is foiled by a priest, 22; discovers that (by means of the priest) Henry had been married to his own daughter, 23; is reconciled to him, and recalls Count Leopold, 24; dies, and is succeeded by Henry III., 25; the date of his death, 18, *note.*

Conrad, Marquis of Montferrat, King of Jerusalem, succeeded by Henry, xxxix., *and see* Henry II., Count of Champagne.

Constance, daughter of Tancred, King of Sicily, marries the Emperor, Henry VI., 47.

Constantinople, Emperor of,—
Manuel I. Comnenus, *see* Manuel I.

Constantine the Great, Henry VI., follows his example in his conduct towards the Church, 131; account of the vision and conversion of, 132; his presence at the Council of Nice, *ib.*; on his death-bed, gives the Sacred Spear to Rodolph of Burgundy, 9.

Conteshall, John de, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Conway, Richard II. at, promises to abdicate, 107; he fulfils his promise, *ib.*

Corbie, Henry V., marching from Harfleur proceeds through Arques and Eu to, 116; the French are routed there by his archers, *ib.*

Cornwall, Richard, Earl of, *see* Richard, King of the Romans.

Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, references to MSS. at, 1, *note*; 5, *note.*

Cosyn, Richard, Alice Cosyn, his widow, and William Pilton, executors of, 138 *note.*

——, Alice, (widow of Richard Cosyn,) a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Cottonian MSS., references to, 1, *note*; 5, *note*; 191.

Council of Cashel, *see* Cashel.

Councils, Mansi's New Collection of, referred to, 71, *notes, et seqq.*, reference to Wilkins' Concilia, *ib.*

Courtenay, Richard, Bishop of Norwich, dies at the siege of Harfleur, 115.

Crabhouse, Co. Norfolk, grant made by Henry VI. to the Prioress and Nuns of, xxxvii.

Creeds, Of Capgrave's Commentary on the several, 209.

Criniti, a name given to the kings of France, after, Clodion, called Crinitus, 148.
Crinitus, Clodion called, *see* Clodion.
Crisanthus, S., 15.
Crisping, William, at the battle of Brenville, wounds King Henry I., 61.
Cross, Leo IV. gives a portion of the Lord's, to Charlemagne, 10.
Crusade, the, Henry II., at Waltham, contributes money to, 79.
Cubith, mentioned as a fellow-rebel with John Litster, 170; he is captured by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, between Thetford and Cambridge, carried to Wymondham, and there executed, 171.
Cunegund, S., the wife of the Emperor Henry II., her austere life, 15.
Curthose, a name given to Robert, Duke of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror, 65; *see* Robert, Duke of Normandy.
Curtmanteles, a name given to King Henry II., 81.
Cuthbert, S., Bishop of Lindisfarne, with difficulty is prevailed upon to accept the See, 204; his example to be followed by bishops, 207.
Cyprus, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), returning from Jerusalem, visits, 100; Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, accompanies Prince Edward (Edward I.) to, 152; battles of Henry, Earl of Derby, grandfather of Henry IV., against the Infidels, in, 161.
Cyvelioc, Hugh, Earl of Chester, rebels against Henry II., 77.

D.

Dacorum Rex, Henricus, *see* Eric VI., King of Denmark.
Dagobert I., son of Clotaire II., King of France, succeeds his father, 149; is succeeded by his son, Clovis II., *ib.*
Daniel, his good example quoted, 197.
Dartford, the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by the Duke of Clarence at, 118.
David, Psalms of, quotation from, 1.
——, Abishag, the wife of, 14; the example of his penitence for sin good for Kings to follow, 54; reference to the "Apologia David" of S. Ambrose, *ib.*, *and note*; reference to his having been thrice anointed, in which Henry VI. is compared to him, 128; his humility mentioned in the Book of Ecclesiasticus, 197.
David I., King of Scotland, has the charge of Henry II. during the war between Stephen and the Empress Maud, 69; knights Henry at Carlisle, *ib.*
David II., King of Scotland, brother-in-law of Edward III., (who refuses to allow Henry de Beaumont to assist Edward Baliol, because of the connexion), 167.
De la Pole, Michael, Earl of Suffolk, *see* Pole, Michael de la.
De Lira, Doctor, *see* Lira, Doctor de.
De Paganis, Hugo de, *see* Pains, Hugues de.
De Sancto Aldemaro, Ganfred de, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.
December, the tenth month, with us the twelfth, 126.
Dedication of this work to King Henry VI., 1, *and note.*
Deira, Oswin of, *see* Oswin of Deira.
Denarius, the, ordered by Henry I. of England, to be made round, 59.
Denis, S., *see* S. Denis.
Denmark, Kings of,—
Canute the Great, *see* Chunelinde.
Eric VI., *see* Eric VI.
Waldemar II. (called the Victorious), *see* Waldemar II.
Abel, *see* Abel.
Eric IX., *see* Eric IX.
Derby, Earl of,—
Henry Plantagenet, *see* Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster.

Despenser, Thomas le, Earl of Gloucester, is sent with others, to announce to Richard II. his deposition, 107.

Despenser, Henryle, *see* Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich.

Digby MSS. in the Bodleian Library referred to, 162, 163.

Dionysius, S., the Martyr, his relics translated by Charles III. of France, 10.

Doctor Communis, *see* Thomas Aquinas, S.

——— Declarativus, *see* Egidius.

——— Subtilis, *see* Duns Scotus.

——— Solemnis, *see* Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent.

Dorchester, the Earl of, *see* Dorset.

Dorset, Earl of,—
Thomas Beaufort (youngest son of John of Gaunt, by Katharine Swinford), *see* Beaufort, Thomas.

Dorobernensis Ecclesia, *see* Canterbury, the See of.

Dorthforth, *see* Dartford.

Dover, Henry II. accompanies Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, as far as to, 80; their angry disputation there, *ib.*; the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by the Duke of Gloucester at, 118; on his return he is accompanied by Henry V. as far as, 120.

Drew, John, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note*.

Drew, Ralph, and William Say, entrusted with the delivery of the gift of books (including some by Capgrave), sent to the University of Oxford, by Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 226.

Drew, Thomas, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note*.

Dunfermline, the battle at, 168; distinguished bravery of Henry de Beaumont, *ib.*; the Scots are defeated, *ib.*

Duns Scotus, called Doctor Subtilis, 179.

Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury, reference to an anecdote of Edgar, son of Edmund I. in the life of, 127; mentioned, 205; his example to be followed by Bishops, 207.

Durham, Bishop of,—
Ralph Flambard, *see* Flambard, Ralph.

E.

Ecclesiasticus, enumeration of the old Saints in the Book of, referred to, 197.

Eclipse of the sun, 47.

Edgar, King of England, many monasteries erected by him, 16, 134; legend concerning his birth, 127; six (or eight) kings row his barge at Chester, *ib.*; his management of his navy, and of the inland provinces, *ib.*

Edmund of East Anglia, martyr, 185.

Edmund I. (called Ironside), the father of Edgar, 127.

Edmund of Abyngton, Archbishop of Canterbury, *see* Rich, Edmund.

Edward, the martyr, son of Edgar and Alfrida, 185.

Edward the Confessor, 185, 186, 202.

Edward I., King of England, his birth, 90; he is baptized by Otho, the legate, and confirmed by Edmund Rich, Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; is assisted against Simon de Montfort by Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, 152; is accompanied by him to the Crusades, *ib.*; Henry remains with the Prince in Cyprus, *ib.*; marries Eleanor, sister of Alphonso IX., King of Castile, 90; Henry III. confers on them Gascogne, Ireland, Wales, Bristol, Stamford, and Grantham, 91; he consents to refer the dispute between his father and the barons to Louis IX., King of France, 94; the Austin Friary at Lynn founded in his twenty-second year, 138; he gives his licence to Margaret Suthmere, *ib. and note.*

Edward III., King of England, John of Gaunt, the third son of, 98; his claim to

the French crown, 117; benefactions to the Austin Friars at Lynn in his reign, 138, *and notes;* accompanied, in his war in France, by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162; commemorated by John of Bridlington, 163; Henry de Beaumont fights under, 167; he refuses to allow De Beaumont to pass through England on his way to assist Edward Balliol, but suffers him to go by sea, *ib.*

Edward IV., King of England, his accession referred to, xiii, xiv.

Edward, the Black Prince, son of Edward III., commemorated by John of Bridlington, 163.

Edward Plantagenet, Duke of Albemarle, and Duke of York, is slain at the battle of Agincourt, 117.

Egidii Rus, *see* S. Giles' Fields.

Egidius, called "Doctor Declarativus," 179.

Egypt, its pleasures despised by Moses, 198.

Egyptians, remarks by S. Jerome on certain superstitions practised by the, 25.

Eleanor of France, Henry II. marries, 69, 84; her divorce from Louis VII., King of France, 69, 84; she brings Aquitaine to her husband, 70; her infamous conduct when Queen of France, 84; the children of Henry II. by, 85.

Eleanor, second daughter of Henry II., King of England, marries Alphonso IX., King of Castile, 85.

Eleanor, daughter of Raymond V., Count of Provence, is married to Henry III. at Westminster, 89; gives birth to Edward I. at Westminster, 90; accompanies Henry III. on his invasion of France, *ib.*; gives birth to the Princess Margaret in Gascony, *ib.*

Eleanor, sister of Alphonso IX., King of Castile, marries Edward I., 90.

Elias, Sir John Oldcastle's claim to have been, 122.

Elmham, Sir William, betrays Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, in Flanders, 172.

Ely, the bishopric of, established by Henry I., 59; Hervey, Bishop of Bangor, translated to the new See, *ib.*

Ely, Bishops of, —
Hervey, *see* Hervey.
William Gray, *see* Gray, William.

Engaine, Thomas de (son of John, Baron de Engaine), companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.

England, its early fame, 6; the revenues of, secured to Benedict IX. on his cession of the Papal chair to John Graziano (Gregory VI.,) 30; Capgrave deplores the decline of the navy of, 134; the wooden walls of, 135.

England, Kings of:—
William I., *see* William I.
William II., *see* William II.
Henry I., *see* Henry I.
Stephen, *see* Stephen.
Henry II., *see* Henry II.
Richard I., *see* Richard I.
John, *see* John.
Henry III., *see* Henry III.
Edward I., *see* Edward I.
Edward III., *see* Edward III.
Richard II., *see* Richard II.
Henry IV., *see* Henry IV.
Henry V., *see* Henry V.
Henry VI., *see* Henry VI.

Enoch referred to in the Prologue to the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 198.

Epitaph of Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 174.
—— of the Emperor Henry IV., 39.

Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England, 80; he seeks the assistance of Henry II. against the Saracens, *ib.*; the King promises to give him money, but refuses to go in person; he upbraids the King at Dover, and departs, *ib.*

Erconwald, S., Bishop of London, and Confessor, his life extracted from the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum," 193.

Eresby, Lord William Willoughby of, *see* Willoughby of Eresby, Lord William.

Eric VI., King of Denmark, his life, 143, *et seq.*; account of his death, 143; he sees a vision of Wenceslas, 144; having learned from his nobles who Wenceslas was, he translates his relics, 145; he is put to death by his brother Abel, *ib.*

Eric IX., King of Denmark, (XIII. of Norway,) marries Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., 109.

Erpingham, Sir Thomas, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note;* is sent to announce to Richard II. his deposition from the throne, 107.

Eschw, William, *see* Aiscough, William, Bishop of Salisbury.

Esterby, Philip de, warns King Henry II. of England, 77.

Esther and Ahasuerus, reference to their marriage, 137.

Ethelbert, King of Kent, 185; he receives Christianity, 186.

Etheldreda, S., Virgin, 203; her example to be followed, 206, 207.

Eton, the College at, founded by King Henry VI., 133; verses on the laying of the first stone by Henry, *ib.*; he appoints William of Waynflete as the first Provost of, *ib.*

Eu, Henry V., marching from Harfleur to Calais, proceeds through Arques, and, 116; he moves on from thence to Corbie, *ib.*

Eugenius III., Pope, in his time three red crosses are added to the white robe of the Knights Templars, 158; he was originally a disciple of S. Bernard's, 159.

Evander, the father of Pallas, whose body was discovered at Rome, 26.

Evesham, the battle of, not mentioned by Capgrave, xxxi.

Exeter, Dukes of,—
- Thomas Beaufort, Earl of Dorset, *see* Beaufort, Thomas,
- John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, *see* Holland, John.

Exodus, Capgrave's Commentary on the Book of, a MS. of, sent to the University of Oxford by Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 226.

Ezekiel, quotation from the Book of, 4.

F.

Fabricii, the, at Rome, patterns for generals, 206.

"Fasciculus Temporum," the, of Werner Rolewink, quoted, 202.

Felix, S., the day of, reflections on the death of Henry V. on, 123.

Felmingham, (Co. Norfolk,) Litster, the rebel, at, 172; his country house there, *ib.*; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, sends one of the quarters of his body to, *ib.*

Feriby, William de, Public Notary, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note.*

Feschamp, Remigius de, Bishop of Lincoln, seven Archdeaconries in the Diocese of, and the names of the Archdeacons in his time, 175, 176.

Fitz-Alan, Richard, Earl of Arundel, opposes Richard II., 99; executed by Richard II., 101; this act forms part of the third of the charges alleged against him in Westminster Hall, 103; Owen Glyndwr called his "Esquire," 110.

Fitz-Alan, Thomas, Earl of Arundel, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Fitz-Alan, Richard, Earl of Arundel, accompanies Henry the first Duke of Lancaster to Pope Innocent VI. to treat for peace between England and France, 163.

Flambard, Ralph, Bishop of Durham, escapes from the Tower of London, and persuades Robert Duke of Normandy to invade England, 56.

Flanders, Pope Urban VI. sends Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, into, to oppose heretics, 172; his success there is impaired by the interference of Elmham and Trivet, *ib.*

Flanders, Counts of,—
Baldwin V., *see* Baldwin V.
Philip of Alsace, *see* Philip of Alsace.

Flint, Richard II. is taken at, 102.

Fœdera, Rymer's, reference to, 71.

Folkingham (Co. of Lincoln), the Manor of, belonging to Henry de Beaumont, 169.

Fontevrault, Henry II., of England, is buried at, 81.

Fowler, the, a name given to Henry I. of Germany, 12.

France, the name said to have been derived from Franco, an early chief, 148; after the battle of Brenville Henry I. returns in triumph from, 63; visited by Pope Alexander III., who holds a Council at Tours, 74; Henry III. goes, with Richard de Graveshend, Bishop of Lincoln, into, 92; where he makes an agreement with Louis IX. to give up certain territorial rights in exchange for an annual tribute, *ib.*; Henry of Lancaster, returning from his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, passes through, 100; Henry V. sends ambassadors into, to demand from Charles VI. the restoration of the English possessions, 114; he receives an insulting message from the Dauphin, and determines to invade, *ib.*; the French bribe certain disaffected Englishmen to dissuade the king from the invasion, who are put to death, *ib.*; Henry embarks, and lands in the Pays du Caux, 115; he invades France, and takes Harfleur, *ib.*; after the battle of Agincourt, Henry V. holds a Parliament at Westminster, and claims the crown of, 117; the claim of Edward III. to the crown of, *ib*; the Emperor Sigismund visits England, and endeavours to establish peace between it and, 118; the negotiations are frustrated by the treachery of the French, 119; Henry V. holds a Parliament in London, at which it is decided no longer to treat with, but to declare war against, 121; successes of Henry, Duke of Lancaster (grandfather of Henry IV.), in, 162; he receives the command of the army in, *ib.*; and is sent to the Pope to negotiate for peace between England and, 163.

France, Kings of,—
Charles III. (the Simple), *see* Charles III.
Hugh Capet, *see* Hugh Capet.
Robert II. (the Wise), *see* Robert II.
Henry I., *see* Henry I.
Philip I., *see* Philip I.
Louis VI., *see* Louis VI.
Louis VII. *see* Louis VII.
Philip II., *see* Philip II.
Louis VIII., *see* Louis VIII.
Louis IX., *see* Louis IX.

Franco and Tergotus succeed Antenor, 148; the former gives his name to France, *ib.*

Franconia, Conrad, Duke of, *see* Conrad I., King of Germany.

Franks, the empire restored by Otho I. to the, 6.

Frederic I., Barbarossa, Emperor, loses his eldest son, 47; dies, *ib.*; is succeeded by his second son Henry VI. Asper, 47, 48; Pope Alexander III. going to the Council of Tours, chooses a devious route, from fear of, 74; is represented at the great congress of foreign ambassadors, held at Westminster by Henry II., 78.

Frederic II. Emperor, marries Isabel. daughter of King John, of England, 90.

Frederic, Archbishop of Cologne, advises Pope Calixtus II. to excommunicate the Emperor Henry V., 39.

French Church, the, illustrious members of, in the beginning of the twelfth century, 159.

Frideswide, S., Henry IV., despising her curse, continually visits Oxford, 95.

Fulda, the Abbot of, contends for precedence with the Archbishop of Mayence, 26.

Fullestan, Sir Thomas, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

G.

Galatia, S. Luke writes his Gospel in the regions of, 221.

Galeas, John, Duke of Milan, entertains Henry of Lancaster on his return from Jerusalem, 100.

Galilee, Cana of, the marriage in, is referred to, *see* Cana of Galilee.

Gandavo, Johannes de, *see* John of Gaunt.

Gandavo, Henry de, *see* Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent.

Garnadia, *see* Granada.

Garter, Knight of the, the Emperor Sigismund is made, by Henry V., 118.

Gascogne, *see* Aquitaine.

Gascons, the, urge Henry III. to visit his foreign possessions, 89.

Gaston de Bearn, *see* Bearn, Gaston de.

Gaucort, the lord, opposes Henry V. at Harfleur, 115; he is defeated and compelled to surrender the keys of the town, *ib.*; the King permits him to go to the King of France, on condition that he should return to him at Calais, *ib.*; he fulfils his promise, and comes to the King at Calais, 117.

Gaunt, John of, *see* John of Gaunt.

Gelasius II., Pope of Rome, succeeds Paschal II., 39.

Genealogy of the Kings of France from Antenor, written by Henry I., King of France, 148, *et seqq.*

Genesis, the Book of, Capgrave's Commentary on, 223; Dedicatory Epistle to Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, prefixed to, 227; curious figure of Capgrave presenting his book to the Duke in the initial letter, 223; reference to the Chronicle of England, 224.

Genoese, the, blockade Harfleur, 119.

Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou, marries Maud, widow of the Emperor Henry V., 64; on the visit of Henry I. to Normandy, there arises a discord between him and, 66; his charges against Queen Eleanor, 84; his death, 69.

——, Plantagenet, the younger (brother of Henry II. of England), his son Arthur appointed heir to Henry II., 86; murdered by the order of John, *ib.*

——, son of Henry II. of England, 85; rebels against his father, 76; Henry II. is reconciled to, 78.

—— of Chartres, a contemporary of S. Bernard, 159.

George, S., legend of his having assisted the English at the battle of Agincourt, 117.

Gerard, Archbishop of York, yields homage to the See of Canterbury, 59.

German tribes in the interior are made subject to the Emperor Henry II., 14.

Germany, wars of the Emperor Henry II. in, 16; Henry of Lancaster, returning from Jerusalem, passes through, 100.

——, Kings and Emperors, of,—
- Louis III., *see* Louis III.
- Conrad I., *see* Conrad I.
- Henry I. (the Fowler), *see* Henry I.
- Otho I., the Great, *see* Otho I., Emperor of Germany.
- Otho II. (the Bloody), *see* Otho II.
- Otho III., *see* Otho III.
- Henry II., *see* Henry II.
- Conrad the Salique, *see* Conrad the Salique.
- Henry III., *see* Henry III.
- Henry IV., *see* Henry IV.
- Henry V., *see* Henry V.
- Lothaire II., *see* Lothaire II.
- Frederic I. Barbarossa, *see* Frederic I.
- Henry VI., *see* Henry VI.
- Philip II., *see* Philip II.

Gervase, Archbishop of Rheims, crowns Philip I., King of France, at Rheims, 148.

Ghent, Henry, Archdeacon of, *see* Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent.

Giffard, William, Bishop of Winchester, is appointed by Ralph, Archbishop of Canterbury, to marry Henry I. and Adelais of Louvain, 60.

Giles', S., Fields, *see* S. Giles' Fields.

Giles, Doctor, at the request of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, writes a book on the "Governauns of Princes," 224; he dedicates it to Philip, Dauphin of France, *ib.*; Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, is said to have permitted him to found an Augustinian Friary in England, *ib.*

Gimingham (Co. Norfolk), Litster, the rebel, at, 171.

Giraldus Cambrensis, his account of the latter years of the Emperor Henry V., 41; his work "De Instructione Principum," reference to, 76 *note*; the character of Henry II. King of England, pourtrayed by, 81, 82, 83, *and notes.*

Gisilia, or Gisele, daughter of Herman II., Duke of Suabia, wife of Conrad III., 20, *et seqq.*

——, or Gisele, sister of the Emperor Henry II., marries Stephen, King of Hungary, 16.

——, or Gisele, wife of Count Leopold (the father of Henry III., Emperor), 18; in her, on the accession of her son, the empire is restored to the line of Charlemagne, *ib.*; she flies with her husband to a forest, on his having offended Conrad III., *ib.*; is visited by Conrad, who does not recognise her, *ib.*; gives birth to Henry while Conrad is in their hut, 19.

Gisors, Henry I. holds a conference with Pope Calixtus II., at, 62.

Glastonbury, the abbey of, founded by King Edgar, 134; who lies buried there, *ib.*

——, John, Abbot of, *see* John, Abbot of Glastonbury.

Glossa Ordinaria, quoted, 130.

Gloucester, Henry III., is crowned at, by Gualo, the Legate, 86.

Gloucester, Milo de, Earl of Hereford, *see* Milo de Gloucester, Earl of Hereford.

Gloucester, Earls of,—
Robert, *see* Robert.
Gilbert de Clare, *see* Clare, Gilbert de.
Richard de Clare, *see* Clare, Richard de.
Thomas le Despencer, *see* Despencer, Thomas le.

——, Dukes of,—
Thomas of Woodstock, *see* Thomas of Woodstock.
Humphrey Plantagenet, *see* Humphrey Plantagenet.

Glyndwr, Owen, rebels against Henry IV., 110; the King pursues him into Wales, *ib.*

Godescall, the name assumed by the Emperor Henry V., its signification, 41.

Godfrey de Bouillon, King of Jerusalem, *see* Bouillon, Godfrey de.

—— of Viterbo, *see* Viterbo, Godfrey of.

—— of Langres, a contemporary of S. Bernard, 159.

Goëthals, Henry, of Ghent, *see* Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent.

Goldston, Thomas, Prior of Canterbury, James Neell writes for him a copy of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 192.

Granada, Henry, Duke of Lancaster, in, 161.

Grantham, given by Henry III. to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile, 91.

Gravelle, John, Knight, one of the heralds sent by the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, to offer battle to Henry V., 116.

Graveshend, Richard de, Bishop of Lincoln, accompanies Henry III. into France, to treat with Louis IX., 92.

Gray, William, Bishop of Ely, dedicatory Epistle to, prefixed by Capgrave to his "Commentary on the Creeds," 211; dedicatory Epistle to, prefixed by Capgrave to his "Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles," 219; Capgrave alludes to the attention paid to him by, when he was sick at Rome, *ib.*

Graziano, John, *i.e.* Pope Gregory VI., *see* Gregory VI.

Greek Fire, used by Henry I. of Germany against Niger of Russia, 11.
Green, Sir Henry, is executed at Bristol, by the order of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 102.
Gregory, S., (the Great,) Pope, commemorates the Saints of Italy, 199.
—— VI. Pope, obtains the Holy See on the cession of Benedict IX., 29; is made Pope, when he had, by means of bribes, restored peace, 30; is soon deposed by the Emperor, *ib.*
—— VII., Pope, [Hildebrand], his proceedings against simony when a legate in France, 30; his quarrel with the Emperor Henry IV., who deposes him, 31; he excommunicates the Emperor, and compels him to do penance, 32; at a Council held at Brixen, in the Tyrol, he is deposed, and Guipert, Bishop of Ravenna, elected Pope, *ib.*; Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia, assists him, and drives Clement III. from Rome, *ib.*
—— Nazianzen, story of, 15.
——, Bishop of Antioch, *see* Antioch, Gregory, Bishop of.
Grey, Sir Thomas, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106 *and note;* is sent to announce to Richard II. his deposition, 107; endeavours to dissuade Henry V. from invading France, 114, 115; is executed for doing so, 115.
Greyndore, Henry, is sent to HenryV. by Sir John Oldcastle, with a paper recommending the King to appropriate the Church revenues, 121; he is imprisoned by the King, *ib.*
Gualo, the Papal Legate, crowns Henry III. at Gloucester, 86; is present at Kingston upon Thames, when Louis, Dauphin of France, sues for peace, 88.
Guipert, Bishop of Ravenna, is elected Pope in the room of Gregory VII. (deposed by Henry IV., Emperor), 31.
Guiscard, Robert, Duke of Apulia, assists Pope GregoryVII. [Hildebrand] against Henry IV. the Emperor, 32.
Gurtler's History of the Knights Templars is referred to, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.
Guy, Archbishop of Vienne in Daufine, *see* Vienne.

H.

Half-pennies, *see* Obols.
Hampton (*i.e.* Southampton), Robert, Duke of Normandy, claims to succeed William I., and lands at, 55; the French prepare to attack the fleet of Henry V. at, 119; Henry V. proceeds thither, *ib.*; he collects his fleet against France at, 121.
Hardy, Thomas Duffus, his edition of Le Neve's "Fasti Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ" referred to, *see* Bayeux, William of; his Introduction to Petrie's "Monumenta Historica Britannica," referred to, 191.
Harry Hotspur, is slain at the battle of Shrewsbury, xxxiv.
Harfleur, Henry V. lands at the Pays du Caux, and takes, 115; he permits the Lord Gaucourt to depart, *ib.*; and from thence sends a message to the Dauphin, begging him to come to terms without bloodshed, *ib.*; Cardinal Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, urges the people (at Westminster) to thank God for the taking, by Henry V., of, 118; the French prepare to attack, 119; the King of France, Charles VI., having assented to the treaty of peace, treacherously suffers the French to blockade, *ib.*; it is relieved by the Duke of Bedford, who disperses the French fleet, *ib.*
Hatfield, William of, *see* William of Hatfield.
Hayle, the Lord de, 116.
Hayles, Cistercian Abbey at (founded by Richard, King of the Romans), his son Henry is buried there, 155.

"Hebraicorum nominum interpretatio" by Bede, referred to, 3 *and note.*
Hebrews, Epistle to the, quoted, 128.
Hebron, David anointed over the tribe of Judah in, 128.
Hector, Prince Henry, son of Henry II., of England, compared to, 79.
Henriade, la, of Voltaire, referred to, 11, *note* (1).
Henricus, etymology of the name, 2.
Henries, Capgrave's conclusion to his History of the, 185.
Henry I., King of England (third son of William the Conqueror), 55; the year of his accession, *ib.*; his father leaves to him the bulk of his treasure, *ib.*; his eldest brother, Robert, disputes his claim to the throne, 56; he receives Robert at Northampton, *ib.*; they quarrel, and Henry invades Normandy, *ib.*; lays siege to Tenechebray, 57; defeats and takes Robert, *ib.*; returns to England, 58; casts his brother into prison, and holds his Court at Windsor, *ib.*; he is consecrated King by Maurice, Bishop of London, *ib.*; marries Matilda, daughter of Malcolm, King of Scotland, *ib.*; holds a council at London, and renounces the right of investiture, *ib.*; assigns punishments to thieves and clippers of coins, 59; establishes an Episcopal See at Ely, *ib.*; makes Hervey, Bishop of Bangor, the first Bishop of Ely, *ib.*; gives Spalding to the Diocese of Lincoln, *ib.*; rebuilds the Monastery of Hide at Winchester, *ib.*; warns Thurstan, Archbishop of York, to submit to the Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; discusses this question with the Pope at Rheims, 60; resists, but is compelled to submit to the restoration of Thurstan, *ib.*; marries (secondly) Adelais of Louvain, *ib.*; disturbances at his marriage, *ib.*; gains the battle of Brenville, 61; returns to Rouen, 62; is celebrated in the verses of Henry of Huntingdon, *ib.*; obtains Maud of Anjou in marriage for his son William, *ib.*; makes peace with France, *ib.*; holds a conference with Calixtus II. at Gisors, *ib.*; returns from France, 63; his sons are drowned on their return, 63; keeps his Christmas at Brampton with Theobald of Blois, *ib.*; marries Adelais of Louvain at Windsor, 64; is visited by his daughter, the Empress Maud, *ib.*; claims the allegiance of his subjects for his daughter Maud, 64, 65; the story of his sending old robes to his brother Robert, in Cardiff Castle, 65; he goes into Normandy, *ib.*; is detained there by his daughter, *ib.*; his death, 66; verses by Henry of Huntingdon on, *ib.*; contradictory estimates of his character, 67; his body is carried to Rouen, *ib.*; thence to Caen, *ib.*; he is buried at Reading, *ib.*; reflections on his death, *ib.*
Henry II., King of England, (son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the Empress Maud,) is born at Anjou, 68; is heir to the English throne, *ib.*; is kept from his kingdom by Stephen of Blois, *ib.*; he remains in Scotland during the war between Stephen and his mother, 69; is knighted by David, King of Scotland, at Carlisle, *ib.*; on his father's death proclaims himself Duke of Normandy, *ib.*; marries Eleanor of France, *ib.*; obtains the Duchy of Aquitaine through her, 70; his right to the throne is acknowledged by Stephen, *ib.*; he permits Stephen to reign for the rest of his life, *ib.*; succeeds to the throne, *ib.*; birth of his son, Henry, *ib.*; he obtains leave from Pope Adrian IV. to invade Ireland, *ib.*; the bull sent to him by the Pope in reference to the conquest of Ireland, 71, *and note;* Alexander III., the successor of Adrian, confirms the bull to him, 73, *and note;* he arranges a marriage between Margaret of France and Prince Henry, *ib.*; he causes the Lords to swear allegiance to Prince Henry, 74; meets Pope Alexander III., in France, *ib.*; plots the ruin of Becket, *ib.*; holds the Council at Clarendon, *ib.*; procures the removal of Becket from Pontigny, 75; sends mes-

sages to the Pope declaring his innocence of the death of Becket, *ib.*; an account of certain mysterious warnings given to him, *ib.*; his sons rebel against him, 76; the King of Scotland rebels against him, *ib.*; he has great trouble with his sons, 77; does penance at the shrine of Becket 78; is reconciled to his sons, *ib.*; receives a vast body of foreign ambassadors in London, *ib.*; his fame, 79; he contributes money to the Crusade, *ib.*; his son Henry, dies, *ib.*; Peter of Blois writes a consolatory letter to him on the death of his son, *ib. (and note)*; he is visited by Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 80; who remonstrates with him on his refusal to join the Crusade, *ib.*; Henry follows him to Dover, *ib.*; their angry conversation on parting, *ib.*; he dies, and is buried at Fontevrault, 81; his character from Giraldus Cambrensis, 81, 82, 83, *and notes;* his exploits in war, 83; his conquests in Ireland and Scotland, *ib.*; his foreign possessions, *ib.*; his decision of the controversy between the Kings of Navarre and Castile, *ib.*; his wife, her evil character, *ib.*; his children and their marriages, 85.

Henry III., King of England (son of John), his birth, 86; he succeeds his father, *ib.*; his right to the Crown is disputed by Louis of France, *ib.*; he is crowned at Gloucester, *ib.*; he is joined by some of the adherents of Louis, 87; defeats Louis at Lincoln, 88; makes a truce with him at Kingston-upon-Thames, *ib.*; promises to observe the rights of the Barons, 89; founds the Monastery at Westminster, *ib.*; is urged to visit his foreign possessions, but is prevented by Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; marries Eleanor of Provence, *ib.*; marries his sister to the Emperor Frederic, 90; his son, Edward, is born, *ib.*; he proceeds to France *ib.*; is unsuccessfully opposed by the French King, who obtains a five years' truce, *ib.*; his daughter Margaret is born, *ib.*; also the Princess Beatrice [Capgrave erroneously makes them one and the same], in the following year, *ib.*; his son, Edward, marries Eleanor of Castile, *ib.*; Henry confers on him Gascony, Ireland, Wales, Bristol, Stamford, and Grantham, 91; he makes a change in the coinage, *ib.*; he makes peace with Llewellyn of Wales, *ib.*; his brother, Richard, Earl of Cornwall, leaves England, *ib.*; the Nobles conspire against the King, *ib.*; he receives his brother, Richard, on his return, at Canterbury, 92; he visits France, and makes an agreement with the French King to give up certain territorial rights in exchange for an annual tribute, *ib.*; resolves to resist the Provisions of Oxford, 93; is promised assistance by the King of France, *ib.*; makes Walter de Merton his Chancellor, 94; and William Basset Chief Justice, *ib.*; he meets the Barons in London, *ib.*; agrees to refer the controversy to the King of France, *ib.*; proceeds to France to be present at the arbitration, 95; is favoured by the French King, who decides that the Provisions of Oxford should be abrogated, *ib.*; his continual visits to Oxford, *ib.*; he defeats the Barons, and takes Northampton, 96; pursues the rebels to Rochester, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*; he is buried in Westminster Abbey, 97.

Henry IV., King of England, (son of John of Gaunt,) succeeds Richard II., 98; his birth, *ib.*; on the disputes arising between Richard II. and the Lords he visits the Holy Land, *ib.*; his resistance to Richard II., 99; he gains a victory over the Saracens, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; again visits Jerusalem, *ib.*; detailed account of his journey, 99, 100; he visits the graves of St. Augustin, Boëthius, and the Duke of Clarence, 100; returns through Bohemia, Germany, and France into England, 101; lands in England while Richard II. is in Ireland, *ib.*; is accepted as guardian of the realm, *ib.*; proceeds to Brid-

lington and from thence to Bristol, 102; takes King Richard, and leads him to London, *ib.*; Richard is charged with treating him unjustly, 103; he is present at the abdication of Richard II., 106; Richard consents to his succession to the throne, 107; his accession to the throne, *ib.*; he holds his first Parliament, 108; is crowned, *ib.*; his character, *ib.*; Capgrave compares him with Solomon, *ib.*; his sons, 109; his only surviving daughter, Philippa, marries Eric, of Norway, *ib.*; he marries Joan of Navarre, *ib.*; Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, rebels against him, 110; particulars of the war between them, *ib.*; he has troubles with Owen Glyndwr, *ib.*; pursues him through Wales, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; his dying address to his eldest son, *ib.*

Henry V., King of England, (son of Henry IV.,) 112; is crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; is conspired against by Sir John Oldcastle (Lord Cobham), *ib.*; Oldcastle is brought before him, *ib.*; and is consigned to the Tower, but escapes, 113; on the failure of the second attempt, the King orders litanies and public thanks to God, *ib.*; he builds three monasteries near Schene (Richmond), 114; holds his Parliament at Leicester, in which it is determined to adopt hostile measures against France, *ib.*; he prepares fleets and soldiers, *ib.*; certain treacherous persons endeavour to dissuade him from the expedition, and are put to death, *ib.*; he takes Harfleur, 115; he sends a message to the Dauphin, and begs him (in vain) to come to terms without bloodshed, *ib.*; he loses many of his troops, and many return to England, *ib.*; he proceeds to Arques, 116; thence to Eu, *ib.*; thence to Bowes, *ib.*; thence to the plain of Corbie, *ib.*; he defeats a body of French there, *ib.*; crosses the Somme, *ib.*; meets certain heralds, who announce the approach of the French, *ib.*; bids his soldiers confess their sins, *ib.*; defeats the French at Agincourt, *ib.*; proceeds to Calais, 117; receives the Lord Gaucort, and the captives from Harfleur, there, *ib.*; proceeds to Canterbury. *ib.*; thence to London, *ib.*; proclaims himself King of France, *ib.*; is informed of the victory of the Earl of Dorset over the French, 118; is visited by the Emperor Sigismund, *ib.*; receives him in London, and conducts him to Westminster, *ib.*; makes him a Knight of the Garter, *ib.*; on troubles occurring at Harfleur, conducts him to Leeds Castle in Kent, 119; returns thanks to God at Canterbury, for the Duke of Bedford's victory at Harfleur, 120; accompanies the Emperor on his return as far as Calais, *ib.*; holds a conference there with the Duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; confers on the Earl of Dorset the title of Duke of Exeter, 121; is urged by Oldcastle, and his followers to appropriate the goods of the Church, *ib.*; casts into prison Henry Greyndore, who had been sent to him by Oldcastle, *ib.*; collects his fleet at Southampton, *ib.*; enters Normandy, and takes Caen, *ib.*; Oldcastle, still plotting against him, is captured, 122; and executed, 123; he marries Katherine of France, *ib.*; dies at Bois Vincennes, near Paris, *ib.* (*see note*).

Henry VI., King of England, his birth, 125; reflections on the day of his birth, etc., 125, 126; joy in London on the occasion of his birth, 127; Capgrave gives advice to, *ib.*; he is crowned at Westminster, 128; and at Paris, *ib.*; reflections of the author on his double coronation, 128, 129; panegyric on the King, 131; he is compared to Constantine the Great, 131, 132; he founds Eton College, and King's College, Cambridge, 133; appoints William Millington to be the Provost of King's College, and William of Waynflete to be the Provost of Eton, *ib.*; decline of the English navy

in his time, 134; he marries Margaret of Anjou, 135; reflections of the author on this marriage, and on matrimony, 135, 136, 137; his visit to the Austin, Friary at Lynn, 137; the names of certain other places visited at the same time by, xxxvii; he takes it under his protection, 137; false charges having been made to him to the prejudice of the monks of Lynn, Capgrave gives him an account of the foundation, progress, and present condition of his House, 138, 139; and dedicates the Third Part of the "Henries" to him, 141; Dedication of the entire Work to, 1.

Henry I., Emperor of Germany (called the Fowler), 5; his parentage, 6; his sisters, and their alliances, *ib.*; he succeeds to the throne, 7; declares war against the Hungarians, and conquers them, *ib.*; arms prisoners against the enemies of his kingdom, *ib.*; Capgrave discusses at length the propriety of this measure, *ib.*; and decides that the Emperor acted rightly, 8; he obtains possession of the Sacred Spear, 9; his virtues, *ib.*; submission to him of Charles the Simple (III.), King of France, 10; Niger of Russia proclaims war against him, but is repulsed, 11; extract from the "Pantheon" of Godfrey of Viterbo relating to him, *ib.*; is succeeded by three Emperors of the name of Otho, 13; Capgrave decides that he was the first Emperor, *ib.*

Henry II., Emperor of Germany (called the Lame), son of Henry II., Duke of Bavaria (called Hezilon), 13; is anointed by the Archbishop of Mayence, *ib.*; represses rebellion, 14; his wife, S. Cunegund, 15; their austere life, *ib.*; he builds many churches, *ib.*; wages war successfully in Germany, Bohemia, and Italy, 16; Stephen, King of Hungary, marries his sister Gisele, *ib.*; extract from the "Pantheon" of Godfrey of Viterbo relating to him, 17.

Henry III., Emperor of Germany (called the Black), 18; the history of his accession to the throne, 18, *et seqq.*; his accession on the death of Conrad the Salique, 25; he subdues the King of the Bohemians and the Vindelici, *ib.*; and makes them tributaries, *ib.*; restores Peter of Hungary to his throne, *ib.*; marries Chunelinde, daughter of Canute the Great, 26; marries (a second wife) Agnes, daughter of William, Duke of Poitou and Aquitaine, *ib.*; legend of the discovery of the Giant Pallas (at Rome) in his reign, *ib.*; he keeps Whitsuntide at Mayence, *ib.*; the Archbishop and an Abbot contend for supremacy, *ib.*; he is succeeded by Henry IV., 28.

Henry IV., Emperor of Germany, conjectures as to his descent, 28; he avenges the wrongs of Peter, King of Hungary, *ib.*; ravages Pannonia, 29; quarrels with (Hildebrand) Pope Gregory VII., 31; and deposes him, *ib.*; is himself excommunicated by the Pope, and compelled to do penance, 32; besieges the Pope, but on the approach of Guiscard, flies with Guipert, whom he had made Pope, to Sens, *ib.*; at Mayence, appoints his son Henry to be his successor, 33; Henry, his son, rebels against him, and is supported by the Saxons, and by the Archbishop of Mayence, *ib.*; the latter excommunicates him, *ib.*; he goes out with an army to meet his son, *ib.*; they meet on the banks of the Rhine, but, on the Dukes of Austria and Bohemia deserting him, he is compelled to fly, *ib.*; he is forced to resign the empire to his son, 34; he retires to Cologne, *ib*; and dies at Liege, *ib.*; Extract from the "Pantheon" of Godfrey of Viterbo relating to him, 35; reference to his imprisonment by his son, Henry V., 58.

Henry V., Emperor of Germany, (son of Henry IV.,) succeeds his father, 37; invades Italy, *ib.*; reviews the troops by the Po, and takes Pontremoli and Arezzo, *ib.*; is received by the Pope at Rome, *ib.*; makes him his prisoner, but is finally reconciled to, and crowned by him, 38;

marries Maud, daughter of Henry I., King of England, 39; Lothaire, the Saxon (afterwards Emperor), comes barefoot and in tatters to the wedding, *ib.*; Pope Calixtus excommunicates him, *ib.*; he thrusts Bourdin, a Spaniard, into the See of Rome, *ib.*; on his submission he is absolved by Lambert the Legate, *ib.*; lays siege to Rome, *ib.*; dies at Spires, *ib.*; his epitaph, *ib.*; the account of him given by Giraldus Cambrensis, 41; he becomes a monk in the Monastery of S. Withburgha in Chester, *ib.*; Extracts from the "Pantheon" of Godfrey of Viterbo concerning him, 42, *et seq.*; reference to his imprisonment of his father Henry IV., 58.

Henry VI., Emperor of Germany, (called Asper,) second son of the Emperor, Frederic Barbarossa, 47; is crowned at Rome, *ib.*; his expedition into Apulia, *ib.*; he enters Sicily, but is compelled to retreat by a pestilence breaking out in his army, *ib.*; marries Constance of Sicily, *ib.*; subdues Apulia, *ib.*; mention of his keeping Richard I., King of England, in captivity, 48; extracts from the "Pantheon" of Godfrey of Viterbo, relating to him, 48, *et seq.*

Henry Plantagenet, Earl of Derby and Duke of Lancaster, his piety, 161; he is called "Pater Militum," *ib.*; his wars in Prussia, Rhodes, Spain, and elsewhere, *ib.*; his courage, *ib.*; his companions in arms, 162; his successes in France, *ib.*; verses of John of Bridlington on, *ib.*; he receives the command of the English army in France, *ib.*; he is sent to the Pope to arrange a treaty of peace between England and France, 163; enumeration of his virtues, *ib.*; he writes a book entitled "Mercy, Gramercy,' *ib.*; he dies at Leicester, 164; his daughter Maud marries secondly William, Duke of Zealand, *ib.*; Blanch, the daughter of, marries John of Gaunt, 98, [there mistaken for Constance, his second wife,] 164; she becomes the mother of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, afterwards Henry IV., *ib.*

Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, a brave soldier, 165; descended from Milo de Gloucester, 165, *note;* he opposes the encroachments of King John, 165; his grief on the occasion of the general Interdict, *ib.*; he proceeds on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 166; he again goes to Jerusalem, and is accompanied by Saier de Quincey, Earl of Winchester, *ib.*; he never returns, *ib.*

Henry de Beaumont, his noble character, 167; he fights bravely for King Edward III., *ib.*; assists Edward Baliol in his attempt to gain the crown of Scotland, *ib.*; Edward III. refuses to allow Baliol's partisans to enter Scotland by land, but permits them to go by sea, out of friendship to, 168; is present at the battle of Dunfermline, *ib.*; his courage, *ib.*; the Scots are defeated by him, *ib.*; Capgrave acknowledges his obligations to the descendants of, 169; he is present at the siege of Berwick, *ib.*; his descent from the royal family of France, *ib.*; his marriage, *ib.*; his Manor of Folkingham, in Lincolnshire, *ib.*; his burial, *ib.*

Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich (called the Warlike), 170; previous to his being chosen Bishop, he visits Rome, and fights against certain heretics, *ib.*; his popularity, *ib.*; his great bravery against the rebels in the time of Richard II., *ib.*; he quells the sedition of Litster and others, *ib.*; he puts certain rebels to death at Wymondham, 171; he quells the sedition at Norwich, *ib.*; he goes in pursuit of Wat Tyler, *ib.*; he catches Litster and beheads him, 172; he sends the quarters of the body to his own house, and to Norwich, Lynn, and Yarmouth, *ib.*; he is sent into Flanders by the Pope to oppose certain heretics, *ib.*; his great zeal against all disturbers of the peace, *ib.*; Capgrave discusses the lawfulness of a bishop bearing arms, 173; he dies

and is buried at Norwich, 174; hi Epitaph, 174; *and note.*

Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, his learning and writings, 175; quotations from his "Chronicle," 175, *and notes;* the history of his promotion, *ib.*; extract from his "De Summitatibus Rerum," containing his opinion on the end of the world, 176.

Henry, Earl of Lancaster, father of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, his gift to the Chapel of Walsingham, recorded in the Annals of the Chapel, 164.

Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster, son of John of Gaunt, 98; his birth at Bolingbroke, in Lincolnshire, *ib.*; his mother, *ib.*; his sisters, *ib.*; on the disputes arising between Richard II. and the Lords, he sets out for the Holy Land, *ib.*; his victory over the infidels, 99; he returns to England, *ib.*; visits Jerusalem, *ib.*; detailed account of his journey, *ib.*; he visits the graves of S. Augustin, Boëthius, and the Duke of Clarence, 100; he returns to England through Bohemia, Germany, and France, 101; he lands in England, while Richard II. is absent in Ireland, *ib.*; is accepted as guardian of the realm, *ib.*; proceeds to Bridlington, and thence to Bristol, 102; takes Richard, *ib.*; in the third of the charges brought against Richard II. in Westminster Hall, he is accused of unjustly banishing, 103; Richard II. is accused of forbidding persons to pray for, *ib.*; also of stirring up a quarrel between Percy, Earl of Northumberland, and, *ib.*; is present at the abdication of Richard II., 106; his accession to the throne, 107. *See* Henry IV.

Henry of Lancaster, Sir, opposes Richard II., 99; *see* Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster.

Henry, Prince, son of Henry IV. born, 109; *see* Henry V.

Henry, King of the Dacians, *see* Eric VI., King of Denmark.

Henry I., King of France, the son of Hugh Capet, 147; he assists William, Duke of Normandy, *ib.*; Ivo Carnotensis says that he was the grandson of Hugh Capet, *ib.*; he resigns his crown to his son Philip, 148, 149; causes him to be crowned at Rheims by Gervase, Archbishop of Rheims, *ib.*; he appoints Baldwin, Count of Flanders, to be Regent, *ib.*; genealogy of the Kings of France from Antenor, written by him, 148, *et seq.*; his son Hugh distinguished at Jerusalem, 149.

Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, and Sanchia of Provence, 151; accompanies Prince Edward, son of Henry III., in many of his expeditions, *ib.*; his parentage, *ib.*; his marriage, 152; he assists Prince Edward against Simon de Montfort, *ib.*; fights at the battle of Lewes, *ib.*; accompanies Prince Edward in the Crusade, *ib.*; shares his troubles at Cyprus, *ib.*; he fights long against the Infidels, 153; retires at the end of his days to Viterbo, *ib.*; is there treacherously slain in a church by Guy and Simon de Montfort, 154; his heart is buried at Westminster, and his body at the Abbey of Hayles, 155.

Henry II., Count of Champagne, his connection with England, 156; account of his parentage, *ib.*; he accompanies Richard I., King of England, to the Crusade, *ib.*; remains in the Holy Land when Richard and the French King had left it, 157; the Knights Templars and Hospitallers unanimously elect him to be King of Jerusalem, *ib.*; he marries the daughter of his predecessor, Conrad, Marquis of Montferrat, *ib.*; his good deeds, *ib.*; his celebrity among the Knights Templars, of whom the author gives some account, 157, 158.

Henry, King of Jerusalem, *see* Henry II., Count of Champagne.

Henry, Archbishop of Sens, brother of Louis VI., King of France, 159; re-

nounces the world and becomes a monk at the exhortation of S. Bernard, *ib.*; remains at Clairvaulx, *ib.*; is made, Bishop of Beauvais, *ib.*; is elevated to the Archbishopric of Sens, *ib.*; S. Bernard writes to him, 159, 160, *and note;* the question of the propriety of his retirement from the world is discussed, 160; the example of S. Martin is quoted in defence of the retirement of Henry from public affairs, *ib.*

Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent, 178; account of his writings, *ib.*; he is called "Doctor Solemnis," 180.

Henry de Urimaria, Doctor Parisiensis, 181; his industry and devotion, *ib.*; his habits and exercises, 182; his writings, 182, *and note;* 183, *and notes;* account of his death, 184; legend concerning his death, *ib.*

Henry, S., hermit and confessor, his life extracted from the "Nova Legenda Angliæ" in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum," 193.

Henry, Archbishop of Magdeburgh, *see* Magdeburgh, Henry, Archbishop of.

Henry of Huntingdon, reference to his Chronicle, 39; 61, *notes;* 62, *notes;* 66, and *notes.*

Henry, Prince, son of Henry II., is married to Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., King of France, 73; Henry II. compels all his nobles to swear allegiance to, 74; Thomas Becket is the first to swear, *ib.*; rebels against his father, 76, 78; is reconciled to him, 78; takes up his continual abode in Anjou and Aquitaine, *ib.*; his death, 79; he is buried in Maine, *ib.*; his body is afterwards removed to Rouen, *ib.*; Peter of Blois, in a letter, consoles Henry II. on his death, *ib.*

Henry I., Duke of Saxony, is represented at the great Congress of foreign ambassadors held at Westminster by Henry II. 78; marries Matilda, eldest daughter of Henry II., King of England, 85.

Heraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, *see* Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem.

Hercules, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 60.

Hereford, Earls of,—
- Milo de Gloucester, *see* Milo de Gloucester.
- Roger, xliii., *note.*
- Walter de Hereford, xliii., *note.*
- Henry, xliii., *note.*
- Mabell, xliii, *note.*
- Henry de Bohun, *see* Henry de Bohun.
- Humphrey de Bohun, *see* Bohun, Humphrey de.

Herman II., Duke of Suabia, *see* Gisilia, daughter of Herman II.

Hermit Friars of S. Augustin, *see* Augustin, S., *and* Capgrave.

Hertford, Earls of,—
- Roger de Clare, *see* Clare, Roger de.
- Gilbert de Clare, *see* Clare, Gilbert de.

Hervey, Bishop of Bangor, is translated to the newly erected see of Ely, 59.

Hezilon (in the MS. "Besilio"), Henry II., Duke of Bavaria, so called, the father of Henry II. Emperor.

Hicklingham, Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, at, 171.

Hide, the monastery of, rebuilt by King Henry I., 59.

Hierome, *see* Jerome, S., 198.

Higden, the "Polychronicon" of, references to, 40, *and note;* 48, *and note;* 73, *note;* 75, *note;* 79, *note;* 97, *note.*

Hilary, S., mentioned by S. Jerome, 198.

Hildebrand, *see* Gregory VII., Pope.

Hilderic, King of France, entering a monastery, Pepin is made King, 149.

Hirsaugia, *see* Ursania.

Hogges, *see* Hogue la.

Hogue, la, the Earl of Huntingdon, gains a naval victory at, 121.

Holland, John, Earl of Huntingdon, defeats the French fleet at la Hogue, 121.

Holland, William V., Duke of, *see* Zealand, William, Duke of.

Holland, William VI., Count of, *see* William VI., Count of Holland.

Honorius II. Pope, previously Bishop of Ostia, *see* Lambert, Bishop of Ostia.

Honorius III.. Pope 165.

Honton, Richard de, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Honton, Alice de, (wife of Richard de Honton,) one of the benefactors of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Hospitallers, the Knights, and the Knights Templars unanimously elect Henry II., Count of Champagne, to be King of Jerusalem, 157.

Hoveden, extract from, 73 *note.*

Hubert de Burgh, *see* Burgh, Hubert de.

Hugh the Great, father of Hugh Capet, King of France, 149.

——, Capet, King of France, succeeded by his son Henry, 147 ; according to Ivo Carnotensis by Robert II. (the Wise), the brother of Henry I., 147, 149.

——, son of Hugh Capet, dying without heirs, is succeeded by his brother Robert II., 149.

——, son of Henry I., King of France, dies in battle at Jerusalem, 149, 150.

——, S., bishop and confessor, 204.

——, of Auxerre, a contemporary of S. Bernard, 159.

Hugo de Sancto Victore, the Creed of, Capgrave treats of, 215.

Humphrey Plantagenet, Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Pembroke, youngest son of Henry IV., 109 ; Capgrave expresses his intention of writing a life of, *ib.*; receives the Emperor Sigismund at Dover, 118 ; is sent to S. Omer as a hostage, while John, Duke of Burgundy, holds a conference with Henry V. at Calais, 120; the life of, referred to, 189; Capgrave dedicates his " Commentary on the Book of Genesis " to, 223 ; the dedicatory letter to, 227 ; the Duke's acknowledgment of the gift, written upon the Oriel MS., 224 ; he gives the MS. to the University of Oxford, 225 ; his death, xxv.

Hungarians, the, overcome by Otho I., Duke of Saxony, 6 ; by Henry I. (the Fowler), 7 ; they reverence their King Stephen I. as a Saint, 16.

Hungary, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, passes through, 100 ; he is kindly received by Sigismund, the king of, *ib.*

Hungary, Kings of,—

Stephen I., *see* Stephen I.

Peter the German, *see* Peter the German.

Andrew I. *see* Andrew I.

Sigismund, *see* Sigismund.

Huntingdon, Earl of,—

John Holland, *see* Holland, John.

Huntingdon, Archdeacons of, 176, *et seq.*

Huntingdon, Henry of, *see* Henry of Huntingdon.

Hereford, Bishop of,—

John Trevenant (or Trefuant), *see* Trefuant, John.

Helena, the Empress, her example to be followed, 206.

Herbert, Bishop of Norwich, *see* Losinga, Herbert de.

Heth, near Lynn, 99.

Hydromel, a preparation of water and honey, the superstitions of the Egyptians respecting it, 25.

I.

Innocent III., Pope, lays the Kingdom of England under an Interdict, in the reign of John, 86, 165.

Innocent VI., Pope, Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, is sent to him to treat for peace between England and France, 163; he is greatly pleased with the Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*

Instructione Principum, De, by Giraldus Cambrensis, *see* Giraldus Cambrensis.

Interdict, the great, in the reign of King John, 86, 165.

Investiture, dispute between the Emperor Henry V. and the Church as to the right of investiture, 42, *et seq.*; the Emperor yields, 46.

Ireland, Pope Adrian IV. (Nicolas Breakspere), permits Henry II. to invade, 70; his bull to that effect, 71; Alexander III., his successor, confirms the bull, 73; subdued by Henry II., 84; given by Henry III. to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile, 90; Richard II. visits, and returns from on the landing in England of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 100.

Irishman, a certain, warns Henry II. to amend his life, 77.

Ironside, Edmund I., called, *see* Edmund I.

Isabel, daughter of King John, marries the Emperor Frederic II., 90.

Isaiah, Commentary of S. Jerome on the reference to the Egyptians made by the Prophet, 25, *and note.*

Israel, David anointed King over all, 129.

Israel, the Kings of, their aid often required by the Kings of Judah, 29.

"Italicarum rerum Scriptores," edited by Muratori, references to, *see* Viterbo, Godfrey of.

Italy, wars of the Emperor Henry II. in, 16; the Emperor Henry V. invades, 37; Henry de Beaumont distinguishes himself in battle in, 169.

——, the Saints of, commemorated by S. Jerome, 199.

——, Kings of,—

Berenger II. and Adalbert, *see* Lombards.

Ivo Carnotensis, the Chronicle of, referred to, 147, *and note.*

J.

Jacob, the Patriarch, his words quoted, 1.

James, S., the Apostle, a relic of, given to Henry I. by his daughter Maud, 64; Henry I. founds a monastery at Reading, and places it there, *ib.*

Januenses, *i.e.* Genoese, *q.v.*

Janus, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 66.

Jehosaphat, the seamless coat of CHRIST found in the valley of, 73, *and note.*

Jernemutha, *see* Yarmouth.

Jerome, S., quotation from the works of, 25, *and note*; 198, *and note*; 120, *and note*; Capgrave treats of a Creed written by, 215.

Jerusalem, the troubles at, 9; Godfrey of Bouillon elected King of, *ib.*; reference to the confinement of Shimei within the walls of, by Solomon, 14; Robert, Duke of Normandy, rejects the kingdom of, 55; is punished on that account, 57; the seamless coat of CHRIST, found in the valley of Jehosaphat, is carried by Gregory, Bishop of Antioch, to, 73; is taken by the Saracens, 81; Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby) goes on a pilgrimage to, 99; Hugh, son of Henry I., King of France, dies in battle at, 149; Henry, Count of Champagne, accompanies Richard I. to, 157; he is chosen King of, *ib.*; pilgrimages of Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, to, 165, 166.

——, Kings of, —

Baldwin V., *see* Baldwin V.

Henry, *see* Henry II., Count of Champagne.

——, Patriarchs of,—

Eraclius, *see* Eraclius.

Stephen, *see* Stephen.

Joab is put to death by the command of Solomon, 14.

Joan of Navarre, second wife of Henry IV., 109.

Joan, daughter of Edward II., marries David, Prince of Scotland (afterwards David II.), 168.

Joanna, third daughter of Henry II., King of England, marries William the Good, King of Sicily, 85.

Job, quotation from the Book of, 1.

Joel, the Prophet, his prophecy shown to have been fulfilled in the Acts of the Apostles, 222.

John, King of England, 85; wastes the possessions acquired, by marriage, by his predecessors, in France, 70; reference to his rebellion against his father, Henry II., 76; his reconciliation to his father, 78; is succeeded by his son Henry, 86; Pope Innocent III. lays him and his kingdom under an interdict, 86; is father of Richard, King of the Romans, 151; Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, one of the most vigorous opponents of his tyrannies, 165; his death, 86.

John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, father of Henry IV., 98, 164; by Blanch, daughter and coheir of Henry, Earl of Derby and Lincoln, and Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; Henry Beaufort, his son, by Katharine Swinford, Bishop of Winchester, and a cardinal, *see* Beaufort, Henry.

John, Abbot of Glastonbury, and others, are sent to Richard II. to announce his deposition, 107.

John Plantagenet, third son of Henry IV., Earl of Kendal and Duke of Bedford, 109.

John, Duke of Bedford, receives the Emperor Sigismund at Rochester, 118; scatters the French fleet and relieves Harfleur, 119; in the absence of Henry V., holds his Parliament in London, 122; is present at the execution of Sir John Oldcastle, *ib.*

John, Duke of Bourbon, *see* Bourbon, John, Duke of.

John, Sans Peur, Duke of Burgundy, comes to Calais in order to hold a conference with King Henry V., 120; he stipulates that the Duke of Gloucester should be sent to S. Omer as a hostage, *ib.*; he returns home, 121.

John of Tinmouth, *see* Tinmouth, John of.

John, Bishop of Sabina, becomes Pope, as Sylvester III., xxiii.

Josaphat, 15.

Josceline of Soissons, *see* Soissons, Josceline of.

Judah, the Tribe of, David anointed King over, in Hebron, 128.

——, the Kings of, their aid often required by the Kings of Israel, 29.

Judas, his place among the Twelve, taken by S. Mathias, 221.

Julianum Pelagianum, S. Augustinus contra, referred to, 136, *note* (6).

Julius Cæsar, Prince Henry, son of Henry II., compared to, 79.

Jupiter, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 66.

K.

"Kalendre of the Newe Legende," the, Pynson prints (in 1516) an abridgment of Capgrave's "Nova Legenda Angliæ," called, 192.

Kardiff Castle, *see* Cardiff Castle.

Katharine of France, the Princess, daughter of Charles VI., marries Henry V. at Troyes in Champagne, 123; becomes the mother of Henry VI., 125.

Kendal, Earl of,—

John Plantagenet, Duke of Bedford, *see* John Plantagenet.

Kenelm, King and Martyr, 185.

Kenilworth, the siege of (temp. Hen. III.), not mentioned by Capgrave, xxxi.

Kent, Leeds Castle, in the county of, *see* Leeds Castle.

Kent, Ethelbert, King of, *see* Ethelbert, King of Kent.

Kent, Wat Tyler, a man of, his rebellion, 171; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, pursues him, *ib.*

Kent, Earl of,—

Hubert de Burgh, *see* Burgh, Hubert de.

Kidecaus, *see* Pays du Caux.

Kings, the Books of, Capgrave's Commentary on, referred to, 14; Capgrave's Commentary on the First and Third Books of, given by Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, to the University of Oxford, 226.

King's College, Cambridge, founded by Henry VI., 133; William Millington (a friend of Capgrave) is appointed first Provost, *ib.*

Kings of France, their genealogy from Antenor, written by Henry I., King of France, 148, *et seq.*

Kings of Castile, *see* Castile, Kings of.

Kings of England, list of those mentioned, *see* England, Kings of.

Kings of France, list of those mentioned, *see* France, Kings of.

Kings of Scotland, *see* Scotland, Kings of.

Kingston-upon-Thames, Louis, Dauphin of France, having been defeated by the army of Henry III., at Lincoln, sues for peace at, 88.

Knight of the Garter, *see* Garter, Knight of.

Knights Hospitallers, *see* Hospitallers, the Knights.

—— Templars, the, *see* Templars, the Knights.

L.

La Hogue, *see* Hogue, La.

Lambert, Bishop of Ostia, as Legate absolves the Emperor Henry V. on his renouncing the right of investiture at the Council of Worms, 40; [Pope Honorius III.] the Knights Templars established at Jerusalem in the time of, 157.

Lame, Henry II., called the, (Claudus), *see* Henry II., Emperor.

Lancaster, Sir Henry of, *see* Henry of Lancaster, Sir.

——, Earl of,—

Henry, father of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, *see* Henry, Earl of Lancaster.

——, Dukes of,—

John of Gaunt, *see* John of Gaunt.

Henry Plantagenet, Earl of Derby, *see* Henry, Earl of Derby.

Henry Plantagenet, *see* Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster, *and* Henry IV.

Langres, Godfrey of, *see* Godfrey of Langres.

"Le Neve," Hardy's Edition of, referred to, *see* Bayeux, William of.

Le Spenser, *see* Despenser, le.

Leeds Castle, in Kent, the Emperor Sigismund is placed there by King Henry V., 119.

Legende, the Kalendre of the Newe, *see* Pynson.

Legionum Urbs, *see* Chester.

Leicester, Henry V., holds a Parliament at, 114; no tax is demanded of the clergy or people, *ib.*; the King's marriage is discussed, *ib.*; it is determined to send ambassadors to France, *ib.*; Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, dies at, 164.

——, Earls of,—

Robert Blanchmains, *see* Blanchmains, Robert.

Simon de Montfort, *see* Montfort, Simon de.

Leland's "Collectanea," quotation from 225.

Lemocenensis, *i.e.* of Limoges, *q.v.*

Leo II., Pope, 29.

Leo IV., Pope, gives certain Relics to Charlemagne, 10.

Leonard, S., Henry VI. crowned at Westminster on the feast of, 128.

Leonina Urbs (*Il Borgo*), a suburb of Rome, destroyed by the Emperor Henry IV., 32.

Leopold of Austria deserts the cause of the Emperor Henry IV., and joins his son Henry, 33.

——, Count, the father of the Emperor Henry III., 18; he offends the Emperor Conrad III. and flies to a forest, *ib.*; Conrad finds him there by accident, but does not recognize him, *ib.*; his son Henry (afterwards Emperor) is born while Conrad is in the hut, 19; after the marriage of his son to Conrad's daughter, he is restored to favour, 24.

Lewes, the battle of, 96; Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, fights in, 152.

Lexham, Thomas de, an early benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *and note.*

Liège, the Emperor Henry IV. retires to, and dies there, 34; he is buried there, but his body cast out of the cemetery by the command of Pope Paschal II., 34, 35.

Ligonensis, *see* Lingonensis.

Limoges, Louis IV. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.

Lincoln, the Diocese of, Henry I. confers the royal Vill of Spalding on the Bishop of Lincoln, in consideration of the county of Cambridge having been assigned to the newly erected See of Ely, 59.

——, Bishops of:—
Remigius de Feschamp, *see* Feschamp, Remigius de.
Robert Bloet, *see* Bloet, Robert.
Richard de Graveshend, *see* Graveshend, Richard de.

——, besieged by Louis, Dauphin of France, who is defeated there by the army of Henry III., 88.

——, the County of, Folkingham in, *see* Folkingham.

——, Earl of,—
Henry Plantagenet, *see* Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster.

Lindisfarne, Bishops of,—
S. Cuthbert, *see* Cuthbert, S.
S. Aidan, *see* Aidan, S.

Lingonensis, *i.e.* of Langres, *q. v.*

Lionel, Duke of Clarence, (third son of Edward III.,) xxxi.; is buried at Milan, 100; Henry of Lancaster, returning from his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, visits the tomb of, *ib.*; his heart, by his own request, carried to England, and buried in the Austin Friary at Clare, *ib.*

Lions, the Wood of, S. Denis in, 66.

Lira, Doctor de, Capgrave derives matter for his "Literal Exposition of Genesis" from the works of, 229; quotation from his writings, 130.

Litster, John, Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, quells the sedition of, 170; captures and executes him, 172; sends the quarters of his body to places in Norfolk, *ib.*

Llewellyn, Prince of Wales, makes peace with Henry III. at Montgomery, 91; the Papal Legate seals and confirms the agreement, *ib.*

Lollards, the, rise, during the absence of Henry V. in France, but are suppressed by John, Duke of Bedford, 122.

Lombards, the (Berenger II. and Adalbert, Kings of Italy), conquered by Otho I., Emperor of Germany, 6.

London, a council held at, under Henry I., in which the right of investiture by cross and ring is forbidden to laymen, 58; Henry I. and Adelais of Louvain are crowned at, 64; Prince Henry, eldest son of Henry II., is born at, 70; held by Louis, son of Philip II., King of France, against Henry III., 86; Henry III. meets the Barons in, where they determine to refer their disputes to Louis IX., King of France, 94; Simon de Montfort, leaving Rochester, advances on, 96; S. Giles' Fields at, the place of rendezvous of the adherents of Sir John Oldcastle, 113; after the victory at Agincourt, Henry V. proceeds in triumph to, 117; the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by him at, and conducted to Westminster, 118; Sir John Oldcastle is executed at, 122; joy in, at the birth of Henry VI., 127; festivities at, after the marriage of John of Gaunt and Blanch of Lancaster at Reading, 164; Wat Tyler's rebellion in, 171.

——, Tower of, *see* Tower of London.

London, Bishops of,—
S. Erconwald, *see* Erconwald, S.
Maurice, *see* Maurice.
Michael de Northburgh, *see* Northburgh, Michael de.

Longobardus, Albertus, *see* Albertus Longobardus.

Longum Castrum, *i.e.* Lancaster, *see* Henry Plantagenet, Duke of Lancaster.

Lopham, Dionysius, Public Notary, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note*.

Losinga, Herbert de, Bishop of Norwich, Henry of Huntingdon relies on his authority in giving his opinion as to the duration of the world's existence, 176.

Lot, his example quoted, 196.

Lothaire I. (according to Martinus Polonus), successor to Henry I. (the Fowler), 13.

Lothaire II. (the Saxon), Emperor, attends (while Duke of Saxony), the wedding of the Emperor Henry V., in a pauper's dress, 39.

Lothaire I., King of France, succeeds Louis IV., 149; is succeeded by Louis V., *ib.*

Louis of Aquitaine marries the daughter of Otho I., Duke of Saxony, 6.

Louis III. of Germany, his death, 6; he is succeeded by Otho I., Duke of Saxony, who refuses the honour, *ib.*; his crown descends to Conrad I., Duke of Franconia, 7.

Louis I., Emperor of the West, son of Charlemagne, 149.

—— I., King of France (called le Debonnaire), *see* Louis I., Emperor.

Louis III., King of France, is succeeded by Charles the Simple, 149.

Louis IV., King of France, is succeeded by Lothaire I., 149.

Louis V., King of France, is succeeded by Hugh Capet, 149; termination of the Carlovingian Dynasty, *ib.*

Louis VI., King of France, is defeated by Henry I. at the battle of Brenville, 61; Henry I. makes peace with him on condition that his son, Prince William, should have undisputed possession of Normandy, 62; Capgrave gives some account of his brother Henry, *see* Henry, Archbishop of Sens.

Louis VII., King of France, Eleanor, his divorced Queen, marries Henry II., King of England, 69; he is compelled very unwillingly to submit to her second husband obtaining Aquitaine, 70; his daughter, Margaret, is betrothed to Henry, eldest son of Henry II., King of England, 73; he assists the sons of Henry II. in their rebellion against their father, 76, 78.

Louis VIII., King of France, (before his accession) claims the crown of England, against Henry III., 86; holds London and the surrounding country, *ib.*; is acknowledged by the English barons, *ib.*; becomes unpopular, and is deserted by many of the barons, 87; refuses to acknowledge Henry III., and marches against Lincoln, 88; is there repulsed with great loss, *ib.*; meets King Henry near Kingston-upon-Thames, and sues for peace, *ib.*; promises to persuade his father to give up to Henry III. the English possessions in France, 89; engages to do so himself on his own accession and departs, *ib*; receives five thousand pounds from the English, xxx.

Louis IX., King of France (called the Saint), successfully resists the invasion of Henry III., and compels him to seek a five years' truce, 90; makes an agreement to pay an annual tribute to Henry III. in exchange for certain territorial rights in France, 92; confirms the King of England's rights in Bordeaux, Bayonne, Agen, &c., 93; promises to aid Henry III. in his attempt to resist the Provisions of Oxford, *ib.*; the dispute between Henry III. and his Barons is referred to, 94; Henry III. repairs to the

Court of, 95; the Barons also send delegates from their own number to, *ib.* he decides in favour of Henry III., and abrogates the Provisions of Oxford, *ib.*; his good deeds, 130; Henry de Beaumont is said to have been descended from, 160.

Louis, son of the Emperor Rupert, marries Blanche, daughter of Henry IV., of England, xxxiii.

Louvain, Adelais of, the second wife of Henry I. of England, 60, 63.

Lucas, William, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Lucilius, celebrated by Seneca in his letters, 179.

Lucius III., Pope, sends letters by Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, to Henry II. of England, and requests his assistance against the Saracens, 80.

Luke, S., the Acts of the Apostles written by, 220.

Luttrell, Narcissus, the donor of a MS. by Capgrave to the library of All Souls' College, Oxford, 209.

Lynn, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, embarks near, 99; Capgrave records that he was present when the Princess Philippa, about to be married to Eric IX., embarked at, 109; Henry VI. visits the Austin Friary at, 137; he promises to be its patron, *ib.*; Capgrave gives an account of its foundation and its state in his own time, 138, 139, *and notes;* on the execution of Litster, one of the quarters of his body is sent by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, to the town of, 172.

Lyra, Nicholas de, *see* Lira, Doctor de.

M.

Maccabees, the, reference to, 196; their constancy and perseverance mentioned in Ecclesiasticus, 197.

Magdeburgh, Henry, Archbishop of, consecrated by Ruthard, Archbishop of Mayence, 33.

Magna Charta, Henry de Bohun, and twenty-four other barons, chosen to enforce, xliii., *note.*

Maguntia, *i.e.* Mayence, *q.v.*

Maine, on the death of his father, (Geoffrey Plantagenet,) Henry II., takes possession of his inheritance of Anjou and, 69; Prince Henry, son of Henry II., is buried in, 79; Henry II. keeps it in subjection throughout his reign, 84; Henry III. gives up his rights in, and in other of his French possessions, to Louis IX. in exchange for an annual tribute, 92.

Malcolm III. King of Scotland, Maud, the daughter of, is married to Henry I. of England, 58.

Mansi's "Collectio Nova Conciliorum," *see* Councils.

Manuel I., Comnenus, Emperor of Constantinople, is represented at the great congress of foreign ambassadors held at Westminster by Henry II., 78.

Marconurus, [C.C.C. Marcomirus], an early Frank chief, 148; he is succeeded by his son Pharamund, *ib.*

Margaret, wife of Tancred, King of Sicily, is carried prisoner into Germany by the Emperor Henry VI., 47.

——, wife of Malcolm III., King of Scotland, mother of Maud, Queen of Henry I., 58.

——, daughter of Louis VII., King of France, is betrothed to Prince Henry, eldest son of Henry I., King of England, 73.

——, the Princess, daughter of Henry III., is born in Gascogne, 90.

—— of Anjou, daughter of René (titular King of Sicily), married to Henry VI., King of England, 135.

Markham, Sir John, Justice, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note.*

Mars, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 66.

Marshall, William, Earl of Pembroke, is present at the treaty made between Henry III. and Louis, Dauphin of France, at Kingston-upon-Thames, 88.

Martin V. elected Pope, 122.

Martin, S., the resignation and devotion of, 160.

Martinus Polonus, quotations from, 9, *note*; 10, *note*; 13, *and note*; 16, *note*; 26, *notes*; 30, *and notes*; 31, *and notes*; 40, *and notes*.

Mary, the Virgin, Pope Leo IV. gives a relic of, to Charlemagne, 10.

Mary de Bohun, Queen of Henry IV., daughter of Humphrey, Earl of Hereford, her children, 109.

Masham, Henry Lord Scrope, of, *see* Scrope, Henry, Lord (of Masham).

Matilda, *see* Maud.

Matilda, wife of the Emperor Henry I., 6.

Matilda, eldest daughter of Henry II. King of England, marries Henry the Lion, Duke of Saxony, 85.

Mattathias, his dying advice to his children, 196; their constancy and perseverance mentioned in Ecclesiasticus, 197.

Matthew of Westminster, reference to his Chronicle, 39.

Matthias, S., takes the place of Judas, 220.

Maud, the daughter of Henry I., of England, marries the Emperor Henry V., 39; is divorced by him, 41; having married Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou, visits her father, 64; gives birth to Henry II., *ib.*; Henry I., having no son, claims the allegiance of his subjects for, 65; on Stephen's usurpation, she invades England, 68; obtains the assistance of her brother, Robert, Earl of Gloucester, 69; commits her son, during the war, to the care of David I., King of Scotland, *ib.*; her husband, Geoffrey of Anjou, dies, *ib.*

——, daughter of Malcolm III., King of Scotland, is married to Henry I. of England, 58; her death, 60.

Maud, the daughter of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, marries William V., Duke of Holland and Zealand, 164.

Maurice, Bishop of London, consecrates Henry I. to be king in the absence of Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 58.

Maxentius, victory of Constantine over the usurper, 131.

Maximus, S., quotation from a sermon of, 213; Capgrave treats of the Creed of, 215.

Mayence, Henry III., the Emperor, keeps Whitsuntide at, 26; contention between the Archbishop of, and the Abbot of Fulda, *ib.*; the Emperor answers the voice of ill omen in the Church, 27; the Emperor Henry IV. publicly commits the empire to his son, Henry V., at, 33; hears of his son" rebellion, while at, *ib.*; a Council is held there, the Emperor Henry IV. is declared to be still excommunicate, and he is forced to resign the empire to his son, 34; Henry VI., Emperor, is crowned at, *ib.*; the Emperor Henry V. marries Maud, the daughter of Henry I., King of England, at, 39; Lothaire, Duke of Saxony (afterwards Emperor), comes thither to the wedding dressed as a pauper, *ib.*

——, Archbishops of,—
Bardo, *see* Bardo.
Albert, *see* Albert.
Ruthard, *see* Ruthard.

Mercury, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon, 66.

"Mercy, Gramercy," a book so called, written by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 163; Capgrave, in his life of the Duke, gives some account of it, 164. *See* in the *Glossary*, *s. v.* "Gramercy."

Merton, Walter de (Bishop of Rochester), is made Chancellor by Henry III., 94.

Metz, S. Arnulphus, son of Arnold, is made Bishop of, 149.

Milan, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), returning from Jerusalem, visits the Duke of, at, 100.

Milan, Duke of,—
John Galeas, *see* Galeas, John.

Mildred, S., Virgin, her life, extracted from the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum," 193.

Millington, William, appointed by Henry VI. the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge, 133.

Milo, de Gloucester, created Earl of Hereford, xliii, 165, *note;* Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, descended from, *ib.*

Milo I., Bishop of Morigny, 159.

Minerva, Henry I. compared to, by Henry of Huntingdon.

Modwena, S., Virgin, her example to be followed, 206, 207.

Mons-Gomeri, *i.e.*, Montgomery, *q.v.*

Montacute, William de, Earl of Salisbury, companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.

Montferrat, Conrad, Marquis of, Henry II., Count of Champagne, marries the daughter of, 157.

Montfort, Simon de, Earl of Leicester, his sons, Simon and Peter, are taken by Henry III.'s army at Northampton, 96; lays siege to Rochester, but, on the advance of the King's army, proceeds to London, *ib.*

——, Simon de, son of the Earl of Leicester, is taken by Henry III.'s army at Northampton, 96.

——, Simon de, son of Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, and Guy, his brother, conspire to slay Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, in a church at Viterbo, 154.

——, Peter de, son of Simon, Earl of Leicester, is taken prisoner at Northampton, 96.

——, Guy de, *see* Montfort, Simon de, son of Simon, Earl of Leicester.

——, John de, Bretagne rebels against, but is subdued by Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162; he carries Charles de Blois prisoner to England, *ib.*

Montgomery, Henry III. and Llewellyn, Prince of Wales, make peace at, 91; the legate Ottobon confirms their treaty there, *ib.*

Montjui, Henry V., Emperor, crosses the Pyrenees at, 37.

Morigny, Milo I., bishop of, 159.

Morley, Thomas de, meets Henry le Despenser near Cambridge, and delivers up some of the ringleaders of Litster's rebellion to him, 171.

Moroveus, King of France, succeeds Clodion, 148; is succeeded by his son Childeric I., 149.

Mortaigne, William, Earl of, accompanies Robert, Duke of Normandy, to Tenechebray, 57; is taken prisoner there, *ib.*; is carried to England with Robert, by Henry I., who imprisons them both, 58.

Moses, his words quoted, 2; his meekness mentioned in the Book of Ecclesiasticus, 197, 198.

Mowbray, Thomas, Earl of Nottingham, opposes Richard II., 99.

Muratori's edition of the "Pantheon," references to, *see* Viterbo, Godfrey of.

N.

Naples, the Emperor Henry VI. invades the kingdom of Sicily, and conquers the country as far as to, 47; his army is there attacked by a pestilence so violent that he is compelled to return, *ib.*; he marries there Constance, the daughter of Tancred, King of Sicily, *ib.*

Navarre, King of, —
Sancho VI., called "the Wise," *see* Sancho VI.

Navy, the English, Capgrave deplores its decline, 134; the reproach of the 'ship' and the 'sheep' on the coins, 135; "the wooden walls of England," *ib.*

Nazianzen, Gregory, *see* Gregory Nazianzen.

Neell, James, a Norman, born at Rouen, makes a copy of Capgrave's "Nova Legenda Angliæ" for Thomas Goldston, Prior of Canterbury, 192.

Neustria, *see* Normandy.

Neve, le, Hardy's edition of the "Fasti Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ" of, *see* Bayeux, William of.

Nevill, Ralph, Earl of Westmoreland, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note.*

Newmarch, Adam de, and others, represent the barons of England before Louis IX. in the matter of the Provisions of Oxford, 95.

Nicæa, the Council of, Constantine present at, 132.

Nicene Creed, the, Capgrave treats of, 214; he treats also of another Creed bearing the same name, *ib.*

Nicholas, S., the day of, reflections on the birth of Henry VI. on, 125.

Nicholas, Archdeacon of Cambridge, 176.

———— Archdeacon of Huntingdon, 176.

———— Archdeacon of Hertford, 176.

Niger of Russia proclaims war against Henry I. (of Germany), 11; he is defeated, *ib.*

Noah, the window in the ark of, compared to the wound in the side of Christ, 9; his example quoted, 196.

Norbury, John, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Noricus, *see* Bavaria.

Normandy, Robert, Duke of, *see* Robert, Duke of Normandy.

Normandy, Robert, the eldest son of the Conqueror, having compromised with William Rufus his claim to the English crown, returns to, 55; after the conference at Northampton, he again returns into, 56; he takes certain towns and castles, and drives the adherents of Henry I. out of, *ib.*; Henry I. invades, and lays siege to Tenechebray, 56, 57; the nobles of Normandy join Henry I., 57; a battle is fought, in which Robert is taken prisoner, *ib.*; Henry I. settles the affairs of, and returns to England, 58; Henry I. is crowned by Maurice, Bishop of London, Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, being in, *ib.*; Henry I. goes into, and dies there, 66; Henry of Huntingdon alludes to the fact that Henry I. was both brought up and died in, *ib.*; Henry II. inherits and keeps in subjection, 84; the men of, urge Henry III. to visit his foreign possessions, 89; Henry III. yields up his rights in, to Louis IX., together with other of his lands in France, in exchange for an annual tribute, 92; Henry V. collects his troops at Southampton, about to invade, 121; after the Duke of Bedford's victory at La Hogue, he passes over into, *ib.*; account of the conquests of Henry V. in, 123.

Normandy, Henry II., on the death of his father, abandons the title of Count, and proclaims himself Duke of, 69.

North Walsham (county Norfolk), Litster the rebel, at, 171; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, follows him thither, 172.

Northampton, Robert, Duke of Normandy, holds a conference with his brother at, when their quarrel is renewed, 56; the Barons hold it against Henry III., but are soon dispossessed by him, 96.

Northampton, Earl of,—

William de Bohun, *see* Bohun, William de.

Northburgh, Michael de, Prebendary of St. Paul's, accompanies Henry first Duke of Lancaster to Pope Innocent II., to treat for peace between England and France, 163; he is afterwards made Bishop of London, *ib.*

Northausen, Ruthard, Archbishop of Mayence, at, excommunicates the Emperor Henry IV., and abets his son's rebellion, 33.

Northumberland, Earl of,—

Henry Percy, *see* Percy, Henry.

Norway, King of,—
Eric XIII., *see* Eric IX. of Denmark, (XIII. of Norway).
Norwich, John Litster's rebellion at, 171; it is quelled by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, *ib.*; on the execution of Litster, one of the quarters of his body is sent to, 172; Henry le Despenser is buried at, 174.
Norwich, Bishops of,—
Herbert de Losinga, *see* Losinga, Herbert de.
William Bateman, *see* Bateman, William.
Henry le Despenser, *see* Henry le Despenser.
Richard Courtenay, *see* Courtenay, Richard.
Nottingham, Earl of,—
Thomas Mowbray, *see* Mowbray, Thomas.

O.

Obols (half-pennies), ordered by Henry I. of England to be made round, 59.
Octo, *see* Otho.
Octobon, *see* Ottobon.
Oldcastle, John, Lord Cobham, conspires against Henry V., 112; he upholds the doctrines of John Wicklif, *ib.*; he is brought before the King, but refuses to yield, *ib.*; he is brought before a Council of Bishops when he defends his tenets, *ib.*; he is publicly branded with heresy by Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, 113; the King spares his life and commits him to the Tower, *ib.*; he escapes and plots against the King's life, *ib.*; his plans being defeated, he is again captured, *ib.*; he publishes seditious bills, in one of which he recommends the King to appropriate the property of the Church, 121; he sends it to the King by one Henry Greyndore, *ib.*; is captured, and condemned to death, 122; an account of his tenets, *ib.*; he is executed in London, *ib.*; is said to have claimed to be Elias, *ib.*; he is exhorted by the Duke of Bedford to confess his errors, which he refuses to do, *ib.*; account of his execution, 123.
Omer, S., Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, is sent as a hostage to, while John, Duke of Burgundy, holds a conference with Henry V. at Calais, 120.
Orkney Islands, the, subject to King Henry II., 84.
Orleans, Charles, Duke of, opposes Henry V. on his march from Harfleur, and offers battle, 116.
Ositha, S., Queen and Martyr, referred to 206; her example to be followed by virgins, 207.
Osric of Deira, *see* Oswin of Deira.
Ostia, Bishop of,—
Lambert, *see* Lambert.
Oswald, son of Ethelfrith, King of Northumbria, 185, 202.
Oswin of Deira, son of King Osric, 185 offers his daughter to God, 186.
Otho, son of Athelstan, King of England, 6.
Otho I., Duke of Saxony, father of Henry I. (the Fowler), 6; subdues the Hungarians and others, *ib.*; his children, *ib.*; elected to the Empire on the death of Louis III., *ib.*; he declines the imperial throne, 7.
Otho I. (the Great), Emperor of Germany, 6, 12, 13; he revenges on Boleslas I. Duke of Bohemia, the murder of Wenceslas I., 143.
Otho II. (the Bloody), Emperor of Germany, 12, 13.
Otho III., Emperor of Germany, 12; his death, 13; he is succeeded by Henry II. (the Lame), *ib.*
Otho, the Legate, baptizes Prince Edward, son of Henry III., at Westminster, 90.

Ottobon, the Legate, makes peace between Henry III. and Llewellyn of Wales, 91; seals the agreement made between them, and confirms it in the name of Pope Alexander IV., *ib.*

Ovid, quotation from the "Amores" of, 66, *and note.*

Owen Glyndwr, *see* Glyndwr, Owen.

Oxford, Provisions of, Henry III. resolves to resist the, 93; after a discussion in London, the matter is referred to Louis IX., King of France, 94; who decides in Henry's favour, and abrogates the Provisions of, 95; Henry III. continually visits the city of, notwithstanding the curse of S. Frideswide on every King who should do so, *ib.*

Oxford, the University of, Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, gives one hundred and thirty-five MSS. to, 225, 226; reference to the registers of, 227, *note.*

——, All Souls' College, *see* All Souls' College, Oxford.

——, Balliol College, *see* Balliol College, Oxford.

——, Oriel College, *see* Oriel College, Oxford.

——, Bodleian Library at, *see* Bodleian Library.

P.

Pains de (de Paganis) Hugues, one of the founders of the order of Knights Templars, 158.

Pallas, *see* Minerva.

Pallas, the legend of the discovery at Rome of the uncorrupt body of a giant called, 26.

Pannonia invaded by the Emperor, Henry III., 25; invaded, in defence of Peter the German, against Andrew I. by the Emperor, Henry IV., 29; is ravaged by Henry IV., who conquers Andrew I., *ib.*; Sygambria, on the borders of, *see* Antenor.

"Pantheon," the Chronicle called the, *see* Viterbo, Godfrey of.

Paris, son of Priam, Prince Henry, eldest son of Henry II. of England, is compared to, 79.

Paris, Matthew, quotation from, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.

Paris, reference to the coronation of Henry VI. at, 4, 128.

Parliament, Rolls of, quoted, 103, *note, et seqq.*; 106, *note.*

Paschal II. Pope, commands the body of the Emperor, Henry IV., to be disinterred at Liège, 34, 35; disputes between him and the Emperor, Henry V., 36; receives the Emperor, Henry V., at Rome, 37; is imprisoned by the Emperor, 38; is afterwards reconciled to him, *ib.*; dies, 44, *note;* takes the part of Thurstan, Archbishop of York, on his deprivation for refusing to acknowledge the supremacy of the Archbishop of Canterbury, 59; discusses the matter with Henry I. at Rheims, 60; procures the restoration of Thurstan, *ib.*

Paul, S., quotations from the writings of, 197, 198; his labours fully detailed in the "Acts of the Apostles," 221; his call to be an Apostle, 222.

——, S., the anchorite, his history written by S. Jerome, 198.

Paul's, S., London, Michael Northburgh, formerly Prebendary of, *see* Northburgh, Michael, Bishop of London.

Pavia, Henry, of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), returning from Jerusalem, is entertained at, 100.

Pays du Caux, Henry V., invading France, lands at the, 115.

Pembroke, Earls of,—

William Marshall, *see* Marshall, William.

Humphrey Plantagenet, *see* Humphrey Plantagenet.

Penshurst, the manor of Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, at, the Duke receives from Capgrave the gift of his "Commentary on the Book of Genesis" there, 224.

Pepin, King of France, 149; is succeeded by his son, Charlemagne, *ib.*

Perche, the Count of, is taken at Lincoln, on the defeat of Louis, Dauphin of France, by the army of Henry III., 88.

Percy, Thomas, Earl of Worcester, Richard II. is charged with causing a quarrel between Henry, Duke of Lancaster, and, 103; his treacherous rebellion against Henry IV., 110.

——, Henry, Earl of Northumberland, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note;* rebels against Henry IV., 110; is defeated at Shrewsbury, *ib.*; is slain at the battle of Bramham Moor, xxxiv.

Perigueux, Louis IX. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.

Peter, S., Church of, at Antioch, the Sacred Spear is found in, 10.

——, the German, King of Hungary, is restored to his throne by Henry III. (the Emperor), 25; is driven from his Kingdom by Andrew I., and deprived of sight, 28; the Emperor, Henry IV., makes a vain attempt to restore him, 29.

——, of Blois, the letter of, to Henry II., King of England, on the death of Prince Henry, 79, *and note.*

Peter's Pence, 72.

Peterborough, the Abbey of, founded by Edgar, 134.

Petragoricum, *see* Perigueux.

Pharamund, an early Frank chief, the son of Marconurus, 148; he is succeeded by his son, Clodion, *ib.*

Philip I. (l'Amoureux), King of France, his father, Henry I., resigns the crown to him, 148; he is crowned at Rheims by Gervase, Archbishop of Rheims, *ib.*; during his childhood, Baldwin, Count of Flanders, is appointed to be Regent, *ib.*; *see also the note;* becomes a monk, 149.

Philip II., King of France, Louis, son of, opposes Henry III., King of England, *see* Louis VIII., King of France; he accompanies Richard I. to the Crusade, 157; his sister, Mary, the mother of Henry II., Count of Champagne, 156.

Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, is represented at the great congress of foreign ambassadors held at Westminster by Henry II., 78.

Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., of England, marries Eric IX., of Denmark, XIII. of Norway, 109; Capgrave sees her embark at Lynn, *ib.*

Phineas, his good example quoted, 197; his zeal mentioned in the Book of Ecclesiasticus, 197.

Phocas, the Emperor, discovery of the seamless coat of CHRIST in his time, 73.

Pictavia, *i.e.* Poitou, *q. v.*

Pilton, William, executor of Richard Cosyn, a benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138, *note.*

Pingyve, Henry IV., Emperor, has an interview with his son Henry at, 33.

Plantagenet, Geoffrey, *see* Geoffrey Plantagenet.

Plato, an example for philosophers, 206.

Po, the river, Henry V., the Emperor, on his expedition into Italy, reviews his army on the banks of, 37.

Poitou and Aquitaine, William, Count of, *see* William.

Poitou, Eleanor, Queen of Henry II., Countess of, 69; Henry II. inherits and keeps it in subjection, 84; Henry III. resigns his rights in, to Louis IX., in exchange for an annual tribute, 92.

Poland, Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby), on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, passes through, 100.

Pole, Michael de la, Earl of Suffolk, dies at Harfleur, 115.

Pole, Michael de la, Earl of Suffolk, [5th (3rd) Earl,] is slain at Agincourt, 117.

Polonus, Martinus, the Chronicle of, *see* Martinus Polonus.

"Polychronicon" the, of Ralph Higden, *see* Higden, Ralph.
Polydore Vergil referred to, *see* Aldemaro, Ganfred de Sancto.
Pontigny, Henry II., King of England, procures the removal of Thomas Becket from, 75.
Pontremoli, taken by the Emperor Henry V., 37.
Popes of Rome, *see* Rome, Popes of.
Portsmouth, Robert, Duke of Normandy, invades England, and lands at, 56; the French blockade, 119.
Powys, the Lord of, captures Sir John Oldcastle, 122.
Principum, De Instructione, by Giraldus Cambrensis, *see* Giraldus Cambrensis.
Privy Seals of Henry VI. referred to in proof of Capgrave's accuracy, xxxvii.
Prologues,—
To the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 195.
To Capgrave "On the Creeds," 213.
To Capgrave "On the Acts of the Apostles," 221.
To Capgrave "On Genesis," 229.
Provence, Raymond V., Count of, *see* Raymond V., Count of Provence.
——, Beatrice, Countess of, *see* Beatrice, Countess of Provence.
——, Sanchia, sister of Eleanor of, marries Richard, the King of the Romans, 151.
——, Eleanor of, *see* Eleanor, daughter of Raymond V., Count of Provence.
Provisions of Oxford, the, *see* Oxford, the Provisions of.
Provost, first, of King's College, Cambridge, *see* Millington, William.
——, first, of Eton College, *see* Waynflete, William of.
Prussia, Henry of Lancaster, (Earl of Derby), enters, and gains a victory over the infidels, 99; going to Jerusalem, he a second time enters, *ib.*; and goes from thence into Hungary, 100; the battles of Henry, Earl of Derby (grandfather of Henry IV.), in, 161.
Pynson prints "The Kalendre of the Newe Legende," an abridgment of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 192.
Pyrenees, the, Henry V., Emperor, crosses, at Monjui, 37; Henry II. of England retains his French possessions as far as, 84.
Pythagoras, an example for philosophers, 206.

Q.

Quincy, Saier de, first Earl of Winchester, accompanies Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, on his last pilgrimage to the Holy Places, 166.
Quinzaine of Easter, the, explained, 94, *note.*

R.

Rabanus Maurus, the Creed of, Capgrave treats of, 215.
Ralph (or Rodolphus) Archbishop of Canterbury, Thurstan Archbishop of York refuses to do homage to, 60; Pope Paschal II. promises to respect the rights of, but decides in favour of Thurstan, *ib.*
Ralph, Flambard, Bishop of Durham, *see* Flambard, Ralph.
Ralph of Chichester, *i.e.* Cirencester, Richard of, *q. v.*
Ramston, Sir Thomas, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.
Ranulphus, 73; *see* Higden.
Ratisbon, Henry V. at, rebels against his father, 33.
Ravenna, Guipert, Bishop of, *see* Guipert, Bishop of Ravenna.
Raymond V., Count of Provence, his daughter Eleanor is married to Henry III. of England, 89; his daughter Sanchia is married to Richard, King of the Romans, 151.

Reading, the Abbey of, founded by Henry I., 64 ; he places in it the relics brought by his daughter Maud, *ib.* ; the corpse of Henry I. is buried in, 67 ; John of Gaunt is married to Blanch, daughter of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, at, 164 ; games are held there afterwards, *ib.*

Registrum F. of the University of Oxford, referred to, 227, *note* (3).

Relics of the Saints, their removal from place to place, *see* Saints.

Remigius, S., baptizes Clovis I., King of the Franks, 149.

——, de Feschamp, Bishop of Lincoln, *see* Feschamp, Remigius de.

René, titular King of Sicily, Margaret of Anjou, the daughter of, marries Henry VI., King of England, 135.

Rheims, Henry I. and Pope Paschal II. meet at, and discuss the deprivation of Thurstan, Archbishop of York, 60 ; Henry I., King of France, resigns the crown to his son (Philip I.), who is crowned by Gervase, Archbishop of Rheims, at, 148.

Rheims, Archbishop of,—
Gervase, *see* Gervase.

Rhine, the armies of Henry IV., Emperor, and his son, meet on opposite banks of the, 33.

Rhodes, Henry of Lancaster, (Earl of Derby), on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, passes through, 100.

Rich, Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury, confirms Edward I., 90.

Richard I., King of England, the son of Eleanor of France, 85 ; his succession to the English Crown, 86 ; mention of the captivity of, 48, 157.

Richard II., King of England, John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, his half brother, 98 ; disputes between him and his Lords, *ib.* ; an account of these disputes, *ib.* ; the Lords who opposed him, 99 ; he goes into Ireland, 101 ; in his absence Henry, Duke of Lancaster, lands, and is accepted as guardian of the Realm, *ib.* ; the cruelties of, *ib.* ; account of his deposition, 102 ; he is secured in the Tower of London, *ib.* ; the charges brought against him, 102, 103 ; his voluntary abdication, 103 ; the form of his resignation, *ib.* ; the names of the witnesses to it, 106 ; certain reservations made by him, 107 ; he appoints Henry, Duke of Lancaster, to be his successor, 91 ; the charges, and the form of resignation having been publicly read in Westminster Hall, he is deposed, *ib.* ; he is succeeded by Henry IV., *ib.*

Richard, illegitimate son of Henry I., is drowned with the Prince William on their return from France, 63.

Richard, Earl of Chester (son of Hugh de Abrincis), is drowned with the Prince William, 63.

Richard, Earl of Cornwall, son of King John, is made King of the Romans, 91, 151 ; he leaves England, 91 ; in his absence the nobles conspire against Henry III., *ib.* ; his return to England, 92 ; he confirms his brother's oath before the Barons at Canterbury, *ib.* ; agrees to refer the disputes between Henry III. and the Barons to Louis IX., King of France, 94 ; his marriage to Sanchia, sister of Eleanor of Provence, 151 ; his son Henry, *see* Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans.

Richard Plantagenet, Earl of Cambridge, said to have been bribed by the French, tries to dissuade Henry V. from invading France, 114 ; for this he is executed, 115.

Richard of Chichester, *see* Chichester, Richard of.

Richard, Bishop of Chichester, his life, extracted from the "Nova Legenda Angliæ" in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum," 193.

Richard, Archdeacon of Lincoln, 176.

Richmond (formerly called Schene), Henry V. founds three monasteries near, 114.

Richmond, Earl of,—
John, *see* John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster.

Robert, Duke of Normandy, eldest son of William the Conqueror, 55 ; claims the kingdom on his father's death, but finally agrees to a compromise with his brother William, *ib.* ; returns to Normandy, *ib.* ; on the death of William, returns from the Holy Land to England, *ib.* ; is persuaded by Ralph Flambard, Bishop of Durham, to invade England, 56 ; lands at Portsmouth, with a large army but does not proceed to hostilities, *ib.* ; peace is made between Henry I. and, *ib.* ; the quarrel between them is renewed, and Robert seizes on Normandy, *ib.* ; Henry I. enters Normandy, and proceeds against, *ib.* ; is defeated at Tenechebray, 57 ; is taken prisoner, *ib.* ; is carried by his brother into England, and committed to prison, 58 ; his son, William, is defeated by Henry I. at Brenville, 61; his death in Cardiff Castle, 65 ; story of his refusing the robes sent by his brother, *ib.* ; cruelty of Henry I. towards, 67.

Robert de Belesme, Earl of Shrewsbury, *see* Belesme, Robert de.

Robert, Earl of Gloucester, assists his sister Maud against Stephen, 69.

Robert II. (the Wise), King of France, son of Hugh Capet, and brother of Henry I., 147.

Robert, Archdeacon of Lincoln, 176.

Rochester, besieged by Simon de Montfort, 96 ; the Emperor Sigismund, visiting Henry V., is received by the Duke of Bedford at, 118.

———, Bishop of,—

Walter de Merton, *see* Merton, Walter de.

Rodolph, King of Burgundy, the Sacred Spear is given to, 9.

Roffensis, *i. e.* of Rochester, *q. v.*

Roger (Lord Chief Justice, and Lord Treasurer), Bishop of Salisbury, is prevented from effecting the marriage of Henry I. and Adelais of Louvain, by Ralph, Archbishop of Canterbury, 60.

Rolls of Parliament, *see* Parliament, Rolls of.

Rolls, Close, *see* Close Rolls.

Romans, Richard, King of the, *see* Richard, Earl of Cornwall.

Rome, legend of the discovery of the body of the giant Pallas at, 26 ; the Capitol at, and the Leonine City, a suburb of (*Il Borgo*), destroyed by the Emperor Henry IV., 32; the Emperor Henry V. invades Italy, and proceeds to, 37 ; the Emperor Henry V. enters, and intrudes the Spaniard Bourdin into the Papal chair, 39 ; besieged by the Emperor Henry V., 40 ; the Emperor Henry VI. is crowned at, 47 ; reference to Capgrave's work on the Antiquities of, 209 ; Capgrave's visit to, 218, 219 ; S. Luke wrote the Acts of the Apostles at, 221 ; Henry le Despenser (afterwards Bishop of Norwich) fights against the enemies of the Church at, 170.

Rome, Popes of,—

Gregory I., *see* Gregory the Great.

Leo II., *see* Leo II.

Clement II., *see* Clement II.

Leo IV., *see* Leo IV.

Benedict IX., *see* Benedict IX.

Sylvester III., *see* John, Bishop of Sabina.

Gregory VI., *see* Gregory VI.

Gregory VII. (Hildebrand), *see* Gregory VII.

Paschal II., *see* Paschal II.

Gelasius II., *see* Gelasius II.

Calixtus II., *see* Calixtus II.

Honorius II., *see* Lambert, Bishop of Ostia.

Celestine III., *see* Celestine III.

Eugenius III., *see* Eugenius III.

Innocent III., *see* Innocent III.

Adrian IV., *see* Adrian IV.

Alexander III., *see* Alexander III.

Lucius III., *see* Lucius III.

Honorius III., *see* Honorius III.

Alexander IV., *see* Alexander IV.

Urban IV., *see* Urban IV.

Innocent VI., *see* Innocent VI.

Urban V., *see* Urban V.

Urban VI., *see* Urban VI.

Martin V., *see* Martin V

Roos, Lord William de, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Rouen, after the victory at Brenville, Henry I. returns to, 62; his dead body is carried to, 67; and thence to Caen, *ib.*; Prince Henry, son of Henry II., is buried at, 79; Henry V. (erroneously) said to have died at (*see* Bois Vincennes), 123; James Neell, of Canterbury (*temp.* Th. Goldston, Prior), born at, 192.

Rufus, *see* William II., King of England.

Rupert, the Emperor, *see* Louis, son of the Emperor Rupert.

Russia, Niger of, proclaims war against Henry I. (of Germany), and is defeated, 11.

Ruthard, Archbishop of Mayence, excommunicates the Emperor Henry IV. at Northausen, 33.

Rymer's Fœdera, *see* Fœdera, Rymer's.

S.

S. Albans, Nicholas Breakspere (Pope Adrian IV.) born at, 70.

S. Denis, Henry I., after eating lampreys, falls ill at, and dies, 66.

S. Giles' Fields, the followers of Sir John Oldcastle choose as their place of rendezvous, 113.

S. Louis of France, *see* Louis IX., King of France.

S. Luke, *see* Luke, S.

S. Omer, *see* Omer, S.

S. Paul, *see* Paul, S., the Apostle.

S. Paul's, London, *see* Paul's, S., London.

S. Paul, the Anchorite, *see* Paul, S., the Anchorite.

Sabina, John, Bishop of, *see* Sylvester III., Pope.

Saintes, Battle of, *see* Bordeaux.

Saints, the relics of, Capgrave discusses the propriety of removing from place to place, 10.

Saints, the Lives of the, *see* "Angliæ Nova Legenda" *and* "Sanctilogium."

Salerno, Bourdin, a Spaniard, intruded by the Emperor Henry V. into the Papal chair, is imprisoned at, 39.

Salique, Conrad the, *see* Conrad the Salique.

Salisbury, Bishops of,—
Roger, *see* Roger.
Robert Wyvill, *see* Wyvill, Robert.
William Aiscough, *see* Aiscough, William.

Samson, Count, the Sacred Spear is given to, 9.

Samuel, the Prophet, David anointed by, in his father's house, 128; his patience mentioned in Ecclesiasticus, 197.

Sanchia, sister of Eleanor of Provence, marries Richard, King of the Romans, 151.

Sancho VI. (the Wise), King of Navarre, is represented at the great congress of ambassadors held at Westminster by Henry II., 78.

"Sanctilogium," the, of John of Tinmouth, used by Capgrave in the compilation of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 190.

Saracens, Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England, and seeks the assistance of Henry II. against the, 80; this the King refuses, offering money, *ib.*; they take Jerusalem, and kill the master of the Temple, 81.

Savile, the "Scriptores post Bedam" of, *see* "Scriptores post Bedam."

Saxony, Dukes of,—
Otho I., *see* Otho.
Lothaire, *see* Lothaire.
Henry I., called the Lion, *see* Henry I.

Say, William, and Ralph Drew, are entrusted with the delivery of the gift of one hundred and thirty-five books, sent to the University of Oxford by Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 226.

Sceth, mentioned as a fellow rebel with John Litster, 170; he is captured by Henry le Despenser, the warlike bishop of Norwich, between Thetford and Cambridge, 171; is carried to Wymondham, and executed there, *ib.*

Schene, *see* Richmond.

Scipios, the, at Rome, patterns for generals, 206.

Sclavonians and Hungarians overcome by Otho I., Duke of Saxony, 6.

Scotland, Henry II. remains in, during the usurpation of Stephen, 69; he compels William, king of, to submit to his authority, 84; Edward Baliol claims the crown of, 167; Henry de Beaumont and others invade, 168.

Scotland, Kings of,—

Malcolm III., *see* Malcolm III.

David I., *see* David I.

William I. (called the Lion), *see* William I.

David II., *see* David II.

Scots, the, rise (in the absence of Henry V. in Normandy), 122; they are suppressed by the measures of the Duke of Bedford, *ib.*; are defeated by Henry de Beaumont near Dunfermline, 168.

"Scriptores post Bedam" of Savile, quotations from, 62, *notes;* 63, *notes;* 64, *notes;* 66, *and notes.*

Scrope, Richard, Archbishop of York, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note.*

Scrope, William le, Earl of Wiltshire, is executed by Henry Duke of Lancaster, at Bristol, 102.

Scrope, Henry Lord, (of Masham), endeavours to dissuade Henry V. from invading France, 114, 115; for this he is executed, 115.

Seals, Privy, of Henry VI., *see* Privy Seals.

"Secunda Secundæ" of S. Thomas Aquinas, quoted, 7.

Seneca, in his Letters, celebrates Lucilius, 179.

Sens, the Archbishopric of, Henry, Bishop of Beauvais, is elevated to, 159.

——, John I., Archbishop of, is slain at Agincourt, 117.

Sherborne, Bishop of,—

S. Wulfsin, *see* Wulfsin, S.

Shimei is forbidden to leave Jerusalem by Solomon, 14.

Shrewsbury, the Earl of Northumberland and the rebels are defeated at, 110.

Shrewsbury, Earl of,—

Robert de Belesme, *see* Belesme, Robert de.

Sicambria, *see* Antenor.

Sicily, Kings of,—

Tancred, *see* Tancred.

William II., the Good, *see* William II.

René (titular King of), *see* René.

Sidingborn, *see* Sittingborne.

Sienna, the Emperor Henry II., attacked by Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia, flies with Clement IV. (the Antipope) to, 32.

Sigismund, King of Hungary, entertains Henry of Lancaster on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 100; [elected Emperor,] Henry V. forms an alliance with him, 114; he visits England, 118; he is received at Calais by Richard de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, *ib.*; at Dover by Humphrey Plantagenet, Duke of Gloucester, *ib.*; at Canterbury by Henry Chicheley, the Archbishop, *ib.*; at Rochester by John Plantagenet, Duke of Bedford, *ib.*; at Dartford, by Thomas Plantagenet, Duke of Clarence, *ib.*; by the King at London, *ib.*; the King and the Emperor make a treaty, *ib.*; he is made Knight of the Garter. *ib.*; William VI., Count of Holland, is present at the ceremony, *ib.*; they agree to a truce between England and France, which is immediately broken off by the French attacking Harfleur, 119; on the French attacking the fleet at Southampton, he is conducted by the King to Leeds

Castle (Co. Kent), *ib.*; letters are sent to him under the seal of Charles VI., King of France, announcing that the French agree to the treaty, *ib.*; but they attack Harfleur, and blockade Portsmouth, *ib.*; the King, hearing of their defeat by the Duke of Bedford, relates all to the Emperor, 120; he is accompanied by the King to Dover, and thence to Calais, *ib.*; his attendants cast verses, celebrating the praises of England, by the roadside as they depart, *ib.*

Simeon, S., Leo IV. gives an arm of, to Charlemagne, 11.

Sittingborne, the Hermits of S. Austin are permitted to build at, 224.

Soissons, Josceline of, a contemporary of S. Bernard, 159.

Solomon, his example quoted in reference to the suppression of rebellions, 14; Henry I. compared, in his mode of living, to, 67; Henry IV. mindful of the example of, 108; quotation of his words from the Book of Ecclesiasticus, and the Commentary of the Glossa Ordinaria, and the Doctor de Lyra thereon, 129, 130.

Somme, the river, Henry V. marching from Harfleur, scatters the French at Corbie, and crosses, 116.

Southampton, *see* Hampton.

Spain, the Pyrenees, the northern boundary of, 84; battles of Henry, Earl of Derby (afterwards Duke of Lancaster), against the Infidels in, 161.

Spalding, the royal Vill of, conferred on the Bishop of Lincoln in exchange for Cambridge, which had been given by Henry I. to the newly erected See of Ely, 59.

Spear, the Sacred, story of, 9; its discovery in the presence of Godfrey of Bouillon at Antioch, 10.

Spires, the remains of the Emperor Henry IV. are buried at, 36; the Emperor Henry V. is buried at, in a church built by him there, 40.

Spitigneus I., Duke of Bohemia, his conversion to Christianity, 143; Wenceslas I., his son, reigns after him, *ib.*

Stafford, Ralph de, Earl of Stafford, companion in arms of Henry first Duke of Lancaster, 162.

Stamford, given by Henry III. to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile, 91.

Statute (9 Henry I.), punishments assigned to thieving and coining; the "denarius" and the "obolus" to be made round, 59.

Stephen of Blois, father of Stephen, King of England, 65.

—— of Blois (afterwards King of England) is the first to swear allegiance to the Empress Maud, 65; seizes the throne, 68; is opposed by the Empress Maud, *ib.*; maintains war against her and Robert, Earl of Gloucester, for sixteen years, 69; acknowledges Henry's right to the throne, 70; is permitted to retain the kingdom for his lifetime, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*

—— I., King of Hungary, marries the sister of the Emperor Henry II., 16; his conversion to Christianity, *ib.*; he is reverenced as a Saint by the Hungarians, *ib.*

——, Patriarch of Jerusalem, the Knights Templars established at Jerusalem in his time, 157; the first Templars swear, in his presence, to defend Christian pilgrims from the infidel robbers, 158.

Stowe, Thomas, LL.D., is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note.*

Stratford Langthorne, visit of Henry VI. to, xxxvii.

Strustanus, *see* Thurstan.

Suabia, a portion of the province of, is given away by Henry I. (of Germany) in exchange for the Sacred Spear, 9.

——, Herman II., Duke of, *see* Gisilia, daughter of Herman II.

Suessionensis, *i.e.* of Soissons, *q. v.*

Suidger, Bishop of Bamberg, *see* Clement II., Pope.
Suffolk, Earls of,—
Robert de Ufford, *see* Ufford, Robert de.
Michael de la Pole, *see* Pole, Michael de la.
Michael de la Pole, (son of the foregoing), *see* Pole, Michael de la, 5th (3rd) Earl.
Surek, the hermits of S. Austin are permitted to build at, 224.
Surrey, Earl of,—
Richard Fitz-Alan, *see* Fitz-Alan, Richard, Earl of Arundel.
Suthmere, Margaret, the first benefactor of the Austin Friars at Lynn, 138, *and note.*
Sutri, Bourdin, a Spaniard, intruded by the Emperor Henry V. into the Papal chair, is taken and ignominiously treated by the Romans at, 39, *note.*
Swerdis, flumen de, *see* Ternois.
Swinford, Katharine, *see* Beaufort, Henry, Bishop of Winchester.
Sygambria, *see* Antenor.
Sylvester III., Pope, *see* John, Bishop of Sabina.
Syrian, S. Luke, the Evangelist, said to have been a, 221.

T.

Tailebourg, Battle of, *see* Bordeaux.
Talbot, Richard, (with David, Earl of Athol, Henry de Beaumont, and other nobles), assists Edward Baliol, 167; they ask permission of Edward III. to pass through England into Scotland, which is refused, *ib.*, they are permitted to go by sea, 168.
Tancred, King of Sicily, gives his daughter, Constance, in marriage to the Emperor Henry VI., 47; his son Tancred and his wife Margaret are carried prisoners into Germany by the Emperor Henry VI., *ib.*
Tanner MS. (in the Bodleian Library) of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 192; copied by James Neell for Thomas Goldston, Prior of Canterbury, *ib.*
Tanner's, Bp., Bibliotheca Britannico-Hibernica, quotations from, 192.
Templars, the Knights, some account of, 157; their original institution, 158; the number of the first founders, *ib.*; their vow, *ib.*; their dress, *ib.*; their rule, *ib.*; three red crosses added to their white robe, *ib.*; their standard, called "Beauseant," *ib.*
Tenechebray, besieged by Henry I., 57; Robert, Duke of Normandy, is defeated at the battle of, *ib.*
Terence, referred to, 206.
Tergotus, succeeds Antenor, *see* Franco.
Ternois, the river, Henry V. marching to Agincourt, crosses, 116.
Theobald of Blois meets Henry I. at Brampton, 63.
Theodore, S., 204.
Theodoric, son of Clovis II. King of France, *see* Thierry III.
Theodosius Magnus, quotation from, 131.
Theophilus, an Asiatic Bishop, S. Luke writes his Gospel and the Acts of the Apostles to, 221.
Thetford, Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, captures some of the ring-leaders of the rebellion between Cambridge and, 171.
Thierry III., son of Clovis II., King of France, succeeds his brother, Childeric III., 149; is succeeded by his son Clotaire IV., *ib.*
Thieves, a statute is made by Henry I., of England, providing that thieves should be hung, 59.
Thirning, Sir William, Justice, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *note;* one of the deputation sent to announce to Richard II. his deposition, 107.

Thomas, Archbishop of York, his submission to the authority of the Roman Church adhered to by his successor, Gerard, 59.

—— Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury, *see* Becket, Thomas.

—— Plantagenet, Earl of Albemarle and Duke of Clarence, second son of Henry IV. 109; receives the Emperor Sigismund at Dartford, 118.

—— of Woodstock, (Earl of Buckingham, and Duke of Gloucester), opposes the tyranny of Richard II., 99; executed by his orders at Calais, 101; this crime forms part of the third of the charges alleged against Richard II. in Westminster Hall, 103.

Thorney Abbey, founded by King Edgar, 134.

Thorp-Market (Co. Norfolk), Litster, the rebel, at, 172.

Thurstan, Archbishop of York, refuses to submit to the Archbishop of Canterbury, and is deprived, 59; Pope Paschal II. takes his part; he returns to York, but still persists in refusing homage, *ib.*; the matter is discussed at Rheims between Henry I. and Paschal II., 60; the Pope restores Thurstan, *ib.*; Henry I. resists, but is compelled to submit to the Pope's decision, *ib.*; he is restored to his see, *ib.*

Tinmouth, John of, his "Sanctilogium" used by Capgrave in the Compilation of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 191.

Tobias, reference to the marriage of, 137.

Toledo, the Creed of, Capgrave treats of, 215.

Toulouse, Henry II. returning from, betroths his eldest son Henry to Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., King of France, 73.

Tours, in France, a council held there (against the Manichæans, or Albigenses, and on discipline) by Pope Alexander III., 74; Thomas Becket, Archbishop of, Canterbury, is present there, *ib.*

Touraine, Henry III. resigns his rights in, to, Louis IX., 92.

Tower of London, the, Ralph Flambard, Bishop of Durham, escapes from, and joins Robert, Duke of Normandy, 56; Henry, III., having determined to resist the Provisions of Oxford, fortifies, 93; Richard II. is imprisoned in, 102.

Trefuant (or Trevenant), John, Bishop of Hereford, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106, *and note.*

Trevenant, John, Bishop of Hereford, *see* Trefuant.

Treves, Archbishop of,—
William, *see* William.

Trevour, John (II.), Bishop of S. Asaph, and others, are sent to Richard II. to announce his deposition, 107.

Trivet, Sir Thomas, betrays Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, in Flanders, 172.

Trojan, Antenor, the, *see* Antenor, the Trojan.

Troyes, in Champagne, Henry V. marries Katharine of France at, 123.

Trunch, mentioned as a fellow rebel with John Litster, 170; he is captured by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, between Thetford and Cambridge, carried to Wymondham, and there executed, 171.

Tryvet, Sir Thomas, *see* Trivet.

Turnus, Pallas, the son of Evander, slain by, 26; legend of the discovery of the body at Rome, *ib.*

Turonia, *i. e.* Touraine, *q. v.*

Tuscany, Arezzo in, *see* Arezzo.

Tusculan Kingdom, the, is given to the Romans by Henry VI. Emperor, 47.

Twysden, reference to the historical collections of, 71, *note.*

Tyler, Wat, *see* Kent.

U.

Ufford, Robert de, Earl of Suffolk, a companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.
——, Thomas de, son of Robert de Ufford, Earl of Suffolk, a companion in arms of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 162.
Ulric, Patriarch of Aquileia, *see* Aquileia.
Urban IV., Pope, absolves the King from his oath in the matter of the Provisions of Oxford, 94.
Urban V., Pope, confers the See of Norwich on Henry le Despenser, 170.
Urban VI., Pope, sends Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, into Flanders, to oppose heretics, 172.
Urbs Legionum, *see* Chester.
Urbs Leonina, *see* Leonina Urbs.
Uriah, the Hittite, Henry III., the Emperor, sent when a boy with a letter containing instructions to put him to death, is compared to, 21.
Ursania, Conrad the Salique builds a church at, 24.
Ursula, S., and her companions, martyrs, referred to, 206; her example to be followed by virgins, 207.
Urtutum, Comes, *see* Galeas, John, Duke of Milan.

V.

Vasconia, *see* Aquitaine.
Venice, Antonio Veniero, Doge of, receives Henry of Lancaster (Earl of Derby) on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 100.
Veniero, Antonio, Doge of Venice, *see* Venice, Antonio Veniero, Doge of.
Victore, Hugo de Sancto, *see* Hugo de Sancto Victore.
Vienne, in Daufine, Guy, Archbishop of, is made Pope (Calixtus II.) 44, *note*.
Vilentynge, *see* Woodhouse.
Vincent of Beauvais, the Chronicle of, quoted, 13.
Vincennes, Bois, *see* Bois Vincennes.
Vindelici, the Emperor Henry III. conquers the, 25; some account of their superstitions, *ib.*
Virtutum, Comes, *see* Galeas, John, Duke of Milan.
Viterbo, Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, goes to, 153; is treacherously slain in a church at, by Guy and Simon de Montfort, 154.
——, Godfrey of, quotations from his Chronicle called the "Pantheon," 11, 12, 13, 16 *note*, 17, 18 *note*, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 28 *note*, 34 *and note*, 35 *and note*, 37 *and note*, 41 *and note*, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48 *and notes*, 49, 50, 51, 52.
Voltaire, La Henriade of, referred to, xi. *note* (1).

W.

Wake, Baldwin, is taken prisoner at the Battle of Northampton by the army of Henry III., 96.
Waldemar II., the Victorious, King of Denmark, is succeeded by Eric VI., 143 *note*.
Wales, Cardiff Castle in, *see* Cardiff Castle.
——, Llewellyn, Prince of, *see* Llewellyn, Prince of Wales.
——, given by Henry III., to Edward I. on his marriage with Eleanor of Castile, 91; Owen Glyndwr rebels against Henry IV. in, 110.
Wallenus, Abbat, 205.
Walo, legate of the Roman See, *see* Gualo.
Walsham, North (Co. Norfolk), *see* North Walsham.
Walsingham, the Chronicle of, one of Capgrave's authorities, xxiv., 41, *note*.

Walsingham, the Annals of the Chapel of, the gift of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, recorded in, 164 ; the gift of his father, Henry, Earl of Lancaster, to Walsingham, recorded in, *ib.*

Walter de Merton, *see* Merton, Walter de.

Walter, Epistle of Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, to, quoted, 175.

Waltham, Henry I. at, contributes a large sum to the Crusade, 79.

Warenniæ Comes, (pp. 101, 103,) mistake for Warwick, *q. v.*

Warnings given to Henry I. at Cardiff Castle, *see* Cardiff Castle.

Warren, Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of Surrey and, *see* Fitz-Alan, Richard, Earl of Arundel.

Warwick, Earls of,—

Thomas de Beauchamp, *see* Beauchamp, Thomas de.

Richard de Beauchamp, *see* Beauchamp, Richard de.

Wat Tyler, *see* Kent.

Waterton, Sir Hugh, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.

Waynflete, William of, afterwards Bishop of Winchester, appointed by Henry VI. first Provost of Eton, 133.

Weldon, Ralph Basset, of, *see* Basset, Ralph (of Weldon).

Wenceslas I., Duke of Bohemia, is put to death by his brother Boleslas, who succeeds him, 143 ; his piety, 144 ; he appears in a vision to King Eric VI. of Denmark, *ib.*

Wentanus Episcopus, *i.e.*, William Giffard, Bishop of Winchester, *see* Giffard, William.

Westminster, Henry II. receives a great congress of foreign ambassadors at, 78; is held by the Dauphin Louis against Henry III., who is crowned at Gloucester, 86, 87 ; the monastery at, founded by Henry III., 89; Henry III. marries Eleanor of Provence at, *ib.*; Edward I. is born at, 90; Henry III. is buried at, 97 ; various charges are brought against Richard II. in the Hall at, 102 ; he there abdicates the throne, 103, 107 ; Henry V. is crowned at, 112; Henry V. holds a Parliament at, after the battle of Agincourt, and claims the crown of France, 117 ; Henry V. receives the Emperor Sigismund near London, and conducts him to, 118; Henry VI. is crowned at, 128; the heart of Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, is buried by the Shrine of Edward the Confessor at, 155.

——, Abbot of, William de Colchester, *see* Colchester, William de.

——, Matthew of, *see* Matthew of Westminster.

Westmorland, Earl of, —

Ralph Neville, *see* Neville, Ralph.

Wiclif, John, Sir John Oldcastle (Lord Cobham), professes the tenets of, 112.

Wilkins's "Concilia," reference to, *see* Councils.

Wiltshire, Earl of,—

William le Scrope, *see* Scrope, William le.

William I., the Conqueror, King of England, is brought up by Henry I., King of France, who assists him, 147 ; is succeeded by William Rufus, 55 ; is buried at Caen, 121.

William II., King of England, succeeds his father, 55 ; his coronation, *ib.*; his brother Robert claims the Kingdom, but agrees to a compromise with, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*

William, Duke of Poitou and Aquitaine, his daughter Agnes marries the Emperor Henry III., 26.

William, Earl of Montaigne, *see* Montaigne, William, Earl of.

William, Prince, son of Henry I., is married to Matilda, daughter of the Earl of Anjou, 62; is drowned on his return from France, 63.

William, son of Robert, Duke of Normandy fights in the battle of Brenville against Henry I., 61.

William of Hatfield, second son of Edward III., xxxi.

William I., King of Scotland, assists the Princes Henry, Geoffrey, and John, in their rebellion against their father, Henry I., 76; is compelled to submit to Henry II., 84.
William, Archbishop of Treves, is represented at the great congress of foreign ambassadors held at Westminster by Henry II., 78.
William II. (the Good), King of Sicily, marries Joanna, third daughter of Henry II., King of England, 85.
William VI., Count of Holland, is present when the Emperor Sigismund is made a Knight of the Garter by King Henry V., 118; on the French blockading Harfleur, he returns to his own land, 119.
Willoughby, of Eresby, Lord William, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 106.
Winchester, Henry I. rebuilds the monastery of Hide, without the walls of, 59.
Winchester, Bishops of,—
William Giffard, *see* Giffard, William.
William of Waynflete, *see* Waynflete, William of.
Windsor, Henry I., having conquered and imprisoned Robert of Normandy, holds his court at, 58; the nobles of England and Normandy are present, and his authority is universally acknowledged, *ib.*; Henry I. marries Adelais of Louvain at, 63; foundation of Eton College by Henry VI., near, 133; Henry VI., after his pilgrimage to certain English shrines, returns to, xxxvii.
Wisbeach Castle, 116.
Withburga, S., the monastery of, at Chester, the Emperor Henry V. lives in retirement at, 41.
Woodhouse, (Bica, Vilentynge,) in Shropshire, one of the earliest convents of the Hermits of S. Augustin, at, 224.
Woodstock, Thomas of, Duke of Gloucester, *see* Thomas of Woodstock.
Worcester, Earl of,—
Thomas Percy, *see* Percy, Thomas.
Worde, Wynkyn de, prints the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 192; the Prologue extracted from his edition, 195.
World, the end of, Henry of Huntingdon's opinion as to the time of, 176, *et seq.*
Worms, a Council is held at, wherein the Emperor Henry IV. deposes Pope Gregory VII., (Hildebrand), 31; a Council is held at, when the Emperor Henry V. renounces the right of investiture, 40.
Wulfsin, S., Bishop of Sherborne, the life of, extracted in the "Acta Sanctorum" (Bollandi) from the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," 193.
Wykyn, Humphrey de, an early benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138 *and note.*
——, Robert de, an early benefactor of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 138 *and note.*
Wymondham, Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, executes some of the ringleaders in Litster's rebellion at, 171.
Wynkyn de Worde, the printer, *see* Worde, Wynkyn de.
Wyvill, Robert, Bishop of Salisbury, marries John of Gaunt to Blanch, daughter of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, at Reading, 164.

X.

Xantoigne, Louis IX. acknowledges the rights of Henry III. in, 93.

Y.

Yarmouth, on the execution of Litster, one of his quarters is sent by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, to, 172.
York Minster, MS. of the "Sanctilogium" in the library attached to, 191.

York, Archbishops of,—
Thomas, *see* Thomas.
Gerard, *see* Gerard.
Thurstan, *see* Thurstan.
Richard Scrope, *see* Scrope, Richard.
York, Duke of,—
Edward Plantagenet, *see* Edward Plantagenet.

Z.

Zealand, William V., Duke of Holland, and Duke of, marries Maud, eldest daughter and coheiress of Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, 164.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.